CIVICS

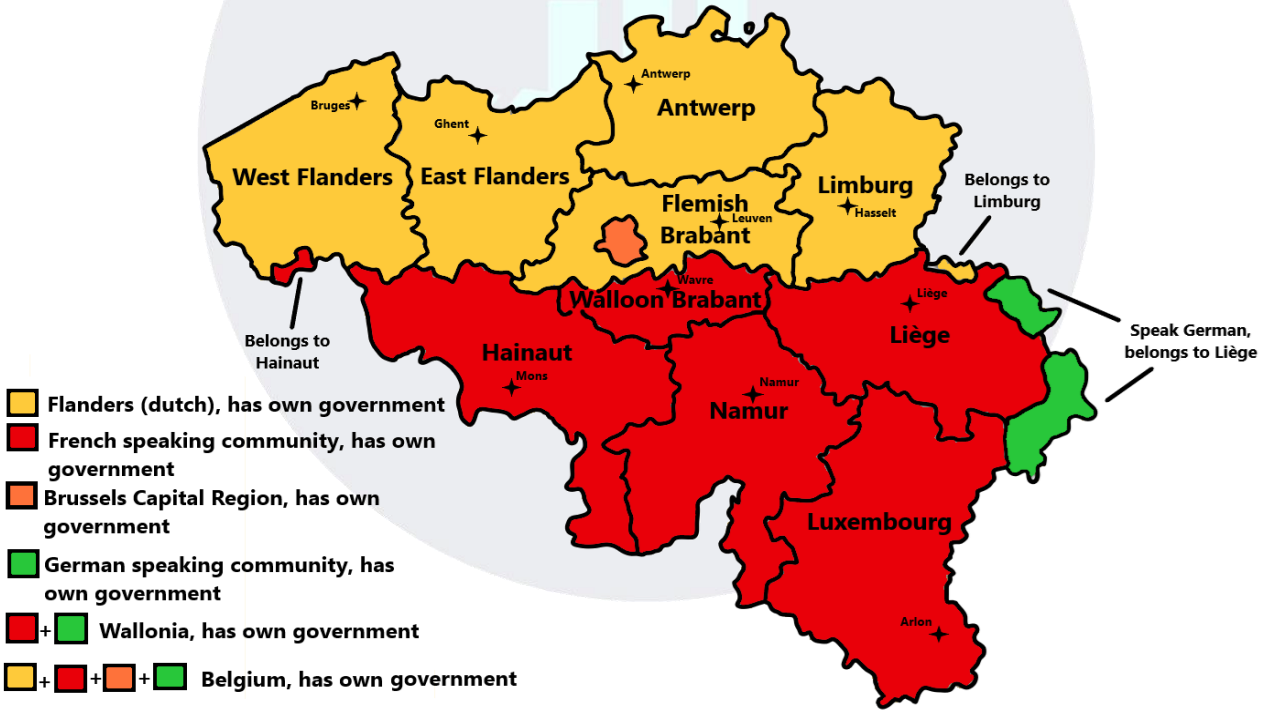
Power Sharing 1

Power sharing refers to the sharing or division of power between various political parties and various sections of society and at various levels of government.

Power Sharing in Belgium and Sri Lanka

Belgium

Belgium, a small European country, has Dutch-, French- and German-speaking populations. While 59% of the total population of the country live in the Flemish region and speak Dutch, the other 40% of the people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. In Brussels, the capital of Belgium, about 80% of the people speak French, while the remaining 20% speak Dutch.



Communities and regions of Belgium

The minority French-speaking population was rich and powerful. This was resented by the Dutch- speaking population as they received the benefits of education quite late. This sparked tension between the two communities. However, this problem was solved by the political leaders of Belgium who wanted the people to coexist peacefully with one another.

In Belgium, the government handled the community difference very well. Between 1970 and 1993, Belgian leaders amended their constitution four times and came up with a new model to run the government.

Here are some of the elements of the Belgian model.

- The Constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government. Some special laws require the support of the majority of members from each linguistic group. Thus, no single community can make decisions unilaterally.
- The state governments are not subordinate to the Central Government.
- Brussels has a separate government in which both communities have equal representation.
- Apart from the Central and the State Government, there is a third kind of government. This 'community government' is elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language-related issues.

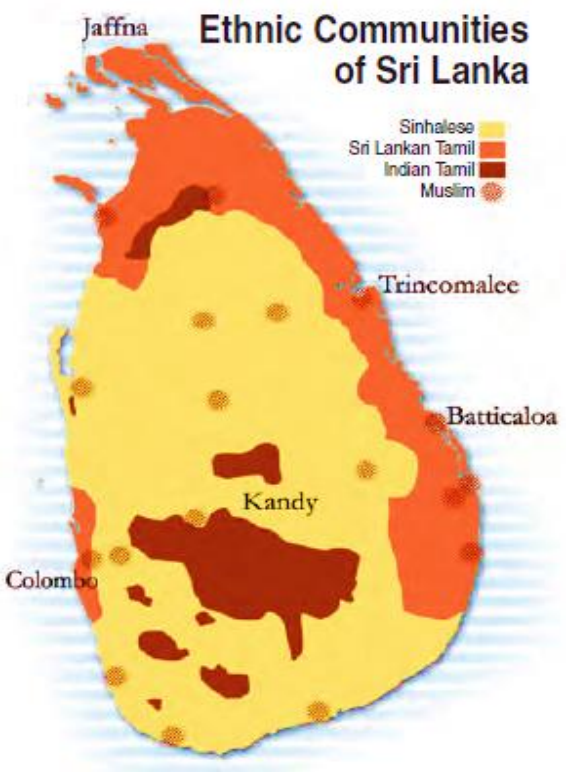
These arrangements in Belgium were successful and avoided any kind of tension between the two linguistic communities. This also negated any possibilities of the division of the country on linguistic lines.

Sri Lanka

It is an island nation having a population of 2 crores, about the same as in Haryana. Sri Lanka has a diverse population. The major social groups are the Sinhala-speakers (74%) and the Tamil-speakers (18%). Among Tamils, there are two subgroups, "Sri Lankan Tamils" and "Indian Tamils".

- Sri Lankan Tamils (13 percent) – Tamil natives of the country
- Indian Tamils (5 percent) – came from India during the colonial period as plantation workers.

You can see the map (right) to know the population distribution of different communities of Sri Lanka.



Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka

- Sri Lanka became independent of colonial rule in 1948. There were two major communities— Sinhalese and Tamilians. The Sinhalese were in majority, and hence, after being elected to power, the Sinhalese leaders followed a series of majoritarian policies in order to ascertain the supremacy of their community.
- By an Act passed in 1956, Sinhala was recognised as the only official language of the country. Preferential positions in government jobs were given to the Sinhalese.
- All these measures led to dissent among the Tamilian community which finally culminated into a civil war, with the Tamilians demanding the formation of an independent Tamil state in the northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka. Thousands of people were killed in the civil war.

We find that both Belgium and Sri Lanka dealt with the issue of power sharing differently.

In Belgium, the leaders respected the interests of both linguistic groups and avoided any possibilities of clashes among the Dutch- and French-speaking communities.	In Sri Lanka, however, the assertive policies of the majority community led to a civil war threatening the unity and integrity of the country.

Need for Power Sharing

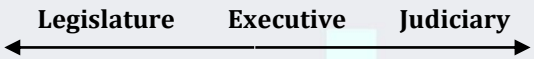
Power sharing is desirable because of two main reasons. They are

- **Prudential reason:** It reduces any chances of conflicts between social groups. By avoiding conflicts, political stability and unity of the country can be maintained. Dictatorship of the majority community can be oppressive for the minority and can even wreck the majority community as well.
- **Moral reason:** Power sharing is the true spirit of democracy. Every section of community has the right to be consulted on how they are to be governed. Governance should be carried out keeping in mind the larger interests of each section of the community.

Different Forms of Power Sharing

In democracies, power is shared in various ways. These are:

1. **Sharing of power among different organs of government—Horizontal Power Sharing**
   - A government has three organs-legislature, executive and judiciary. Separation or division of power among the three organs ensures that no organ becomes too powerful.
   - In such a system, one organ also keeps a check on the other organ of the government. This results in maintaining balance of power.



   For example, judges who are appointed by the executive can check the functioning of the executive or the legislature. The ministers are also responsible to the Parliament. This is called a system of checks and balances.

2. **Power sharing among different levels of government—Vertical Power Sharing**



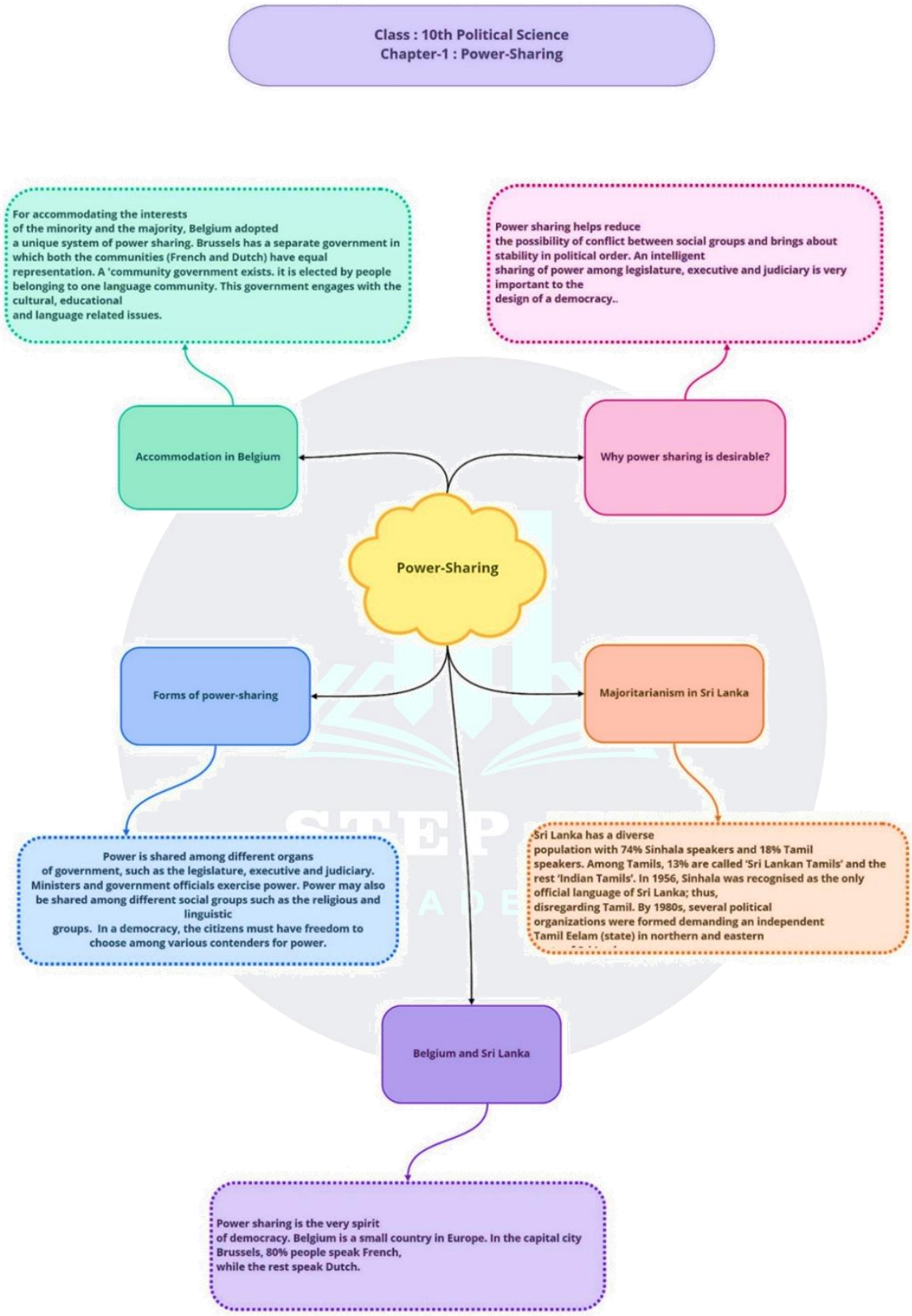
   - In a federal government, there are two main levels of government-the Union or the Central Government and the State Government.
   - While the Central Government looks after the administration and law and order of the entire country as a whole, the State Governments look after the administration and law and order in their own states.
   - Municipal corporations and village panchayats are the local units of administration.

3. **Sharing of power among different social groups**
   - Sharing of power among various social, linguistic or ethnic communities is another form of power sharing.
   - Representation given to the weaker sections of society and religious minorities in the Government ensure the diversity and unity of the country.
   - In India, the system of reserved constituencies in the assemblies and in the Parliament is an example of power sharing among different social and ethnic groups.

4. Power sharing among political parties, pressure groups and movements

- In a democracy, more than one political party exists. People have the freedom to vote for any political party. Such competition among various political parties guarantees that power is not concentrated in the hands of one political party only.
- Sometimes, an alliance of one or more political parties is voted to power. This is known as a **coalition government.**
- Many sections of society such as traders, farmers and workers may form their own interest groups and can influence the decision-making body of the Government. This ensures that voices of each section of society are heard.
- Thus, we find that power sharing is an important requirement and feature of democratic societies.

Ethnic: *A social division based on shared culture. People belonging to same ethnic group believe in their common descent because of similarities of physical type or of culture or both.*


Class : 10th Political Science
Chapter-1 : Power-Sharing
For accommodating the interests of the minority and the majority, Belgium adopted a unique system of power sharing. Brussels has a separate government in which both the communities (French and Dutch) have equal representation. A 'community government exists. it is elected by people belonging to one language community. This government engages with the cultural, educational and language related issues.
Power sharing helps reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups and brings about stability in political order. An intelligent sharing of power among legislature, executive and judiciary is very important to the design of a democracy..
Accommodation in Belgium
Why power sharing is desirable?
Power-Sharing
Forms of power-sharing
Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka
Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. Ministers and government officials exercise power. Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups. In a democracy, the citizens must have freedom to choose among various contenders for power.
Sri Lanka has a diverse population with 74% Sinhala speakers and 18% Tamil speakers. Among Tamils, 13% are called 'Sri Lankan Tamils' and the rest 'Indian Tamils'. In 1956, Sinhala was recognised as the only official language of Sri Lanka; thus, disregarding Tamil. By 1980s, several political organizations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern
Belgium and Sri Lanka
Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. Belgium is a small country in Europe. In the capital city Brussels, 80% people speak French, while the rest speak Dutch.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. Which of the following is an example of horizontal sharing of power?
   (a) Power sharing between different states.
   (b) Power sharing between different organs of the government.
   (c) Power sharing between different levels of the government.
   (d) Power sharing between different political parties.
2. Who elects the community government in Belgium?
   (a) People belonging to one language community only.
   (b) By the leader of Belgium.
   (c) The citizens of the whole country.
   (d) The community leaders of Belgium.
3. The Community Government signifies:
   (a) The powers of government regarding community development.
   (b) The powers of the government regarding law making for the community.
   (c) The powers of the government regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.
   (d) The government enjoys privileges to safeguard the interest of a particular community.
4. The word 'ethnic' signifies:
   (a) different religions.
   (b) social division on shared culture.
   (c) a violent conflict between opposite groups.
   (d) a careful calculation of gains and losses.
5. Power sharing is:
   (a) the very spirit of democracy
   (b) separation of powers at different levels.
   (c) system of checks and balances.
   (d) a type of balancing powers.
6. Choose the correct option:
   Power sharing is desirable because it helps:
   (a) To increase pressure on government.
   (b) To reduce possibilities of conflicts.
   (c) To generate awareness among people.
   (d) To increase percentage of voters.
7. System of 'checks and balances' means:
   (a) Horizontal distribution of powers.
   (b) Separation of powers.
   (c) Put a check on the exercise of unlimited powers of the organs of government by maintaining a balance of power among various institutions.
   (d) Federal division of powers
8. Which of the following features are common to Indian and Belgian form of power-sharing arrangements?
   A. Power is shared among governments at different levels.
   B. Power is shared among different organs of government.
   C. Power is shared among different social groups.
   D. Power is shared among different parties and takes the form of competition.
      (a) A, B, C, D
      (b) B, C and D
      (c) A and C
      (d) A, C and D
9. In dealing with power sharing, which one of the following statements is NOT correct about democracy?
   (a) People are the source of all political power. !
   (b) In a democracy, people rule themselves j through institutions of self-governance.
   (c) In a democracy, due respect is given to diverse groups and views that exist in a society.
   (d) In a democracy, if the power to decide is dispersed, it is not possible to take quick decisions and enforce them.

10. A belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whichever way it wants, by disregarding the wishes and needs of the minority is:
    (a) Power Sharing
    (b) Central Government
    (c) Majoritarianism
    (d) Community Government
11. A system of 'checks and balances' is another name for which one of the following power-sharing arrangements:
    (a) Power sharing among different social groups.
    (b) Vertical division of power or power shared among different levels of government.
    (c) Horizontal division of power or power shared among different organs of the government.
    (d) Power sharing in the form of political parties, pressure groups and governments.
12. Which one of the following statements about power-sharing arrangements is correct?
    (a) Power sharing is necessary only in societies which have religious, linguistic or ethnic divisions.
    (b) Power sharing is suitable only for big countries that have regional divisions.
    (c) Every society needs some form of power sharing even if it is small or does not have social divisions.
    (d) Power-sharing is not necessary at all.
13. Consider the following statements about the ethnic composition of Sri Lanka:
    A. Major social groups are the Sinhala-speaking (74%) and Tamil-speaking (18%)?
    B. Among the Tamils, there are two sub-groups, Sri Lankan Tamils and Indian Tamils.
    C. There are about 7% Christians, who are both Tamil and Sinhala.
    D. Most of the Sinhala-speaking are Hindus or Muslims and most of the Tamil-speaking are Buddhists.

    Which of the above statements are correct?
    (a) A, B, C
    (b) A, B, D
    (c) B, C, D
    (d) A, B, C, D
14. Prudential reasons of power sharing stress on the facts that:
    A. It ensures the stability of political order.
    B. It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups.
    C. It gives a fair share to minority.
    D. It is the very spirit of democracy.

    Which of the above statements are correct?
    (a) A, B
    (b) A, C and D
    (c) All are correct
    (d) A, B & C
15. How many people speak French and Dutch in the capital city of Brussels?
    (a) 60 percent French 40 percent Dutch
    (b) 50% Dutch 50% French
    (c) 80% French 20% Dutch
    (d) 80% Dutch 20% French

Very Short Questions:

1. What is Majoritarianism?
2. Mention one step which was taken by Sri Lankan Government to create Majoritarianism.
3. State one prudential reason and one moral reason for power sharing from the Indian context.
2. Name the country which has lost peace due to Majoritarianism.
3. What is the difference between prudential and moral reasons for power sharing?
4. Name two subgroups of Tamils in Sri Lanka.
5. What is the system of checks and balances of power sharing?
6. State two main bases of the social divisions in Sri Lanka.
7. Who formed majority in terms of population in Sri Lanka?
8. Who formed majority in terms of population in Belgium?

Short Questions:

1. How Belgian government solved its ethnic Problem ?
2. What is majoritariamisum? How it has led to alienation of majority community in Sri Lanka?

3. Describe three demands of Sri Lankan Tamils. How did they struggle for their independence?
4. How is power shared among different organs of the government, I.e., legislature, executives and judiciary?
5. How is federal government better than a unitary government? Explain with examples of Belgium and Sri Lanka.
6. Write down the features of Horizontal division of power sharing.
7. Write Down the features of Vertical division of power sharing.
9. Give a comparative analysis between Belgium and India in the sphere of area.
10. What is the reason for tension in Belgium?
11. What was the background of Sri Lankan Tamils?

Long Questions:

1. How are the ethnic problem solved in Belgium? Mention any four steps which were taken by the governments to solve the problem?
2. Explain the power sharing arrangement among the different political parties, pressure groups and movements.
3. Explain the power sharing arrangement among the different organs of the government.
4. Explain the power sharing arrangement among the different social groups.
5. Explain the power sharing arrangement among the different levels of the government.
6. What are advantages enjoyed by the Sinhala Community in Sri Lanka? Describe the consequences.
7. Describe the population composition of Sri Lanka and the reasons for the formation of Majoritarian government in 1948.
8. What measures were adopted by the Belgium government to accommodate regional and cultural diversities?

Assertion Reason Questions:

Directions: Mark the option which is most suitable:

a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).

b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).

c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.

d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

Assertion (A): Community government in Belgium allows to share power among religious and linguistic groups.

Reason (R): In India there are legal and constitutional arrangements where by socially weaker sections and women are represented in the legislatures and administration.

Directions: Mark the option which is most suitable:

a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).

b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).

c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.

d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false

Assertion (A): Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1949.

Reason (R): The leaders of the Sinhala community sought to secure dominance over government by virtue of their majority.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow:

   Power may also be shared among different social groups, such as the religious and linguistic groups. 'Community government' in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement. In some countries there are constitutional and legal arrangements whereby socially weaker sections and women are represented in the legislatures and administration. This type of arrangement is meant to give space in the government and administration to diverse social groups who otherwise would feel alienated from the government. This method is used to give minority communities a fair share in power.

   1. Power sharing means:
      a. System of political arrangement in which power is shared between ministers of the government.

b. System of political arrangement in which power is shared between different organs of the government.

c. System of political arrangement in which power is shared between different levels of the government.

d. All of the above.

2. Which one is not a benefit of Power sharing?

a. Reduces the possibilities of conflicts between social groups.

b. Ensures political stability in the long run.

c. All the political parties get their expected share.

d. It upholds the spirit of democracy.

3. Apart from the Central and State Government, there is a third type of government in Belgium called the:

a. Regional Government.

b. State Government.

c. Union Government.

d. Community Government.

4. Which is not a feature of Community government?

a. Apart from the Central and the State Government, this is a third type of government.

b. It is elected by the people belonging to one community that is Dutch, French, German speaking.

c. It is mainly based on cooperation and tolerance.

d. It does not have the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.

2. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow:

Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. Let us call this horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such a separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the others. This results in a balance of power among various institutions. Last year we studied that in a democracy, even though ministers and government officials exercise power, they are responsible to the Parliament or State Assemblies. Similarly, although judges are appointed by the executive, they can check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislatures. This arrangement is called a system of checks and balances.

1. Power sharing between different organs of the government is being referred as:

a. Horizontal distribution of power.

b. Vertical division of power.

c. Union Government.

d. Community Government.

2. Power Sharing is between:

a. Legislature, executive and parliament.

b. Legislature, executive and judiciary.

c. Legislature, high court, and judiciary.

d. None of the above.

3. It allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers is known as:

a. Circular distribution of power.

b. Vertical distribution of power.

c. Horizontal distribution of power.

d. All of the above.

4. Judges are appointed by the executive; they can check the functioning of executive or laws made by the legislature known as:

a. Horizontal distribution of power.

b. Vertical distribution of power.

c. Checks and balances.

d. All of the above.

Answers Key

MCQ Answers

1. Answer: b
2. Answer: a
3. Answer: c
4. Answer: b
5. Answer: a
6. Answer: b
7. Answer: c
8. Answer: (b) B, C and D
9. Answer: d
10. Answer: c
11. Answer: c
12. Answer: c
13. Answer: (a) A, B, C
14. Answer: d
15. Answer: c

Very Short Answers:

1. A belief that the majority community should be able to rule a country in whatever way it wants, by disregarding the wishes and needs of the minorities.
2. In 1956, an act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the official language.
3. India is a multinational society and India is a democratic country.
4. Sri Lanka.
5. Prudential reasons stress that power sharing will bring out better outcome or results; whereas moral reasons emphasize the very act of power sharing as valuable.
6. Sri Lankan Tamils and Indian Origin Tamils.
7. Under this system, one organ of the government keeps the check over other. None of the organs can exercise unlimited power.
8. Religion and Language
9. Sinhalese Buddhist formed majority.
10. The Dutch formed majority.

Short Answers:

1. The Path of accommodation adopted in Belgium.

a) Dutch and French speaking ministers shall be equal in the central govt.

b) Many Powers of the central government have been given to state govt. The state govt are not subordinate to the central govt.

c) Brussels has a separate govt in which both the communities have equal representation.

d) There is a third kind of govt called community govt elected by the people belonging to Dutch, French and German no matter where they live.

2. The dominance of majority community to rule the country in whichever way it wants totally disregarding the wishes and needs of minority community is known as majoritarianism.

a) In Srilanka mainly there are two communities- Sinhala and Tamils the leaders of the Sinhala community sought to secure dominance over the govt by virtue of their majority. Sinhala has been recognized as the official language of the country by disregarding

b) Government followed a preferential policy favouring Sinhalese in university portions and govt jobs.

c) The govt encouraged and protected Buddhism The distrust has turned into a civil war that has caused a setback to social cultural and economic life of Srilanka.

3.

a) Recognition of Tamil as an official language.

b) Regional autonomy

c) Equal opportunity in securing jobs and education.

d) They formed several political organizations, but when the government tried to suppress their activities by force, this led to civil war

4.

a) This type of power sharing is known as horizontal power sharing as well as all the organs is placed at the same level and each organ can check the other.

b) For example even through ministers and government officials exercise power, they are responsible to the parliament.

5. Federalism is a system of government under which power is divided between a central authority and its various constituent units.

a) In federal government power is shared among the different levels of government but in unitary government all powers are in the hands of a single unit.

b) The Belgium leaders tried to solve the ethnic problem by respecting the feeling and interest if different committees and regions by establishing a federal government, whereas the Sri Lankan Government tried to solve the problem through Majoritarianism.

6. Horizontal Division of power, in which power is shared among different organs of the government like legislature, Executive and Judiciary.

a) Different organs of the government exercise the power.

b) It specifies the concept of check and balance.

c) It ensures the concept of the expansion of the democracy.

d) Examples: Legislature, Executive and Judiciary are the organs Government of India

7. In vertical division of Power Sharing power is shared among the different levels of the government like Union Government, state government and Lower levels.

a) Different levels of the government exercise the power of the government.

b) No specification of the system of checks and balance.

c) It ensures the concept of deepening of democracy.

d) Central Government, State Government and Panchayat Raj are the example of the Vertical division of Power Sharing.

8.

a) Area wise Belgium is a small country in Europe. It is smaller in area than that of Haryana in India.

b) It has borders with Netherlands, France and Germany.

c) Regarding population it has a population over one crore, about half of the population of Haryana.

d) It has a very complex ethnic composition comprising various language speaking communities than India which is a secular and integrated country.

9.

a) The Dutch form 59%, the French form 40% and the German about 1% comprises the population of Belgium.

b) The French community is in majority in the capital of Belgium, Brussels.

c) They are rich and powerful and this is not liked by the Dutch.

d) The Dutch speaking community got the benefit of economic development and education much later showed the resentment.

e) This led to conflict between French and Dutch speaking people.

10.

a) Their forefathers came from India as plantation workers during colonial period.

b) Tamils who are brought as indentured laborers from India by British colonists to work in estate plantation are called Indian Origin Tamils re 5%.

c) Sri Lankan Tamils live in the north eastern part of the country.

Long Answers:

1.

a) Equal no of Ministers for both the groups: The Belgium constitution prescribes that the number of Dutch and French speaking ministers shall be equal in the central government. Some special laws require the support of majority of members from each linguistic group.

b) More powers to the state government: Under the proper power sharing arrangement many powers of the central government were given to state government for the two regions of the country. The state governments were not subordinate to the central government.

c) Equal representation at state and the central level: A separate government has been set up at Brussels in which both the communities have equal representation.

d) Formation of community government: A third kind of government was made that is community government. This community government is elected by the people belonging to one language community. Dutch, French and German speaking people have their own community government.

2.

a) In a democracy power is also shared among the different political parties, pressure groups and movements.

b) Democracy provides the citizens a choice to choose their rulers. This choice is provided by the various political parties, who contest elections to win. Such competition ensures that power does not remain in one hand.

c) In the long run power is shared among different political parties that represent different ideologies and social groups.

d) Sometimes this kind of sharing can be direct, when two or more parties from an alliance to contest elections. If their alliance is elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power.

e) In a democracy, various pressure groups and movements also remain active. They will also have a share in governmental power, either through participation in governmental committees or bringing influence on the decision making process.

3.

a) In a democracy power is shared among the different organs of the government such as Legislature, Executive and Judiciary. This is also called as the horizontal distribution of power sharing.

b) Legislature is lawmaking body, Executive is law implementing body and Judiciary is dispute solving body of the Government.

c) Because it also allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different power.

d) Under this kind of power sharing arrangements, no organ of the government can exercise unlimited powers.

e) Each organ has its own power and checks the powers of other.

f) This results in the in a balance of power among various institutions.

4.

a) In a democracy, especially in multiethnic society, power is also shared among social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups.

b) Community government in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement.

c) In some countries, there are constitutional and legal arrangements whereby socially weaker sections and women are represented in the legislatures and administration.

d) In India to provide share in power to backward and other classes, a system of reserved constituencies in assemblies and the parliament is followed.

e) This type arrangement is meant to give proper share in the government and administration to diverse social groups who otherwise would feel alienated from the Government.

5.

a) Under this people choose separate government at separate levels for example a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial, sub-national or regional level.

b) Such a general government for the entire country is usually called a federal government.

c) In India we refer to it as the union government. The governments at the provincial or regional level are called by different names in different countries.

d) In India these are known as state governments. This system is not followed in all the countries of the world.

e) The division of power is more important under such type of Governments. A government at different levels enjoys different powers which are given to them by the constitution.

f) The divisions of power involving higher and lower levels of government are called vertical division of power.

6.

(a) The leaders of the Sinhala community tried to ensure the dominance of their community over the other communities of Sri Lanka after independence.

(b) The adopted a series of majoritarian measures to establish Sinhala supremacy.

(c) In 1956, an act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language.

(d) Sinhala people were given special preference in government jobs and university admissions.

(e) Buddhism was declared the national religion.

(f) Consequences: All these government measures increased the feeling of alienation among the other Communities. They felt that their language and culture were not given due importance. They also felt that the constitution and the policies of the government denied them to give equal political powers. As a result their relations with the Sinhala community worsened.

7.

(a) It is an Island nation south of India. Tamil natives are called Sri Lankan Tamils and formed 13% population.

(b) The Indian Tamils whose forefathers had come from India as plantation workers formed 5% population.

(c) The Sinhala Buddhist, who was 74% of the population, formed the majority government after independence in 1948.

(d) Tamils are either Hindus or Muslims, 7% of the people are Christian who are both Tamil and Sinhala.

(e) Sinhalese enjoy majority and can impose their will on the entire country.

8.

(a) In 1970-193, the constitution of Belgium was amended for times to accommodate linguistic, cultural and regional differences.

(b) The Dutch and French speaking ministers were equal number in the central government.

(c) Special laws required the support of majority of members from each linguistic group.

(d) Many powers of the central government had been given to state governments of the two regions of the country.

(e) Brussels had a separate government where both communities were given equal representation.

(f) Community government of each section was also introduced.

Assertion Reason Answers:

1. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
2. (d) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

Case Study Answers:

1.

i. (d) All of the above.

ii. (a) Reduces the possibilities of conflicts between social groups.

iii. (b) State Government.

iv. (a) Apart from the Central and the State Government, this is a third type of government.

2.

i. (b) Vertical division of power.

ii. (c) Legislature, high court, and judiciary.

iii. (b) Vertical distribution of power.

iv. (d) All of the above.

Federalism 2

Federalism and its Features

Federalism is a democratic form of government in which the power to govern the country is shared or divided between the Central and the State Governments. Largely, both these levels of government work independently of each other. Examples: India, USA, Australia, Switzerland. **Federalism is vertical power sharing.**

In contrast to federalism, there also exists a **unitary** form of government. In the unitary form of government, all powers are concentrated only in the hands of the Central Government. Provincial governments or local governments may exist, but they are bound to work according to the guidelines provided by the Central Government. Examples: Great Britain, Sri Lanka, North Korea.

Main Features of Federalism

Some main features of the federal form of government are:

- There are two or three levels of governments—Central Government, State Government and Local Government.
- Each level of government administers over the same region, but they have their own jurisdiction in matters of administration, taxation and legislation.
- The Government at each level derives its power from the Constitution of the country. Thus, the Central Government cannot dilute the powers of the State or Local Governments.
- The basic principles of the Constitution and the rights given to the people cannot be changed by only one tier of the Government. It requires the consent of governments at both levels.
- Courts of the country act as a referee between the Central and the State Governments if any dispute arises between the two.
- Both levels of the Government can collect taxes from the people according to the guidelines of the Constitution of the country.
- Federalism thus not only safeguards the unity of the nation but also maintains the regional and linguistic diversities of the people.

It is to be noticed that both levels of government should agree to the rules of power sharing and trust each other.

Powers of the Central and the State Governments differ from country to country. There are two ways in which a country may become federal.

1. When independent states come together and form one country, they retain their power to maintain their identity. This kind of federation is called **'coming together' federations**. Examples: **USA** and **Australia.**
2. The second way in which a country can become federal is when it decides to divide its powers between the Central and the State Governments. This may be termed **'holding together' federations**. Examples: **India** and **Spain.**

Unitary System	Federal System
There is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the Central Government.	There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
The Central Government can pass on orders to the provincial or local government.	The Central Government cannot order the state government to do something.
The central government is supreme, and the administrative divisions exercise only powers that the central government has delegated to them. Their powers may be broadened and narrowed by the central government	State Government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the central government.

India - A Federal Country

India is a federal country. It has three tiers of government-the Central Government, the State Government and the local bodies such as municipal corporations and panchayats. There are three lists which contain subjects in which the Union and the State Governments may form laws. These are

- **Union List:** This list contains subjects of national importance on which only the Central Government forms laws. Some of these are defence, foreign affairs, banking and currency. It is important to form uniform laws on these subjects.
- **State List:** This list includes subjects of state and local importance such as agriculture, irrigation, trade and police. State governments form laws on these subjects.
- **Concurrent List:** Subjects related to the interests of both Central and State Governments are included in this list. This includes forest, education, trade unions and marriage. In case there are conflicts between both wings of the Government, the laws made by the Union Government are deemed as final.

Subjects which do not fall in the above lists are known as residuary subjects and fall within the jurisdiction of the Union Government. In India, all State Governments do not enjoy equal powers. There are some units of the Indian Union which enjoy very little power. These are areas which are too small to become an independent State but which could not be merged with any of the existing States. These are known as Union Territories. The Union Government has greater power over these territories.

This sharing of power between the Union Government and the State Governments is basic to the structure of the Constitution. Any change to it has to be first passed by both the Houses of Parliament with at least two-thirds majority. Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of at least half of the total States. The Union and State Governments have the power to raise resources by levying taxes.

Practice of Federalism

In India, federalism has become successful because of following reasons:

Creation of Linguistic States

- After the independence of India in 1947, many states were created based on the languages which were spoken by the people such as Maharashtra, Punjab and West Bengal.
- Some states were created because of their unique geographical position, cultural, ethnic identities such as Uttarakhand, Nagaland and Jharkhand.

Language Policy

- After Independence, there was a great deal of confusion as to which language should be the official language of the country. While Hindi-speaking states wanted Hindi to be declared as the national language, many non-speaking states wanted English to remain as the official language of the country.

- The leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude while forming the language policy. Hindi, which is spoken by about 40% of our population, was declared as the official language. Many languages were also recognised as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. Apart from Hindi, there are 21 scheduled languages.
- Candidates appearing for any Central exams may opt to write exams in any one of these scheduled languages.
- States have their own official languages, and all government work is done in the official language of the concerned state.

Such kind of an arrangement has helped in preserving the culture of many linguistic groups and has maintained the diversity of our country.

Centre-State Relations

- After Independence, there were only few parties which formed governments at the centre and at the state levels. When rival parties formed the Government at the state level, the Central Government tried to misuse its powers by dismissing the State Governments. This weakened the federal spirit of our constitution.
- However, the condition improved after 1990 when many regional parties emerged in different states.
- This also marked the beginning of the **coalition government**. Two or more parties formed the Government at the centre in the absence of a clear majority. This led to a new era of power sharing and respecting the independent working of the State Governments.

Thus, the principle of sharing of power has become more effective today than it was in the earlier years after Independence.

The States Plead for More Powers



Perils of Running a Coalition Government



Decentralisation in India

Apart from the Central and the State Governments, when the powers are also given to the local bodies such as municipal corporation or panchayats, it is called decentralisation. Decentralisation of powers is important because certain problems of the people can be effectively solved by the local bodies as the latter has a better idea of the problems which are faced by people at the local level.

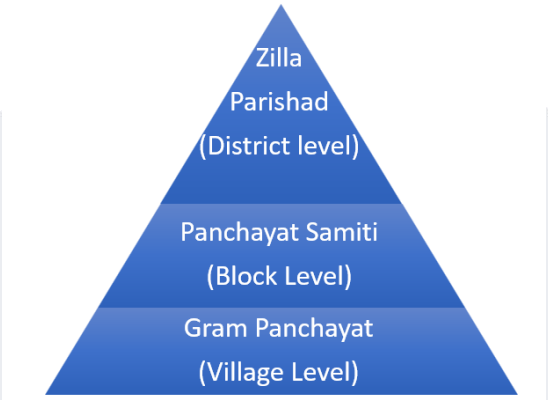
In 1992, the Constitution was amended to make local government more powerful and responsible. These are

- It is obligatory to hold elections for choosing members of local governmental institutions.
- Seats are reserved for people belonging to scheduled castes and scheduled tribes and other backward classes in local bodies.
- One-third of the seats are reserved for women.
- State Election Commission was constituted in the states for holding elections in government bodies.
- It is mandatory for the State Governments to share powers and revenues with local bodies.

Structure of Local Bodies

Panchayati Raj

- Local bodies in villages are known as **Panchayati Raj**. Each village, or a group of villages in some States, has a gram panchayat. This is a council consisting of several ward members, often called panch, and a president or sarpanch. They are directly elected by all the adult population living in a village or ward. Gram Panchayat is the decision-making body for the entire village.
- The Panchayat works under the overall supervision of the Gram Sabha. All the voters in the village are its members. It has to meet at least twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the gram panchayat and to review the performance of the Gram Panchayat.
- At the district level, many panchayats form a body known as **panchayat samiti** or block or mandals. The member of Panchayat Samiti representative are elected by all the Panchayat members in that area.



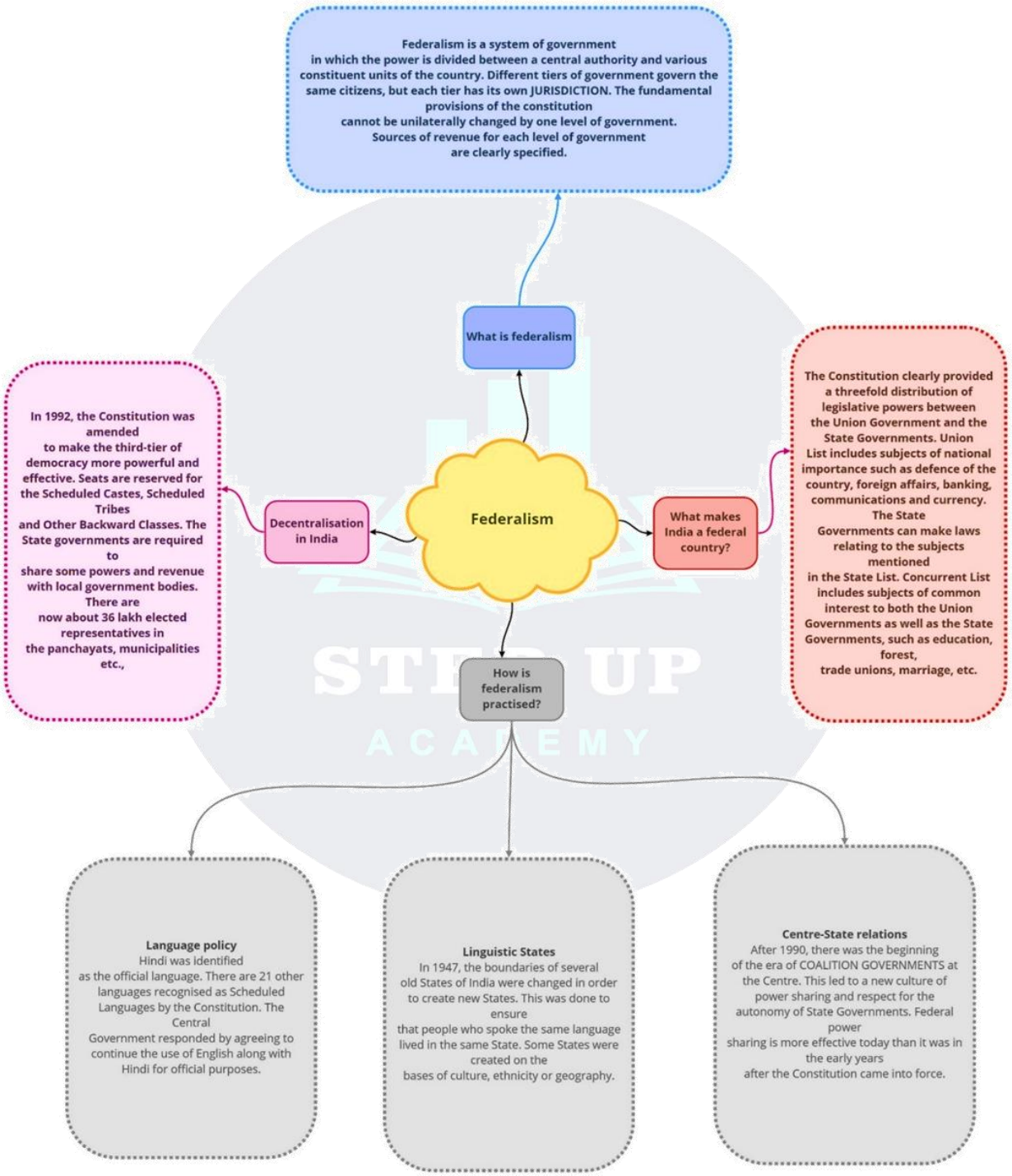
- All panchayat samitis or mandals in the district collectively constitute the **Zilla Parishad**. All members of the Zilla Parishad are elected. MLAs and members of the Lok Sabha are also members of the Zilla Parishad.

Municipal Corporations

- Urban local bodies in small towns are known as **municipalities**. Large cities have **municipal corporations**. Both local bodies consist of representatives elected by the people.
- The **Municipal Chairperson** is the head of the municipality, while the **Mayor** is the head of the Municipal Corporation.

This new system of local government is the largest experiment in democracy conducted anywhere in the world. Constitutional status for local government has helped to deepen democracy in our country. It has also increased women's representation and voice in our democracy.

Class : 10th Political Science
Chapter-2 : Federalism



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions:

1. The System of Panchayati Raj involves
   (a) The village, block and district levels
   (b) The village, and state levels
   (c) The village district and state levels
   (d) The village, state and Union levels
2. In case of a clash between the laws made by the centre and a state on a subject in the concurrent list:
   (a) the state law prevails.
   (b) the central law prevails.
   (c) both the laws prevail within their respective jurisdictions.
   (d) the Supreme Court has to intervene to decide.
3. Which of the following subjects is not included in the state list?
   (a) Law and order
   (b) National defence
   (c) Education
   (d) Agriculture
4. In India's federal system, the state governments have the power to legislate on all those subjects which are included in the:
   (a) Union list
   (b) State list
   (c) Concurrent list
   (d) Residuary subjects
5. The Constitution of India
   (a) divided powers between Centre and states in three lists.
   (b) divided powers between Centre and states in two lists.
   (c) listed the powers of the states and left the undefined powers to the state.
   (d) Specified the powers of the states and left the residuary powers with the Centre.
6. Which of the following government has two or more levels?
   (a) Community Government
   (b) Coalition Government
   (c) Federal Government
   (d) Unitary Government
7. Which of the following countries is an example of "coming together federation"?
   (a) U.S.A
   (b) India
   (c) Spain
   (d) Belgium
8. Here are three reactions to the language policy followed in India. Which of the following holds true in the case of India?
   (a) The policy of accommodation has strengthened national unity.
   (b) Language based states have divided us by making everyone conscious of their language.
   (c) The language policy has only helped to consolidate the dominance of English over all other languages.
9. Consider the following statements on the practice of federalism in India. Identify those which hold true for decentralisation after 1992.
   A. Local governments did not have any power or resources of their own.
   B. It became constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
   C. The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.
   D. No seats are reserved in the elected bodies for scheduled castes, scheduled tribes and other backward classes.
   (a) B and C
   (b) A and C
   (c) A and D
   (d) B and D

10. In a 'Holding together federation':

A. A large country divides its power between constituent states and the national government.

B. The Central government tends to be more powerful vis-a-vis the States.

C. All the constituent states usually have equal powers.

D. Constituent states have unequal powers.

Which of the above statements are correct?

(a) A, B, C and D

(b) A and D

(c) B and C

(d) A, B and D

11. Which among the following are examples of 'Coming together federations?

(a) India, Spain and Belgium

(b) India, USA and Spain

(c) USA, Switzerland and Australia

(d) Belgium and Sri Lanka

12. The Union List includes subjects such as:

(a) Education, forests, trade unions, marriages, adoption and succession.

(b) Police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation.

(c) Residuary subjects like computer software.

(d) Defense, foreign affairs, banking, currency, communications.

13. The system of Panchayati Raj involves:

(a) Village, State and Union levels

(b) Village, District and State levels

(c) Village and State levels

(d) Village, Block and District levels

14. Which one of the following States in India has its own Constitution?

(a) Uttarakhand

(b) Madhya Pradesh

(c) J & K

(d) Nagaland

15. Match the following:

Column A	Column B
(A) Union Territory	(i) Decision-making body for the entire village
(B) Local self	(ii) An alliance of more than government two parties
(C) Coalition	(iii) Representatives' government body at the district level
(D) Zila Parishad	(iv) Area which is run by the Union/Central government.

(a) A – (ii), B – (iii), C – (iv) and D – (i)

(b) A – (iv), B – (i), C – (iii) and D – (ii)

(c) A – (iv), B – (i), C – (ii) and D – (iii)

(d) A – (iv), B – (iii), C – (ii) and D – (i)

Very Short:

1. Name the Indian state that has its own constitution.
2. What is federalism?
3. What is Unitary Government?
4. Define Gram Panchayat?
5. What is Panchayat Samiti?
6. Define Zila Parishad?
7. What is Mayor?
8. The Subjects like-Defense, Banking and Communication are come under which list?
9. Point out one feature in the practice of federation in India that is similar from that of Belgium.
10. Point out one feature in the practice of federation in India that is different from to that of Belgium.

Short Questions-

1. Why is the central government of India not compelling states to adopt Hindi as their official language?
2. Contrast a federal system of government with a unitary set-up with examples.
3. Highlight the two types of routs through which the federations are formed. Give example.
4. Explain the role of union list, state list and concurrent list with context to India.

5. What are significances of Panchayat Raj?
6. Explain the organization of the local government bodies of urban areas.
7. Differentiate between Federal Government and the Unitary Government.
8. How federalism leads to reservation of seats for different caste groups?
9. What was the Amendment in regard to decentralization?
10. How is the Federal government better than a Unitary Government? Explain with the example of Belgium and Sri Lanka.

Long Questions-

1. Explain five changes towards decentralization brought in the Constitution after the Amendments made in 1992.
2. Is it right to say that India is federal country but the word federalism is not used anywhere in the constitution? Explain.
3. What is the rationale for decentralization of power? Explain the structure of Rural local government in India.
4. How is the Federal government better than a Unitary Government? Explain with the example of Belgium and Sri Lanka.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion(A): When power is taken away from central and state governments and given to local governments it is called decentralisation.

   Reason(R): At least one third of all positions are reserved for women in local government bodies.
2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion(A): Belgium shifted from a federal form of government to a unitary government.

   Reason(R): Usually, a federation has two levels of government.

Cash Study Questions:

1. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow:

   The need for decentralisation was recognised in our Constitution. Since then, there have been several attempts to decentralise power to the level of villages and towns. Panchayat in villages and municipalities in urban areas were set up in all the States. But these were directly under the control of state governments. Elections to these local governments were not held regularly. Local governments did not have any powers or resources of their own. Thus, there was very little decentralisation in effective terms.

   A major step towards decentralisation was taken in 1992. The Constitution was amended to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective. Now it is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies. Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes, and Other Backward Classes. At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women. An independent institution called the State Election Commission has been created in each State to conduct panchayat and municipal elections. The State governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies. The nature of sharing varies from State to State.

   i. What is the basic idea behind decentralization?
      a. There are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level.
      b. Besides, at the local level it is possible for the people to directly participate in

decision making. This helps to inculcate a habit of democratic participation.

c. Local government is the best way to realise one important principle of democracy, namely local self-government.

d. All the above.

ii. Consider the following statements on the practice of federalism in India. Identify those which hold true for decentralisation after 1992.

a. B and C

b. A and C

c. A and D

d. B and D

iii. In local self-government institutions at least one-third of all positions are reserved for.

a. Men.

b. Women.

c. Scheduled caste.

d. Scheduled tribe.

iv. Which of these is incorrect, based on the Constitutional Amendment, 1992?

a. One-fourth of positions are reserved for women.

b. Regular elections should be held to the local government bodies.

c. Seats are reserved for SCs, STs and OBCs.

d. State Election Commission looks after these elections.

2. Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow:

The creation of linguistic States was the first and a major test for democratic politics in our country. Many old States have vanished, and many new States have been created. Areas, boundaries, and names of the States have been changed. In 1947, the boundaries of several old States of India were changed in order to create new States. This was done to ensure that people who spoke the same language lived in the same State. Some States were created not on the basis of language but to recognise differences based on culture, ethnicity or geography. These include States like Nagaland, Uttarakhand, and Jharkhand. When the demand for the formation of States on the basis of language was raised, some national leaders feared that it would lead to the disintegration of the country. The Central Government resisted linguistic States for some time. But the experience has shown that the formation of linguistic States has actually made the country, more united. It has also made administration easier.

i. Select the two bases on which new states of India have been created.

a. Religion and geography.

b. Language and regional culture.

c. Culture and religion.

d. Language and community.

ii. Which state of India was first form on the bases of language?

a. Karnataka.

b. Tamil Nadu.

c. Andhra Pradesh.

d. Telangana.

iii. Here are four reactions to the language policy followed in India. Which are true in the case of India?

a. Language based states have divided us by making everyone conscious of their language.

b. The policy of accommodation has strengthened national unity.

c. The language policy has only helped to consolidate the dominance of English over all other languages.

d. It lead to the disintegration of the country.

iv. Which was the first test for democratic politics in our Country?

a. Caste problem.

b. Language problem.

c. Problems related to union territories.

d. Creation of linguistic state.

Answers

MCQ Answers:

1. Answer: a
2. Answer: b
3. Answer: b
4. Answer: b
5. Answer: a
6. Answer: c
7. Answer: a
8. Answer: a
9. Answer: a
10. Answer: d
11. Answer: c
12. Answer: d
13. Answer: d
14. Answer: c
15. Answer: c

Very Short Answers:

1. Jammu and Kashmir
2. Federalism is a system of government, under which power is divided between a central authority and its various constituent units.
3. In unitary government there is only one level of government and if sub units are there, that are subordinate to the central government.
4. It is council consisting of several ward members at village level, often called the Panch and the head is Sarpanch.
5. A few Gram Panchayats are grouped together to form a Panchayat Samiti or Block or a Mandal.
6. All the panchayat Samitis or Mandals in a district together constitute the Zila Parishad.
7. Mayor is the head of a Municipal Corporation.
8. Union List
9. In both countries there are two or more levels of Government.
10. In Belgium Community Government is there, but in India such type of provision is not there.

Short Answers:

1.

a) India is multilingual country. According to the census of 1991 recorded more than 1500 distinct languages, people mentioned their mother tongues.

b) Hindi is mother tongue of only 40% of the people of India.

c) There are 21 languages recognized by the constitution.

d) In states of Southern India there has been violent opposition to Hindi.

2.

a) Federalism has at least two levels of government.

b) The central government is responsible for subjects of national importance.

c) The state government looks after the daily administration of the states.

d) In Unitary system there is only one level of government and if any subunits are there that remains subordinate to the central government.

3.

a) When independent states come together and form a federation is coming together route. Example: USA, Switzerland and Australia.

b) When a country decides to divide its power between the constituent state and the national government that is holding together route. Example: India, Spain and Belgium.

4.

a) Union list includes those subjects which are of national interest and on which a uniform policy is needed in the whole country. The Union Government makes laws on these subjects. Example, defense, foreign affairs and banking.

b) State list includes subjects of state and local importance example, police, trade, agriculture etc.

c) Concurrent list includes subjects of common interest to the Union Government and the State Government, Example: Education, forest etc.

5.

a) It is the third level of Indian Federal System.

b) This level gives a chance to the people to become the representatives of people.

c) There are 36 lakhs elected representatives in the local bodies.

d) There is reservation for women, SCs and STs.

e) They strengthen the democratic system of India.

6.

a) Local Government bodies exist in urban areas also. In Towns there are municipalities and in big cities there are municipal corporations.

b) Both municipalities and municipal corporations are controlled by elected bodies consisting of people's representatives.

c) Municipality is headed by the chairman and Municipal Corporation is headed by the Mayor.

7.

a) In the unitary system power is centered with the central authority and in federal system, power is allotted to the state and local level government.

b) In Federal system power is allocated separately to the central and state level governments. In Unitary system there is no separate unit of the government.

c) In Federal system the focus is on national and state issues and in unitary system, the focus is completely on gaining power.

d) In country like France, Italy, Japan and UK use unitary system. The countries like US, Canada, Argentina, Australia, Austria, India, and Switzerland use federal system of government.

8.

a) Federalism means sharing power among the central and non central authorities. it seeks to give equal representation to all the constituent units.

b) Even in the constituent units or in states, there is diversity in the population with respect to language, religion, caste and culture.

c) To give equal opportunity and voice to various social groups, there is reservation for some categories like SCs, STs, OBCs and women in some areas.

d) This reservation aims to give power to the socially weaker sections of the society to give them an equal chance and representation in the political system.

9.

a) In 1992, 73rd Amendment Act gave constituent status to the Panchayati raj institution.

b) It created the third tier of federalism in India below the central government level and the state government level.

c) The Objective of this Amendment was to make democracy more powerful and effective by giving power to the grassroots units of self government.

10.

a) If we study the main difference between the federal and the unitary governments, in the present times the federal governments certainly score over the unitary governments, especially when people of different religions, castes and cultures resides in one and same country.

b) In chapter Power Sharing we have seen how a unitary form of government has proved a failure in Sri Lanka while a federal type of government has proved a great success in Belgium.

c) In Sri Lanka Unitary government fails to solve the dispute of different sections of the society but in Belgium the federal government gives equal respect to the demands of different sections of the society.

d) In Belgium all types of people have been accommodated while in Majoritarianism has been thrust upon the people especially over the minority community in Sri Lanka.

Long Answers:

1.

- Decentralization: When power is taken from central and state governments and is given to local government, it is called decentralization. The Constitution was amended in 1992 to make the third tier of democracy more powerful and effective.
- Provisions of the Constitutional Amendment of 1992 are:
  (i) Now it is mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
  (ii) Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for SCs, STs and OBCs.
  (iii) At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
  (iv) An independent institution called State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
  (v) The state governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.

2.

- India had emerged as an independent nation after a painful and bloody partition.
- Soon after independence several princely states become a part of the country.
- The constitution declared India as a Union of States.
- Although it did not use the word federation, the Indian Union is based on the principles of federalism.
- India is fulfilling all the requirements which are required for a federal country.

3.

The basic idea behind decentralization:

- Large number of problems and issues are best settled at the local level because people have better knowledge of their local problems.
- It helps in promoting direct participation.

Structure of Rural Local Government:

- **Zila Parishad:** All the mandals in a district together constitute the Zila Parishad. Most of the members are elected and headed by a chairperson.
- **Panchayat Samiti or Mandal or Block:** The members of this body are elected by the entire panchayat members in that area. A few Gram Panchayats are grouped together to form this government body.
- **Gram Panchayat:** A council consisting of several ward members often called Panch. The president is called sarpanch. It is the decision-making body for the entire village.

4.

a) If we study the main difference between the federal and the unitary governments, in the present times the federal governments certainly score over the unitary governments, especially when people of different religions, castes and cultures resides in one and same country.

b) In chapter Power Sharing we have seen how a unitary form of government has proved a failure in Sri Lanka while a federal type of government has proved a great success in Belgium.

c) In Sri Lanka Unitary government fails to solve the dispute of different sections of the society but in Belgium the federal government gives equal respect to the demands of different sections of the society.

d) In Belgium all types of people have been accommodated while in Majoritarianism has been thrust upon the people especially over the minority community in Sri Lanka.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
2. (d) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

Case Study Answer:

1.

i. (b) Besides, at the local level it is possible for the people to directly participate in decision making. This helps to inculcate a habit of democratic participation.

ii. (c) A and D

iii. (d) Scheduled tribe.

iv. (d) State Election Commission looks after these elections.

2.

i. Religion and geography.

ii. Tamil Nadu.

iii. The language policy has only helped to consolidate the dominance of English over all other languages.

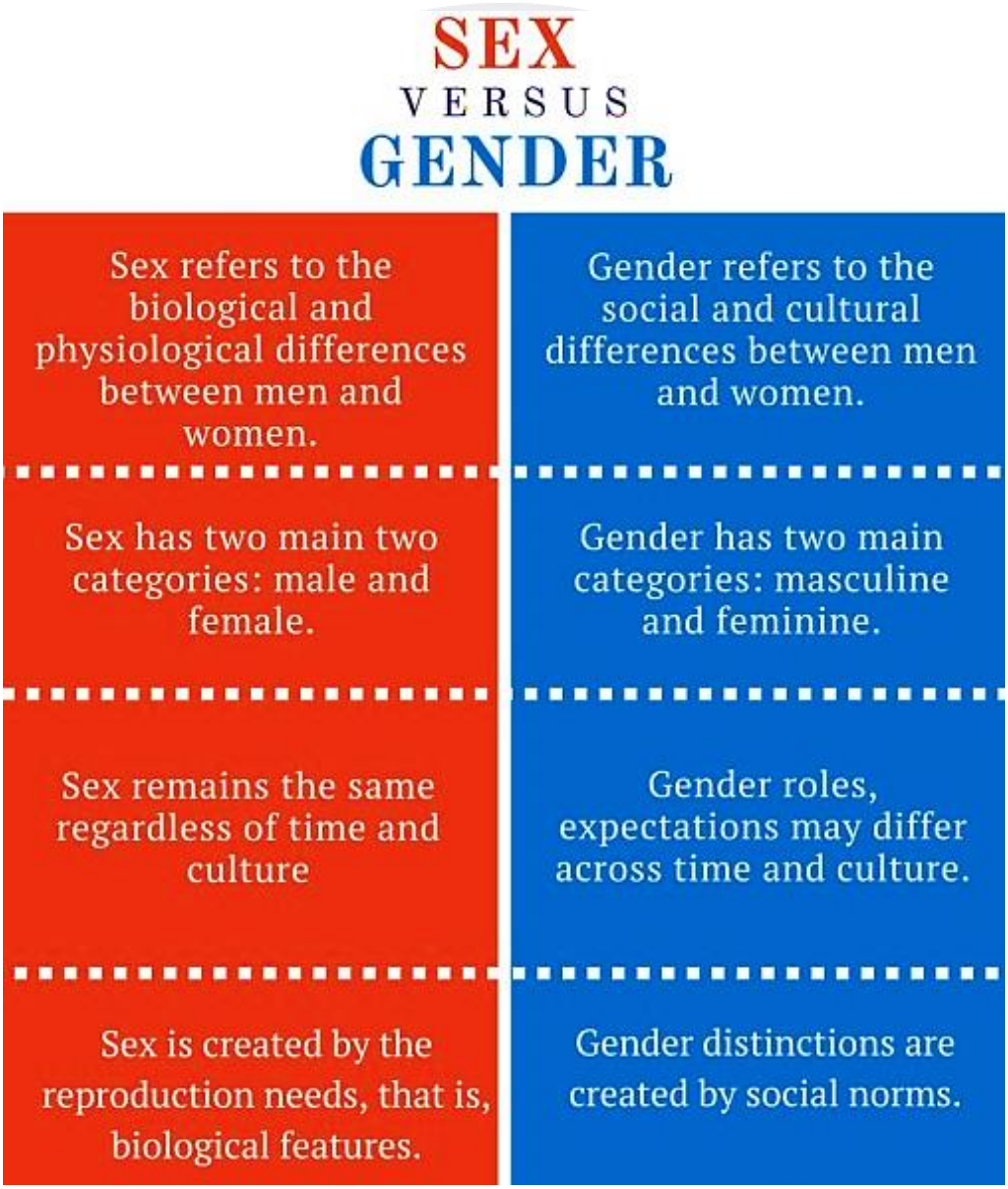
iv. Problems related to union territories.



Gender, Religion and Caste 3

In India, gender, religion and caste differences are the three biggest issues which have challenged social equality.

Gender Politics



Gender differences assume the following forms in India:

- There is sexual division of work in our society. While office work and high-paid jobs are considered men's domain in India, household work such as washing, cooking and tailoring are done by women.
- It is only when these forms of work become paid jobs do men readily accept them; for example, chefs. Even

women work outside their homes; for example, they plough the fields in villages, fetch water etc., but again, these forms of work are neither valued nor acknowledged.

- Although women constitute fifty percent of society, they do not enjoy equal power with men. Women had to struggle hard to gain voting and other democratic rights in many countries. While women in Scandinavian countries such as Finland and Norway actively participate in public life, women in India are far behind men in many spheres.
- Indian society is a patriarchal society; it is dominated by men.
- The literacy rate is only 54% for women compared to 76% for men. At the school level, although girls perform better than boys, they drop out during higher education as parents prefer to spend money on educating boys.
- Only few women are currently working in highly paid jobs. Although the Equal Wages Act lays down that equal wages should be given to both men and women for the same work, women are still paid less than men.
- As the Indian society is patriarchal, many girls are aborted, resulting in a decline in the child sex ratio. The child sex ratio is the number of girl child per thousand boys.
- Domestic violence against women and the physical and mental harassment of women at the office place are some issues which most women face in the country.

Political Representation of Women

It has to be realised that until women get an adequate representation in the legislatures of their countries, their conditions will not improve. Institutions such as the Panchayati Raj have reserved one-third of their seats for women. Many women's organisations are also demanding reservation of one-third of seats in the Lok Sabha and State Assemblies. **This bill was recently passed by the Indian Parliament in 2023. The bill was named Nari Shakti Vandan Adhiniyam 2023 and it provides 1/3rd reserved seats for women in state legislature and Lok Sabha.**

Women's political participation has been significantly lower than men's across the globe. Women's well-being can be improved by providing them political power and placing them in decision-making and law-making roles in society. When women gain power, they will devote their efforts to meeting women's demands and finding answers to their challenges.

- Women's political participation in India is lower than the global average. In India, women make up about 10% of legislators, compared to 19% globally.
- In India, women are underrepresented in state legislatures. Only roughly 5% of the population.
- The Panchayati Raj Act mandates that women candidates be given 1/3 of all seats in local bodies. Women's participation in municipalities and panchayats has increased as a result of this.
- However, attempts to introduce such legislation in the Lok Sabha and various state legislatures have failed in the past. The law was never passed because political parties were unable to reach an agreement on it.

Religion, Communalism and Politics

Religion: Religious divisions frequently manifest themselves in the realm of politics. There are people who follow several religions in India. As members of a religious community, people should be able to express their needs, interests, and demands in politics.

Family Law: These are the laws that govern family-related issues such as marriage, divorce, inheritance, and adoption, etc. Different family laws apply to people of various religions in our country.

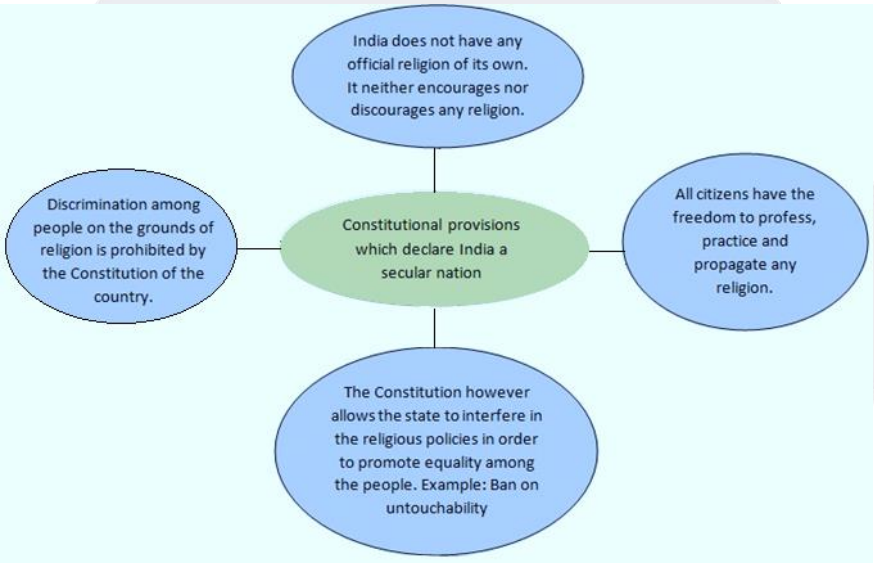
Communalism: Communalism is one of the major problems faced by our country currently. Communalism becomes a problem when

- Religious fanaticism reaches its height and religion becomes more important than the interests of the wider society or a nation
- One religious community is pitted against the other religious community

- Beliefs of one religion is regarded as superior to the other religion
- Religion becomes an inseparable part of politics; the state power is used to emphasise superiority and domination of one religion over the other
- In politics, communalism can acquire various forms. These are
    1. When religious beliefs of a person involve prejudices and stereotypes, claiming one religion's ideas to be superior than another.
    2. When a majority community tries to establish its domination over the other communities with the help of the state. Minority communities under such circumstances, retaliates by demanding the formation of separate state for them. Political mobilisation on religious lines occurs when religious symbols and leaders make an emotional appeal to the people in order to bring the members of a particular community together.
    3. Communal violence is the worst form of communalism. It acquires the political form when it is sponsored by the state.

A Secular State - India

The framers of our Constitution declared India as a secular state. The Constitution of our country declares India as a secular state. This is reflected in many constitutional provisions. **(Freedom of Religion Article – 25-28)**



Caste and Politics

The caste system has been an integral part of Indian society since ancient times. It is based on the occupations of the people which are hereditary. People belonging to the lower caste are considered outcastes and untouchables. We find that caste inequalities are breaking down because of the following reasons:

- Development of urban centres
- Weakening of the position of the landlords
- Occupation mobility
- Economic growth and development

However, the caste system has not disappeared from the country altogether. It still exists in most rural societies and to some extent in urban societies. The caste system takes the following forms in politics:

- While choosing candidates for contesting the elections, the caste composition of the electorate is always kept in mind. This is done to win the support of the people for a candidate belonging to a particular caste.
- When forming the Government, political parties try to include representatives of different castes and tribes.
- Political parties appeal to the caste sentiments of the people to help their candidates to win the elections.

Caste Inequalities: Occupation is typically passed down from generation to generation in most countries. This is taken to its logical conclusion in the caste system. Members of the same caste were intended to establish a social

community that practiced the same or comparable occupations, married within the caste group, and did not eat with members of other caste groups, according to this system.

The traditional conceptions of Caste Hierarchy are crumbling as a result of economic progress, large-scale urbanization, increased literacy and education, job mobility, and the weakening of the status of landowners in communities. The Indian Constitution outlawed caste-based discrimination and set the groundwork for policies to correct the system's inequities.

Caste in Politics

However, we also need to keep in mind that the caste system always does not play a role in shaping politics or deciding the candidates from a constituency. This is due to the following reasons:

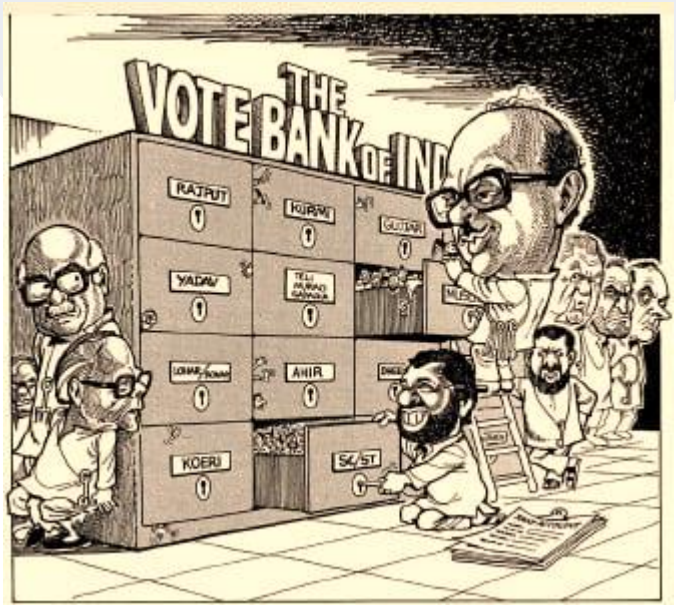
- Not every constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste. Therefore, every party is required to win the trust of the people belonging to different castes.
- No political party wins all the votes of a particular favoured caste or community. When people say that caste is a 'vote bank', they simply mean that many people from that one particular caste may vote for the party.
- Because several political parties fight elections, there may be many candidates from the same caste fighting elections against each other.
- It has been seen that many elected MPs or MLAs may lose the elections. If candidates are elected on caste lines, then no candidate can ever lose the elections.

Politics in Caste

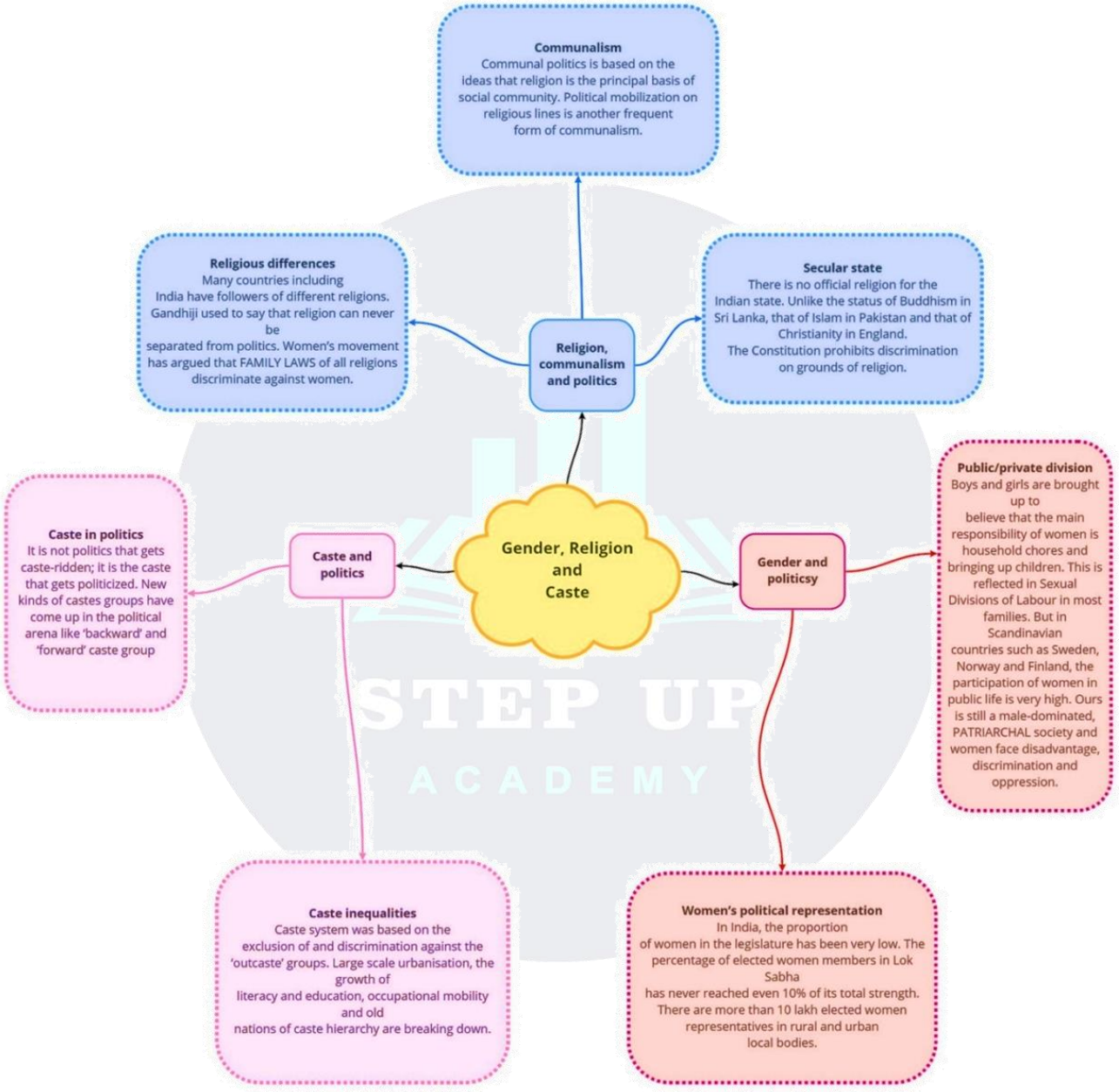
The caste system in India can also become politicised in the following ways:

- When a particular caste tries to gain prominence by adding many neighbouring castes and sub-castes which were earlier not included.
- The caste system also becomes politicised when caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes. In such a case, every caste tries to gain maximum benefits for itself.
- Of late, many caste groups have gained entry into politics by terming themselves as 'backward' or 'forward' caste groups.

It is to be noticed that the existence of the caste system is itself not healthy for any democracy. It mostly produces negative results. In India, it has resulted in the vicious circle of poverty, unemployment and illiteracy for many castes. The caste system may also lead to caste division, caste violence and conflicts resulting in violence.



Class : 10th Political Science
Chapter-4 : Gender, Religion and Caste



Important Questions

Multiple Choice questions-

1. 'Feminist movements' are aimed at:
   (a) Liberty
   (b) Equality
   (c) Participation
   (d) Power
2. Which one of the following is not a cause of communalism?
   (a) Religion is taken as the basis of the nation
   (b) When one religion is discriminated against other
   (c) State has no official religion
   (d) Demands of one religious group are formed in opposition to another
3. Which of the following divisions is unique to India?
   (a) Gender division
   (b) Caste division
   (c) Economic division
   (d) Religious division
4. Select the laws enacted by the Parliament for the welfare of women.
   (a) Special Marriage Act of 1955
   (b) Dowry Prohibition Act of 1961
   (c) Equal Remuneration Act of 1976
   (d) All the above
5. Women in India are discriminated in;
   (a) Political life
   (b) Social life
   (c) Economic life
   (d) All of the above
6. "Sexual Division of labour signifies, that
   (i) Gender division emphasises division on the basis of nature of work.
   (ii) Division between men and women.
   (iii) Caste is the basis of Gender Division.
   (iv) Work decides the division between men and women.
   (a) (i), (iii) and (iv)
   (b) (i), (ii) and (z'v)
   (c) (i) and (iii)
   (d) (iv) and (i)
7. In local self-government institutions, atleast one third of all positions are reserved for:
   (a) men
   (b) women
   (c) children
   (d) scheduled tribes
8. "A woman or a man who believes in equal rights and opportunities for men and women." Select the correct option for the definition.
   (a) Feminist
   (b) Patriarchy
   (c) Caste hierarchy
   (d) Social change
9. 'Equal Wages Act' signifies;
   (a) Law that deals with family related matters.
   (b) Law provides that equal wages should be paid for equal job for both men and women.
   (c) An Act which signifies that all work inside the home is done by the women of the family.
   (d) A radical law against the discriminatory attitude and sexual division of labour.
10. Which leaders worked for the elimination of caste system in India?
    (a) Jotiba Phule, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar, Mahatma Gandhi and Periyar Ram as warn i Naicker
    (b) Raja Ram Mohun Roy, Dr. B.R. Ambedkar and Mahatma Gandhi
    (c) Jotiba Phule, Periyar Ramaswami Naicker and Mahatma Gandhi
    (d) Swami Vivekanand, Jotiba Phule and Raja Ram Mohan Roy
11. Among the following, which countries have high participation of women in public life?
    (a) Sweden and India
    (b) Norway and Sri Lanka
    (c) Nepal and Finland
    (d) Sweden and Africa

12. The distinguishing feature of communalism is:
    (a) Followers of a particular religion must belong to one community.
    (b) Communalism leads to the belief that people belonging to different religions can live as equal citizens within one nation.
    (c) A communal mind does not lead to quest for political dominance of one's own religious community.
    (d) A secular constitution is sufficient combat communalism.
13. Identify the statements which suggest that it is not politics that gets caste-ridden, it is the caste that gets politicised.
    A. When governments are formed, political parties take care that representatives of different castes find a place in it.
    B. Each caste group incorporates neighbouring castes which were earlier excluded.
    C. Various caste groups enter into a coalition with other castes.
    D. Political parties and candidates in elections make appeals to caste sentiments.
    (a) A, B and D
    (b) B, C and D
    (c) B and C
    (d) A and D
14. Identify two reasons that state that caste alone cannot determine elections in India.
    A. No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community. i
    B. Some political parties are known to favour some castes and are seen as their representatives.
    C. No parliamentary constituency in the country has a clear majority of one single caste.
    D. Mobilising and securing political support has brought new consciousness among the lower castes.
    (a) A and C
    (b) A and D
    (c) B and C
    (d) B and D
15. When we speak of gender divisions, we usually refer to:
    (a) Biological difference between men and women
    (b) Unequal roles assigned by the society to men and women
    (c) Unequal child sex ratio
    (d) Absence of voting rights for women in democracies.

Very Short Questions-

1. State the definition of Feminist.
2. What is child sex ratio?
3. What is sex ratio?
4. What is the percentage of women in Lok Sabha as recommended by women's Reservation Bill?
5. What is caste Hierarchy?
6. What does the concept of majoritarian dominance refers to?
7. What equal wages act signifies?
8. Name any two laws that enacted by the Indian parliament for the welfare of women.
9. Name the leaders who worked for the elimination of caste system?
10. In which countries women are given high profile?

Short Questions-

1. What do you mean by gender division? How is it linked with division of Labour in most of the societies?
2. Give three ill-effects of communalism in the society.
3. Which factors are responsible for miserable and poor conditions of women in India? Explain.
4. Write two positive and two negative impacts each of caste-politics relation in India.
5. Explain the political considerations of democracy.
6. Explain the social considerations of democracy.
7. Explain the economic considerations of democracy.
8. How have the feminist movements helped in improving women's conditions?
9. What is casteism? How casteism in India different as compared to other society?
10. What are the feminist Movements? What are their demands?

Long Questions-

1. What is communalism? What are the major beliefs of communal people?
2. In actual life democracy do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities explain by giving examples.
3. Examine the basic features of the caste system prevailing in India.
4. Assess the influences of politics on caste system.
5. How Casteism is dangerous a democratic country?
6. Is caste system is coming to an end? Explain.
7. Explain the status of women's representation in India's legislative bodies.
8. How does communalism threaten the Indian Democracy? Explain.

Assertion and Reason Questions-

1. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
   a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.
   b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.
   c) Assertion is correct statement, but reason is wrong statement.
   d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

   Assertion (A): Sex-selective abortion led to decline of sex ratio in India. Reason (R) : Desire of for a male child makes Indian families abort girl.

   Reason (R): Desire of for a male child makes Indian families abort girl.
2. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
   a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.
   b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.
   c) Assertion is correct statement but reason is wrong statement.
   d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

   Assertion (A): Neglect of our environment has led to the destruction and extinction of many species of animals and plant life.

   Reason (R): Decreasing Forest cover area is a major reason of destruction of species.

Answers Key

MCQ Answers

1. Answer: b
2. Answer: c
3. Answer: b
4. Answer: d
5. Answer: d
6. Answer: b
7. Answer: b
8. Answer: a
9. Answer: b
10. Answer: a
11. Answer: d
12. Answer: a
13. Answer: c
14. Answer: a
15. Answer: b

Very Short Answers-

1. A women or a man who believe in equal rights and opportunities for women and men.
2. The member of girl children per 1000 boys.
3. It is the number of females per thousand males in a country.
4. 33 percent.
5. It is a ladder like formation in which all the caste groups are placed from the highest to the lowest caste.

6. It refers to the community belonging to a majority category takes the status of majoritarian dominance.
7. The law provides that equal wages should be paid for equal job for both men and women.
8. Special Marriage Act of 1955 and Dowry Prohibition Act of 1961.
9. Jotiba Phule, Mahatma Gandhi and Dr B. R. Ambedkar.
10. Scandinavian Countries- Sweden, Norway and Denmark.

Short Answers-

1. Gender division simply refers to the division of work between the men and the women. Some work especially the households such as cooking, washing, cleaning, etc. are exclusively meant for the women while the man have some other defined areas of work.
   (1) The gender division between the men and women does not mean that men cannot do house hold works. They simply think that it is for women to attend the household works.
   (2) The gender division also doesn't mean that women do not work outside their home.
2.
   (1) A communal thought always tends to establish political dominance offer particular religious community.
   (2) The country weakens when political parties are formed and political activities are conducted on the communal lines.
   (3) One of the most ugly face of communalism emerges out in the form of riots, violence and homicides.
3.
   (1) Sexual division of Labour.
   (2) Illiteracy
   (3) Lack of Representation in politics.
   (4) Discrimination in Job.
4.
   (1) Positive Impacts
   (i) Caste Politics relationship has helped people from Dalits and OBCs to gain better access to decision making.
   (ii) Now people are making voice for the end of discrimination against particular castes for more dignity and more access to land, other resources and opportunities.

   (2) Negative Impacts
   (i) It can divert attention from other pressing issues like poverty, development and corruption. Sometimes a few underprivileged castes get more benefit while other underprivileged classes remain deprived.
   (ii) Sometimes it also disrupts social harmony.
5.
   1. Elections should be held regularly and there should be more than one party in the elections.
   2. Elections should be held on the basis of universal adult franchise, which means every adult member has the right to vote. Citizens are participating in the political affairs of the government.
6.
   1) Social democracy means there should be equality and unity among the society.
   2) Everyone should have equal access to the resources of the society.
   3) There should not be any discrimination on the basis of caste, race, gender or religion.
   4) No religion or community is given any preference over other religions and communities.
7.
   1) Economic democracy means that every member enjoys, more or less, equal economic status.
   2) This means that there should not be large gaps between the rich and the poor.
   3) A society should not have a small very rich class and a large poor class.
   4) It also means that the government undertakes extensive social welfare schemes and achieve universal literacy rate.

8.

1) Political expression of gender division and mobilization on this question helped to improve the women's rule in public life.
2) Now women are working in different occupations such are scientists, doctors, engineering, lawyers, teachers which were not considered suitable for women.
3) In some parts of the world for example in Scandinavian countries such as Sweden, Norway and Finland the participation of women in public life is very high.

9.

1) Organisation of people into social groups for the purpose of marriage, work and diet in known as caste system.
2) The social structure of India is based upon the caste system.
3) All societies have some kind of social inequalities and some form of division of labor but the Indian caste system is a extreme form of division of labour based on birth.

10.

1) These are the movements which are organized by various women organizations to create equality for women in personal and family life.
2) These feminist movement demand equal rights for women in all shears of life.
3) These are agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women. The agitations demanded in enhancing the political and legal status of women.

Long Answers-

1.

1) Communalism is a situation when a particular community tries to promote its own interests at the cost of other communities.
2) Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of social community.
3) The followers of a particular religion must belong to one community. There fundamental interests should be the same. Any difference that they may have, that is irrelevant.
4) Communalism also includes that people who follow different religions have some commonalties. These are superficial and immaterial. There interests are bound be different and involve a conflict.
5) Sometimes communalism leads to the belief that people belonging to different religions cannot live as equal citizens within one nation.

2.

1) In most of the democracies a small number of ultra rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income.
2) The share of rich class is increases whereas those who are not at bottom of the society have been little to depend upon.
3) Even in India, the poor constitute a large proportion of our voters and no party will like to lose their votes. Yet democratically elected government does not appear to be as keen to address the question of poverty as is expected.
4) The situation is much worse in some other countries. In Bangladesh more than half of its population lives in poverty.

People in several poor countries are now dependent on the rich countries even for the food supplies

3.

1) The association of political parties with social groups is not always bad.
2) Associations of political parties with weaker section of society are healthy for democracy.
3) Through political parties weaker sections get together to voice their opinion and get a chance for their betterment.
4) Some political parties grow out of social groups, example DMK, AIADMK.
5) It is hierarchical occupational division of the society.
6) It has four main divisions- Brahmins, Kshatriyas, Vashyas and Shudras.

7) It is hereditary.

8) The members of the same caste group formed a social community that followed similar occupations, married within the caste and did not mingle with the other caste.

9) The caste system was based on exclusion of and discrimination against the 'out caste' groups that were subjected to inhuman practice of untouchability.

4.

1) Each caste group tries to become bigger by incorporating within its sub castes.

2) Various caste groups are required to enter into a coalition with other castes or communities.

3) New kinds of caste groups have entered politics like backward and forward castes.

4) Politics in caste has allowed many disadvantaged caste groups to demand their share of power.

5) Caste politics has helped the Dalits and OBCs to gain better access to decision making.

5.

1) Casteism is actually against the basis principal of democracy that i.e., liberty, equality and fraternity.

2) Casteism gives encouragement to vote bank politics and because of which economic based issues are pushed back by the leaders of differ castes.

3) Casteism encourages interest of castes and is against national unity.

4) Casteism favours interests of one particular caste because of which interest of other castes are overlooked.

6. Caste system has kept Indian society intact. But at present it is coming to an end because of following reasons:

1) Many social reform movements were started in 19th century like Brahmo Samaj, Arya Samaj etc. They preached against the caste system.

2) With the advent of means of transport and communication people begin to move from place to place in search of work and in new society. There they work with people of other castes. It leads to decline of another feature of keeping relations with one's own caste.

3) In the past religious education was given and it was confined only to higher three castes. But with the changing time religious education came to an end.

4) Every one begins to get modern education which led to the decline of discrimination.

5) Giving occupation to the child is one of the main features of caste system. But due to industrialization and modernization new occupations came into being. People begin to adopt new occupations which have led to the end of this feature of caste system.

7.

1) In the central legislature there are less than 10% of its total strength are women.

2) In the state legislature there are less than 5% of its total strength are women.

3) In panchayat 1/3 seats are reserved for women.

4) India is among the bottom group of nations in the world, in this respect.

5) Women' organizations and activists have been demanding a similar reservation of at least 1/3 of seats in the Lok Sabha and State Assemblies. But the bill to this effect has not been passed.

8.

1) Communalism involves religious prejudice, stereotypes of religious communities and belief in the superiority of one's religion over other religions.

2) A communal mind often leads to a quest for political dominance of one's own religious community.

3) Political mobilization on religious lines is another frequent form of communalism. In electoral politics, this often involves special appeal to the interests or emotions of votes of one religion in preference to others.

4) Sometimes communalism in India takes its most ugly form of communal violence, riots and massacre.

5) Communal prejudice and propaganda need to be countered in everyday life and religion based mobilization needs to be counted in the arena of politics.

Assertion and Reason Answers-

1. a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

   Explanation: Sex-selective abortion led to decline of sex ratio in India. Indian parents want to have son and want ways to abort girl child. However, sex-selective abortion is immoral and legally banned in India. The reason thus explains the assertion.

2. c) Assertion is correct statement, but reason is wrong statement.

   Explanation: Universal Adult Franchise gives right to vote to everyone irrespective of caste, religion, colour or gender. It is based on the principle of equality. Right to vote should be given to everyone because that is the whole essence of a democracy, equal representation. Class cannot determine wisdom.

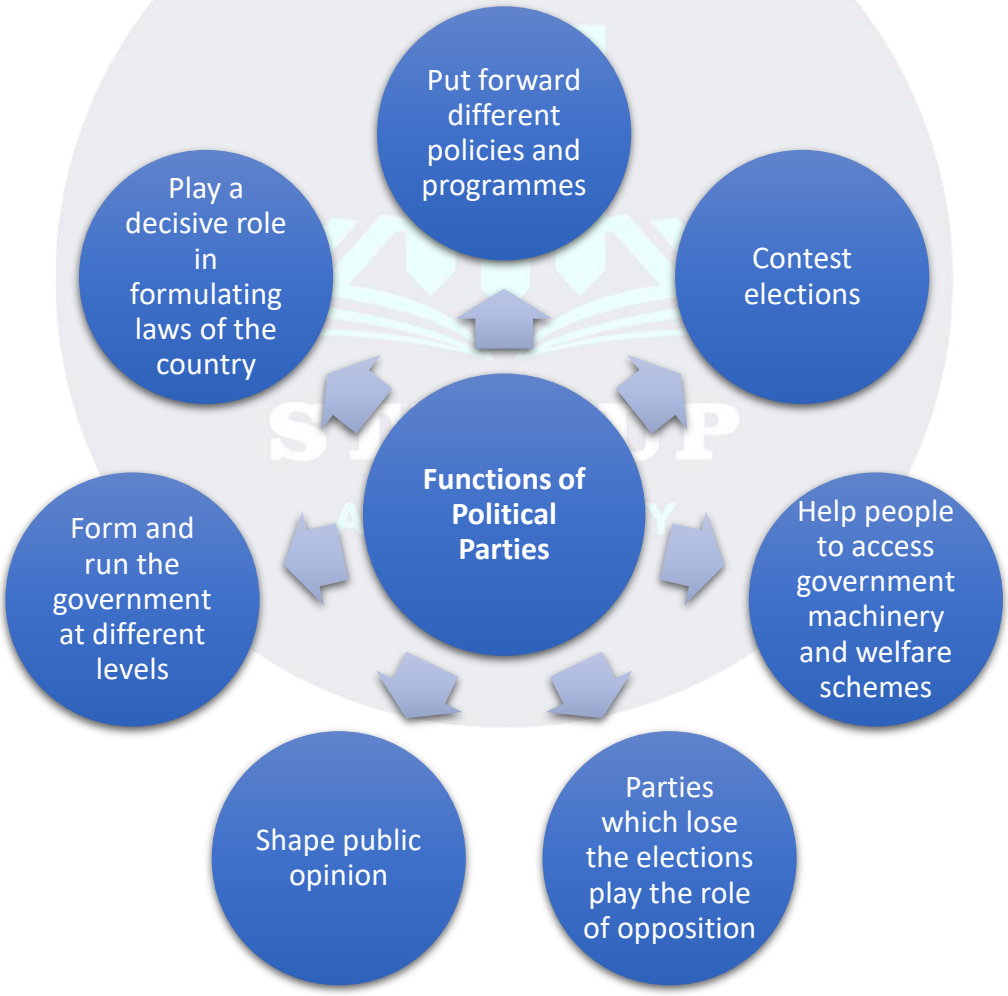


Political Parties 4

Meaning and Functions of a Political Party

A political party is a group of individuals who come together on a common platform. They largely have similar ideas and a common goal. Members of a political party contest elections in order to form the government at the state or at the centre. Political parties try to win the support of people by convincing them on why their policies are better than other parties. A political party has three components—leaders, active members and followers.

A political party performs many functions in a democracy.



- Political parties are required. If there are no political parties, then independent candidates would win the elections. Independent candidates may be able to manage their constituencies, but they would not be able to govern the entire country effectively because each candidate will have his/her own interests and set of beliefs.

- Each section of society chooses its representatives to represent its interests.
- Political parties also play the same role. Thus, democratic countries have political parties. The rise of political parties may be traced back to the emergence of representative democracy. As societies are large, they elect their own representatives to represent their interests. Representatives of the parties come together to form the government.

How Many Parties Should We Have?

In a democracy, any group of citizens is free to form a political party. More than 750 parties are registered with the Election Commission of India. But not all these parties are serious contenders in the elections.

Party System

The number of political parties differs from country to country.

One-party system: The formation of political parties is generally banned in countries which are ruled by dictators. Only the party to which the dictator belongs is allowed to exist. Such countries have a one-party system. For example, in China, only the Communist Party of China is allowed to contest the elections.

Two-party system: In many countries, though many parties exist, only two parties have serious chances of winning the majority of seats in the Parliament. Other parties win only a handful of seats in the national legislatures. Thus, countries with two main parties contesting the elections have a bi-party system; for example, the United Kingdom and the United States of America.

Multi-party system: When several parties exist in a country and each has the capability of forming the government either on its own or in alliance with other parties, the country has a multi-party system. India has a multi-party system. In such a system, if many political parties come together and join hands for contesting the elections and forming a government, they are known as an alliance or a front. While on one hand, the multi-party system may lead to political instability in the country, on the other, the system allows the representation of a variety of interests and public opinions.

Political Parties in India

In India, every party has to get itself registered with the Election Commission. The latter gives a symbol to the political party. A political party which has a nationwide presence and which secures at least six percent of the total votes in the Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in at least four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognised as a **national party**.

A political party which secures at least six percent of the total votes in an election to the Legislative Assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognised as a **state party**.

National Parties in India

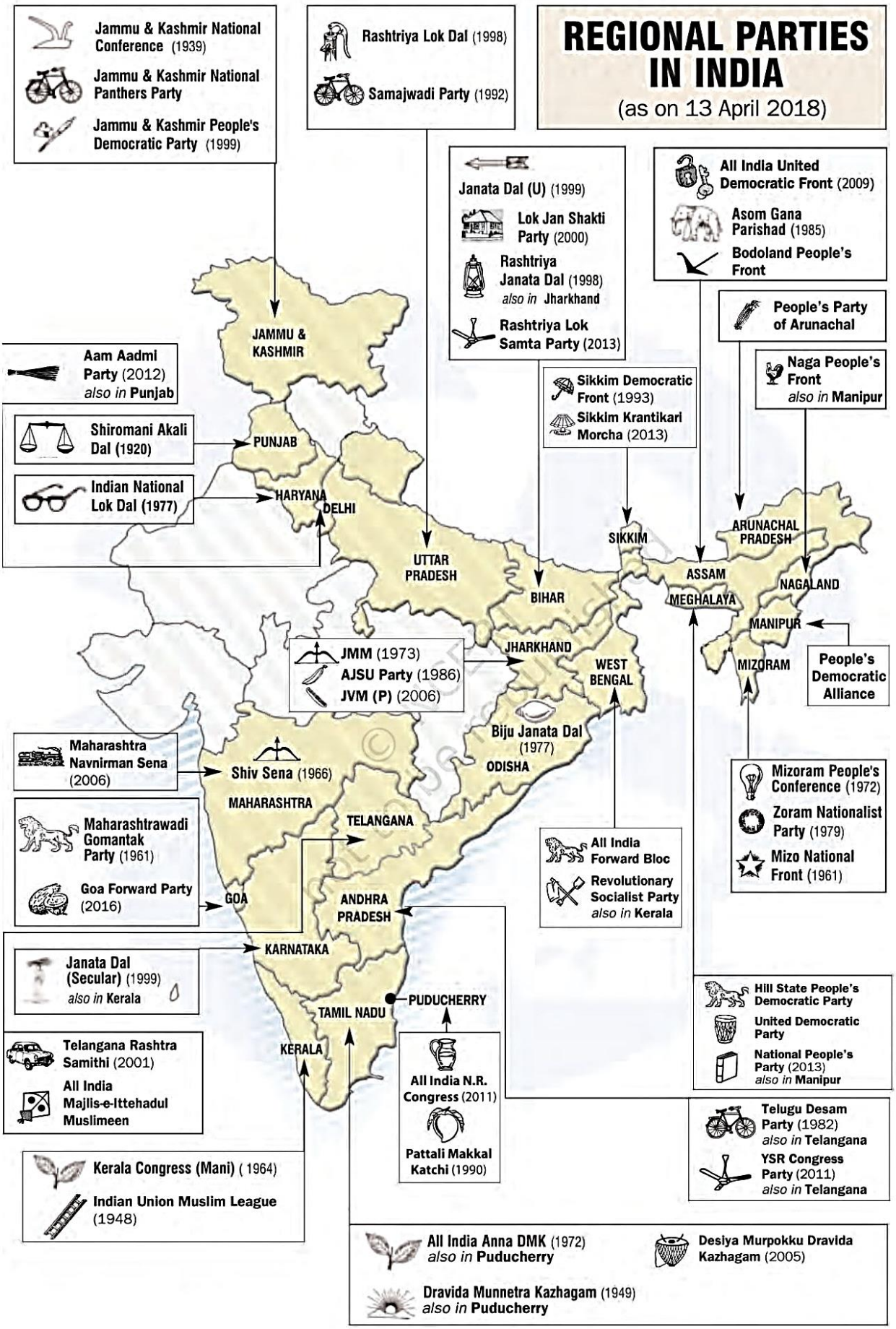
Name of the Party	Year of Foundation	Basic Ideologies	Symbol
Indian National Congress	1885 (the party has split many times)	Endorses secular principles Aims at the welfare of weaker sections and minority communities	
Bharatiya Janata Party	1980	Seeks complete integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India Believes in cultural nationalism (Hindutva) and uniform civil code for all people	
Bahujan Samaj Party	1984	Champions the cause of the dalits, adivasis and OBCs	
Communist Party of India-Marxist (CPI-M)	1964	Believes in the principles of socialism, Marxism, Leninism, secularism and democracy	
Communist Party of India (CPI)	1925	Believes in Marxism–Leninism, secularism and democracy	
Nationalist Congress Party	1999	Believes in democracy, equity, social justice and federalism	

State Parties in India

List of major state parties in India:

- Samajwadi Party (largely present in Uttar Pradesh)
- Rashtriya Janata Dal (Bihar)
- Trinamool Congress (West Bengal)
- Biju Janata Dal (Odisha)
- Sikkim Democratic Front (Sikkim)
- National Conference (Jammu and Kashmir)
- Peoples Democratic Party (Jammu and Kashmir)
- DMK (Tamil Nadu)
- AIADMK (Tamil Nadu)

(See the map on the next page for details of these parties).


REGIONAL PARTIES IN INDIA
(as on 13 April 2018)
Jammu & Kashmir National Conference (1939)
Jammu & Kashmir National Panthers Party
Jammu & Kashmir People's Democratic Party (1999)
Rashtriya Lok Dal (1998)
Samajwadi Party (1992)
Janata Dal (U) (1999)
Lok Jan Shakti Party (2000)
Rashtriya Janata Dal (1998) also in Jharkhand
Rashtriya Lok Samta Party (2013)
All India United Democratic Front (2009)
Asom Gana Parishad (1985)
Bodoland People's Front
People's Party of Arunachal
Naga People's Front also in Manipur
Sikkim Democratic Front (1993)
Sikkim Krantikari Morcha (2013)
Aam Aadmi Party (2012) also in Punjab
Shiromani Akali Dal (1920)
Indian National Lok Dal (1977)
JAMMU & KASHMIR
PUNJAB
HARYANA
DELHI
UTTAR PRADESH
BIHAR
SIKKIM
ARUNACHAL PRADESH
ASSAM
NAGALAND
MEGHALAYA
MANIPUR
MIZORAM
People's Democratic Alliance
JMM (1973)
AJSU Party (1986)
JVM (P) (2006)
JHARKHAND
WEST BENGAL
Biju Janata Dal (1977)
ODISHA
Maharashtra Navnirman Sena (2006)
Shiv Sena (1966)
MAHARASHTRA
Maharashtrawadi Gomantak Party (1961)
Goa Forward Party (2016)
GOA
TELANGANA
ANDHRA PRADESH
All India Forward Bloc
Revolutionary Socialist Party also in Kerala
Mizoram People's Conference (1972)
Zoram Nationalist Party (1979)
Mizo National Front (1961)
KARNATAKA
Janata Dal (Secular) (1999) also in Kerala
TAMIL NADU
PUDUCHERRY
KERALA
Telangana Rashtra Samithi (2001)
All India Majlis-e-Ittehadul Muslimeen
All India N.R. Congress (2011)
Pattali Makkal Katchi (1990)
Hill State People's Democratic Party
United Democratic Party
National People's Party (2013) also in Manipur
Telugu Desam Party (1982) also in Telangana
YSR Congress Party (2011) also in Telangana
Kerala Congress (Mani) (1964)
Indian Union Muslim League (1948)
All India Anna DMK (1972) also in Puducherry
Desiya Murpokku Dravida Kazhagam (2005)
Dravida Munnetra Kazhagam (1949) also in Puducherry

Challenges to Political Parties

Main challenges faced by political parties in India are

- **Lack of internal democracy:** There is a lack of internal democracy within the political parties. Most of the parties do not keep membership registers and do not conduct elections regularly.
- **Challenge of dynastic succession:** In many parties, the top positions are always controlled by members of one family. This is unfair to other members of that party. **Dynastic succession** does not allow a deserving candidate to rise to a position of leadership.
- **Money and muscle power:** Because the main aim of the political party is to win an election, many candidates who could raise a lot of money are nominated. Influential and wealthy party members exercise greater control over party politics. Parties have also become corrupt.
- **Lack of meaningful choice:** Most of the parties do not offer meaningful choices to the people. Fundamental differences among the parties have reduced.

How Can Parties be Reformed?

Political parties can be reformed in the following ways:

- A law to prevent the defection of a party member in hope of money and power was passed in the Parliament. It is necessary to strictly follow this law.
- An order has been passed requiring candidates contesting the elections to declare their assets and criminal charges pending against them. This was done to reduce the influence of money and criminals in parties. This law also needs to be strictly followed.
- Every political party should regularly hold organisational elections and file income tax returns.
- It should be made mandatory for political parties to give at least one-third of the party's tickets to women candidates.
- Elections should be funded by the state.

Many suggestions have not been accepted by political parties; thus, it is important for the public to organise protests and rallies to demand the passing of laws to this effect. The functioning of political parties can be further improved if the people who support these changes join the parties.

Class : 10th Political Science
Chapter-6 : Political Parties



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The number of parties registered with the Election Commission of India is:
   (a) 550
   (b) 650
   (c) 750
   (d) 850
2. One-party system refers to:
   (a) When only two parties are allowed to control and run the government
   (b) When three parties are allowed to control and run the government
   (c) When one party is allowed to control and run the government
   (d) None of the above
3. In China, the only one party that is allowed to rule is the:
   (a) Congress Party
   (b) BJP
   (c) Socialist Party
   (d) Communist Party
4. Any democratic system must allow at least:
   (a) One party to compete in elections
   (b) Two parties to compete in elections
   (c) Three parties to compete in elections
   (d) Several parties to compete in election
5. Two party system exists in:
   (a) USA and China
   (b) UK and India
   (c) USA and UK
   (d) India and China
6. In India, there is a:
   (a) One-party system
   (b) Two-party system
   (c) Multi-party system
   (d) None of the above
7. In India, in 2004 there was an alliance in Parliamentary elections between the:
   (a) National Democratic Alliance, the United Progressive Alliance and the Left-Front
   (b) National Democratic Alliance, the BJP and Akali Dal
   (c) National Democratic Alliance, BJP and Samajwadi Party
   (d) United Progressive Alliance, the Left Front and the BJP
8. National parties are those parties which have their units :
   (a) In some states
   (b) In various states
   (c) In the capital city
   (d) None of the above
9. Every party in the country has to register with the:
   (a) Government
   (b) Local government
   (c) Election Commission
   (d) MCD
10. A party is recognised as a national party if it secures at least six percent of the total votes in Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states and:
    (a) Wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha
    (b) Wins at least three seats in the Lok Sabha
    (c) Wins at least two seats in the Lok Sabha
    (d) Wins at least one seat in the Lok Sabha
11. In 2006, the number of recognised parties in the country were:
    (a) Three
    (b) Four
    (c) Five
    (d) Six
12. The challenges to political parties are:
    (a) Internal democracy
    (b) Money and muscle power
    (c) Meaningful choice
    (d) All of the above

13. In a democracy, the final decision is made by:
    (a) The government
    (b) The President
    (c) Leaders who represent political parties
    (d) Leaders who do not represent political parties
14. MPs and MLAs have to accept whatever the:
    (a) Party leaders decide
    (b) Party decides
    (c) Government decides
    (d) Election Commission decides
15. The Election Commission passed an order making it necessary for political parties to hold their organisational elections and:
    (a) Pay their house tax
    (b) Pay their house rent
    (c) Pay their expenditure
    (d) File their income tax returns

Very Short Questions-

1. Who exercise the real power in the Democracy?
2. What is Partisan?
3. What are bye elections?
4. Name the oldest recognized Political Party of India?
5. Which Political party draws inspiration from the Ideas and teachings of Mahatma Gandhi, J Phule and Sahu Maharaj?
6. Name the National Political Party who is against the conversion of religion?
7. Name the political Party who wants full territorial and political integration of Jammu and Kashmir with India?
8. What are leftist Parties?
9. When was CPI-M founded?
10. What is Multi- Party system?

Short Questions-

1. What are the main functions of a political party?
2. What are the challenges between political parties in India?
3. Mention the features of Congress party in India?
4. Name six National Political Parties of India along with their symbols.
5. Explain the requirements fulfilled by a political party to become a national political party.
6. Write down the name of regional political party dominant in Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and West Bengal.
7. Why are symbols allotted to political parties by the election commission of India? Give reason?
8. What is a political party? What are the components of a political party?
9. Explain the constitutional measures to counter challenges faced by political parties.
10. Write down the parameters laid down by the Election Commission of India to recognize the State Political Parties and National Political Parties.

Long Questions-

1. Explain elements of four basic elements of Political Party.
2. "Increase in the number of states or regional parties strengthen democracy in India". Justify the state with suitable examples.
3. State the various functions political parties perform in a democracy.
4. The political scene is the mass of many parties. How do politicians manage these coalitions? Give your opinion.
5. Suppose, you are going to form a political party. What ideology would you like to keep in mind? Explain.
6. How would you explain the situation without political parties in country?
7. What is Multi-Party system? Discuss the merits and demerits of multi-party system.
8. Explain the meaning of a Political Party. Mention its components. Name any two recognized national parties in India.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    a. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A
    b. Both A and R are true, and R is not the correct explanation of A
    c. A is true but R is false
    d. A is false bur R is true

Assertion (A): If the budget presented to the Rajya Sabha is not passed within the stipulated period, the budget proposals are not affected.

Reason (R): In financial matters, the Lok Sabha is more powerful than the Rajya Sabha.

2. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

   a. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A

   b. Both A and R are true, and R is not the correct explanation of A

   c. A is true but R is false

   d. A is false bur R is true

   Assertion (A): In India political parties which formed the government represent the majority of seats secured in the elections to the House of the People at the Centre and the Legislative Assemblies in the States but not the Majority of votes.

   Reason (R): The elections based on the majority vote system decided the result on the basis of relative majority of votes secured.

Case Study Questions:

1. We can understand the necessity of political parties by imagining a situation without parties. Every candidate in the elections will be independent. So, no one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes. The government may be formed, but its utility will remain ever uncertain. Elected representatives will be accountable to their locality. But no one will be responsible for how the country will be run. We can also think about it by looking at the non-party based elections to the Panchayat in many states. Although the parties do not contest formally, it is generally noticed that the village gets split into more than one faction, each of which puts up a panel of its candidates. Thus, it is exactly what the party does. That is the reason we find political parties in almost all countries of the world whether these countries are big or small, old or new, developed or developing.

   The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. As we have seen, large societies need representatives of democracy. As societies became large and complex, they also need some agency to gather different views on various issues and to present these to the government.

   i. Why is the existence of a Political Party necessary for democracy?

      (a) Political Parties help to develop a public opinion.

      (b) No independent candidate can make any promise to the people.

      (c) Independent elected representatives are only responsible for their own constituency.

      (d) Political Parties helps to inculcate insecurity among the people

   ii. 'Political Faction' means a group of individuals within a political party that share a …….. Identify.

      (a) Balanced view

      (b) Common political purpose

      (c) Regional and communal diversities

      (d) Ideal political structure

   iii. Consider the following statements about political parties and choose the correct option.

      (a) Political Parties are a necessary condition for democracy.

      (b) Political Parties help the government to make policies.

      (c) Political Parties justify or oppose the representative governments.

      Options:

      (a) Only I

      (b) Both I and II

      (c) Both II and III

      (d) All of the above

   iv. Which of the following describes representative democracy?

      (a) It is not a common form of democracy in the modern age.

      (b) It involves direct participation.

(c) It involves indirect participation through elected representatives.

(d) It was the most prevalent form of democracy in the Colonial Era

v. Why does a large society need representative democracies?

(a) To form a responsible government.

(b) To form an ideal form of government.

(c) To gather public opinions.

(d) To resolve issues of minority communities

Answers Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (c) 750
2. **Answer**: (c) When one party is allowed to control and run the government
3. **Answer**: (d) Communist Party
4. **Answer**: (b) Two parties to compete in elections
5. **Answer**: (c) USA and UK
6. **Answer**: (c) Multi-party system
7. **Answer**: (a) National Democratic Alliance, the United Progressive Alliance and the Left-Front
8. **Answer**: (b) In various states
9. **Answer**: (c) Election Commission
10. **Answer**: (a) Wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha
11. **Answer**: (d) Six
12. **Answer**: (d) All of the above
13. **Answer**: (c) Leaders who represent political parties
14. **Answer**: (a) Party leaders decide
15. **Answer**: (d) File their income tax returns

Very Short Answers-

1. Citizens of the country
2. A person who is strongly committed to a party, group or faction. Partisanship is marked by a tendency to take a side and inability to take a balanced view on an issue.
3. Elections which are held to fill a vacancy caused by the death of any elected member or of any other reason, for example defection.
4. Indian National Congress
5. Bahujan Samaj Party.
6. Bharatiya Janta Party
7. Bharatiya Janta Party
8. Left often refers to those who are in favor of the poor, downtrodden section and support government policies for the benefit of these sections.
9. Communist party of India-Marxist was founded in 1964.
10. If several parties compete for power, and more than two parties have reasonable chances of coming to power either on their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multi-party system.

Short Answers-

1.

1. To contest election
2. Forming policies and programmes
3. Making laws
4. Parties form and fun govt.
5. To play an active role of opposition
6. Shaping public opinion
7. Access to govt. machinery and welfare schemes

2. Following points can be given with explanation as the challenges of political parties in India—

1. Lack of internal democracy
2. Lack of transparency
3. Use of money and muscle power
4. Not providing meaningful choice to the voter

3.

1. Congress party was founded in 1885 and has experiences many splits.
2. It was ruling party at the centre till 1977 and then in 1880-89, 2000 to till date

3. This party supports secularism and welfare of weaker sections and minorities.
4. It supports new economic reforms but with a human face.
5. It emerged as the largest party with 145 seats in the Lok Sabha elections in 2004.
6. It currently leads the ruling united progressive alliance (UPA) coalition govt. at the centre.

4.

1. Indian National Congress Hand
2. Bharatiya Janta Party Lotus
3. Bahujan Samaj Party Elephant
4. Communist Party of India-(Marxist) Sickle, Hammer and Star
5. Communist Party of India Sickle and Wheat
6. Nationalist Congress Party Clock

5.

1. The party has to secure at least six percent of the total votes in the Lok Sabha elections.
2. Six percent of the total votes in the state Assembly elections and win at least four seats in the Lok Sabha protected against the marketing of goods and delivery of services that are hazardous to life and property.

6.

1. Andhra Pradesh- Telgu Desam Party (1982), Telangana Rashtra Sammiti (2001)
2. Karnataka- Janata Dal (secular)1999
3. West Bengal- Forward Bloc (1940), Revolutionary Socialist Party (1940), Trinamool Congress (1977).

7.

1. For the recognition of the political parties the symbols are required.
2. It means party is large and established.
3. Only the official candidates of the political party can use it.
4. Voters can caste their vote easily.
5. One can easily recognize the party is either a national or regional party.

8. A political party is a association of people who come together to contest elections and keen to hold power in the government. Political parties put forward different policies and programs and the voters choose for them. Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country. Following are the components

1. The Leaders.
2. The Active Members.
3. The followers

9.

1. The constitution was amended to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing parties. This is called anti defection law.
2. The Supreme Court made it mandatory for every candidate to file an affidavit giving details of his property and criminal cases pending against him.
3. The Election Commission made it necessary for political parties to hold elections and file their Income tax Returns.

10.

1. Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission.
2. In a state party the party members aim to highlight the regional interest. On the other hand, a national party gives due importance to national interests.
3. State party: A party that secures at least six percent of the total votes in the election to the Legislative assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognized as a state party.
4. National party: A party secure at least six percent of the total votes in the Lok Sabha elections or Assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.

Long Answers-

1.

1. National and Regional Interest: Political parties have national and regional interests. Their main aim is to promote national interests.
2. Constitutional Interest: A political party must follow the constitutional means in a peaceful manner in order to capture political power.
3. Organisation: The member of political party with concern interest forms a organization that is political party.

4. Common Aim: Its members must have a similar and unanimous opinion regarding public matters and issues.

2. India is federal country and the powers of the Government are divided into different levels. Decentralization of power means expansion of democracy. If the number of state or regional parties is increasing it means the people of our country are becoming more aware and they are not happy with the working of existing political parties. In these days regional parties have a say in political policies as they win elections in their states. The national political parties have to take help of the regional parties to win the elections or to form the government. The rise of collision governments broadened the concept of popular participation. It also strengthen the federal system of the democracy.

3.

1. Political parties contest elections. In most democracies, elections are fought mainly among the candidates put up by the parties. Parties select their candidates in different ways.
2. Parties' forward different policies and programs and voters choose them from. Each of us may have different opinions and views on what policies are suitable for society. A government is expected to base its policies on the line taken by the Ruling Party.
3. Parties play a decisive role in making laws foe a country. Laws are debated and passed in the legislature. But most of the members of legislature are the members of political parties.
4. Parties form and run the Governments. As we noted last year, the big policy decision are taken by political executive that comes from the political parties.
5. Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition of the parties in power, by voicing different views and criticizing government for its failure or wrong policies.

4. It is true that presently political scene is dominated by many political parties. Many National and Regional Political parties are working at local level and regional level. If we take this concept in positive sense we will find out the following conclusions

1. Many political parties give chance of popular participation
2. Many political parties give choice to the people
3. Give a chance for equal representation to everyone
4. His system has strengthens the federal system and democracy of the country.
5. The politicians do manage these coalitions by giving proportional representation to all emerging political parties and their members

5.

1. Aim and objective: Secularism, patriotism, no place for casteism, welfare of women. Promotion of weaker sections and minorities and above all economic development would be the basis of our country.
2. Internal Democracy: We would promote internal democracy. There would be routine organizational elections for various party posts.
3. No favoritism: In many political parties the most important posts is held by the member of a particular family and it takes inheritable nature. This neglects the rights of other deserving leaders and damage democratic values. Our party would choose the leaders for top post through internal elections.
4. No role of money and Muscle power: There would be a place for money and muscle power to win elections.
5. People's participation: We would include those policies in our manifesto that would encourage people's participation in the political system.

6.

1. We can understand the necessity of political parties by imagining a situation without parties.
2. The every candidate in the elections will be independent. So no one will be able to make any promise to the people about any major policy changes.

3. The government will be formed but its utility will remain ever uncertain.
4. Elected representatives will be responsible only to their constituency and not for the entire country.
5. But no one will be responsible for how the country run.
6. Elections without political parties will also be responsible for the disintegration of the country.

7. Multi-Party system: If several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming into power, either own strength or in alliance with other, we call it multi-party system.

Merits:

1. This system allows a variety of interests and opinions.
2. People can take a choice between several candidates.

Demerits:

1. No one party is likely to gain power alone. Therefore, it is difficult in formation of government.
2. It leads to political instability.

8. A political party is a group of people that come together to contest elections and hold power in the government. They agree on some policies and programs for the society with a view to promote the collective good. Since there can be different views on what is good for all, parties try to persuade people as to why their policies are better than others. They seek to implement these policies by winning popular through elections.

Components of Political Party:

1. The leaders.
2. The active members.
3. The followers.

Two recognized national parties:

1. Bhatatiya Janta party
2. Indian National Congress

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A
2. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A

Case study Answer:

1. i (a) Political Parties help to develop a public opinion.
   ii (b) Common political purpose
   iii (d) All of the above
   iv (c) It involves indirect participation through elected representatives.
   v (a) To form a responsible government.

Outcomes of Democracy 5

Democracy

A democratic or an elected form of government is better than any other form of government. This is because a democratic government ensures

- Equality among citizens
- Dignity of every individual
- Improvement in the quality of decision making
- Several alternatives to resolve conflicts
- Correction of mistakes made previously

Many people argue against following a democratic form of government. However, it has to be remembered that one democratic country may be different from the other. Further, democracy is just a form of government where the citizens have to take an advantage of the existing conditions. Democracy cannot achieve economic and political equality without the cooperation of the citizens.

Outcomes of a Democratic Government

Accountable, Responsive and Legitimate Government



- A democratic government is accountable to the citizens and responsible for the needs and aspirations of the countrymen.
- It is an efficient government. A democratic government may take time to arrive at certain laws and agreements because it has to look after the needs of every section of society. Laws are implemented after deliberations and negotiations which are accepted by people at large unlike a dictatorial government which enacts laws without bothering about its people.
- In a democratic government, the working of the government machinery is transparent. It means a citizen can enquire if any decision was taken based on prescribed norms and procedures. Thus, a democratic government follows procedures and is accountable to the people.

Holding free and fair elections is a major challenge faced by any democratic country today

- In most democratic countries, free and fair elections are held regularly. However, many countries still experience rigging of elections which is the biggest challenge which a democratic country faces.
- Although a democratic government may be slow in forming laws, implementing reforms and less efficient on certain occasions, it is the legitimate form of government which is formed by the people themselves.

Democracy and Economic Growth

If democracy produces good governance, then should we not expect the government to also ensure development? According to a survey, dictatorial countries have shown a slightly higher rate of development in the last fifty years.

However, this factor alone cannot undermine the importance of a democratic country because of the following reasons:

- Economic development depends on certain factors such as the population of the country, availability of natural resources, economic trade policies and global cooperation.
- Dictatorial regimes have a little better record in economic terms only in developing countries. In poor countries, there is hardly any economic growth.
- In many democratic countries, unsatisfactory growth rates can be attributed more to inequalities of income in society. Further, there is inequality of opportunity in the poorer sections of society.

Reduction of Inequality and Poverty

Democracy is the best form of government, it has not been able to reduce economic inequalities in society. Sometimes, even a government elected mostly by the poor people does not resolve the issue of poverty in the country. For example, in Bangladesh, more than 50% of its population lives below the poverty line, still the government has failed to work for the upliftment of its people.



Even a popularly elected democratic government may not ensure smooth economic development

Accommodation of Social Diversity

A democratic country looks into the needs and aspirations of every section of society. It is also able to handle social conflicts, divisions and differences. However, in order to achieve this objective, a democratic government should fulfil the following conditions:

- In a democratic government, the majority should work in close cooperation with the minority.
- The rule of the majority community should not be taken in the religious or linguistic sense alone. The rule of a majority should apply in every decision taken and in the formulation of economic policies. Thus, every citizen should get an opportunity to become a part of the majority at some point of time.

We can thus conclude that democracy is the best form of government in the sense that it is elected by the people and it promotes dignity and freedom of an individual. In India, the Constitution does not allow discrimination among people on the basis of religion, caste, gender or sect. A democratic government transforms people from subjects to free citizens.

Dignity and Freedom of the Citizens

Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting the dignity and freedom of the individual. The passion for respect and freedom are the basis of democracy. Let's take the case of the dignity of women. The long struggles by women have created some sensitivity that respect and equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of a democratic society. The same is true of caste inequalities. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity.

Most individuals today believe that their vote makes a difference to the way the government is run and to their own self-interest. Democratic examination never gets over. As it passes one test, it produces another test. As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more and want to make democracy even better. The fact that people are complaining is itself a testimony to the success of democracy.

Class : 10th Political Science
Chapter-7 : Outcomes of Democracy



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The difference in the rates of economic developments between less developed countries with dictatorships and democracies is:
   (a) Less
   (b) More
   (c) Negligible
   (d) None of the above
2. Democracies are based on:
   (a) Social equality
   (b) Caste equality
   (c) Economic equality
   (d) Political equality
3. Democracies do not appear to be very successful in:
   (a) Reducing economic inequalities
   (b) Reducing political inequalities
   (c) Reducing caste distinction
   (d) All the above
4. The poor constitute:
   (a) A small proportion of our voters
   (b) A large proportion of our voters
   (c) Less amount of money
   (d) None of the above
5. People in several poor countries are now dependent on the rich countries:
   (a) For education
   (b) For weapons
   (c) Food supplies
   (d) For medicines
6. Democracies usually develops a procedure to:
   (a) Fulfil their needs
   (b) Give equal rights to all
   (c) Conduct their competition
   (d) None of the above
7. No society can fully and permanently resolve conflicts:
   (a) Among caste systems
   (b) Rich and poor
   (c) Among different groups
   (d) None of the above
8. Non-democratic regimes often turn a blind eye to:
   (a) Caste differences
   (b) Religious differences
   (c) Social differences
   (d) None of the above
9. Majority and minority opinions are:
   (a) Permanent
   (b) Not permanent
   (c) Temporary
   (d) None of the above
10. Democracy remains democracy only as long as every citizen has a chance of being:
    (a) Minority at some point of time
    (b) Majority at some point of time
    (c) Fully recognized
    (d) None of the above
11. Democracy stands much superior to any other form of government in promoting:
    (a) Dignity and freedom of the individual
    (b) Freedom of the people
    (c) Rights of people
    (d) None of the above
12. Most societies across the world were historically:
    (a) Male dominated societies
    (b) Female dominated societies
    (c) Both (a) and (b)
    (d) All the above
13. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for:
    (a) Their upliftment
    (b) For equal status
    (c) For equal status and equal opportunity
    (d) All the above
14. The most distinctive feature of democracy is that:
    (a) It is the right government
    (b) It considers rich and poor equal
    (c) Its examinations never gets over
    (d) None of the above

15. Most individuals today believe that their vote makes a difference to the way the government:
    (a) Is run and to their own self-interest
    (b) Can be changed
    (c) Can be destroyed
    (d) None of the above

Very Short Questions-

1. Name the law which empowers the people to find out what is happening in government?
2. Give one characteristics of democracy.
3. When was democracy introduced in India?
4. What is the basic element of democracy?
5. Mention the terms in which democracies are different from one another.
6. Mention the way in which the democratic government a transparent government.
7. Who are the real rulers in democracy?
8. In which area does the democracy fails to achieve in contrary to other forms of government?
9. What do you understand by outcomes of democracy?
10. Write any two basic elements of democracy.

Short Questions-

1. List the various aspects and qualifications which help in giving a clear definition of democracy.
2. "Democratic governments are better than its alternatives". Explain the statement?
3. How democracy accommodates social diversity?
4. How can we measure democracy on the basis of its expected outcome?
5. What is meant by an accountable, responsive and legitimate government? Explain.
6. "Any imperfection in the government functions is blamed on democracy". Is it right?
7. Why we felt that democracy is a better form of Government? Give reasons
8. What outcomes can one reasonably expect of democracy?
9. Are democracies based on political and economic equalities? Explain.
10. How is democratic government known as responsive government? Explain.

Long Questions-

1. Democracy means delay in the decision making. Which one is preferable-quick decision making process of dictatorship or slow decision making process of democracy?
2. How can democracy accommodate the dignity of women and caste discrimination in one system?
3. Democracies lead to peaceful and harmonious life among citizens." Support this statement with suitable arguments.
4. Do you believe that democracy can reduce economic disparities? Give reasons to support your answer.
5. "Corruption is a serious problem faced the Indian Democratic System". Explain.
6. How do people take part in decision making in democracy? Explain.
7. Which factors sustain democracy in India?
8. How do we assess democracy's outcome?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    a. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
    b. Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
    c. A is correct but R is wrong.
    d. A is wrong but R is correct.

    Assertion (A): Most societies across the world were historically male dominated societies.

    Reason(R): Equal treatment of women is not a necessary ingredient of a democratic society

2. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    a. Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.
    b. Both A and R are true, but R is not the correct explanation of A.
    c. A is correct but R is wrong.
    d. A is wrong but R is correct.

Assertion (A): Democracies do not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.

Reason(R): The majority of Indian Voters are poor.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

In a democracy, we are most concerned with ensuring that people will have the right to choose their rulers and people will have control over the rulers. Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision making, that affects them all. Therefore, the most basic outcome of democracy should be that it produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens. Some people think that democracy produces less effective government. It is, of course, true that nondemocratic rulers are very quick and efficient in decision making and implementation, whereas democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation. So, some delay is bound to take place. But, because it has followed procedures, its decisions maybe both more acceptable to the people and more effective. Moreover, when citizens want to know if a decision was taken through the correct procedures, they can find this out. They have the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency. This factor is often missing from a non-democratic government. There is another aspect in which democratic government is certainly better than its alternatives: democratic government is legitimate government. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive, or clean. But a democratic government is people's own government.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. People's right to choose their own rulers is called as the:
   a. Right to Initiate.
   b. Right to Plebiscite.
   c. Right to Vote.
   d. Right to Referendum.

ii. Which of the following options helps in promoting transparency in the governance?
   a. Right to education.
   b. Right to information.
   c. Right against exploitation.
   d. Right to speech and expression.

iii. _____ make/ s the government legitimate.
   a. Credibility of politicians.
   b. People's movements.
   c. Free and fair elections.
   d. Holding of powers.

iv. Decisions in a democracy are more acceptable to the people because they are:
   a. Taken swiftly and implemented quickly.
   b. Taken by giving privileges to the people.
   c. Taken through elites' votes.
   d. Taken after following due processes.

2. Read the given extract and answer the following questions.

Democracies are based on political equality. All individuals have equal weight in electing representatives. Parallel to the process of bringing individuals into the political arena on an equal footing, we find growing economic inequalities. A small number of ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and incomes. Not only that, their share in the total income of the country has been increasing. Those at the bottom of the society have very little to depend upon. Their incomes have been declining. Sometimes they find it difficult to meet their basic needs of life, such as food, clothing, house, education, and health.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. Democracies are based on which type of equality?
   a. Political equality.
   b. Social equality.
   c. Economic equality.
   d. Religious equality.

ii. Why all individuals have equal weight in electing representatives?
   a. There is political equality for all individuals.
   b. Equal opportunities.
   c. Equal protection of law.
   d. None of these.

iii. What are the basic needs of life?
   a. Wealth.
   b. Food, clothing, house, education and health.
   c. Property.
   d. Foreign Trip.

iv. Why those at the bottom of the society, have very little resources?
   a. Their income is very less.
   b. They are educated.
   c. They are extravagant.
   d. None of these.

Answers Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (c) Negligible
2. **Answer**: (d) Political equality
3. **Answer**: (a) Reducing
4. **Answer**: (b) A large proportion of our voters
5. **Answer**: (c) Food supplies
6. **Answer**: (c) Conduct their competition
7. **Answer**: (c) Among different groups
8. **Answer**: (c) Social differences
9. **Answer**: (b) Not permanent
10. **Answer**: (b) Majority at some point of time
11. **Answer**: (a) Dignity and freedom of the individual
12. **Answer**: (a) Male dominated societies
13. **Answer**: (c) For equal status
14. **Answer**: (c) Its examinations never gets over
15. **Answer**: (a) Is run and to their own self-interest

Very Short Answers-

1. Right to information Act
2. Democracies have greater success in setting up regular and free elections
3. 1950
4. Universal adult franchise
5. Democracies are different in terms of Culture, social situation and economic activities.
6. It provides to its citizens a right and means to examine the process of decision-making. Example: Right to information Act.
7. The Voters
8. Democracy fails to achieve higher economic development.
9. It means results, consequences, and outputs of democracy are known as outcomes of democracy.
10. Liberty and Equality

Short Answers-

1.

1. The rulers elected by the people must take all the major decisions
2. Elctions must offer a choice and fair opportunity to the people to change the existing rulers.
3. Choice and opportunity should be available to all the people on an equal basis
4. Besides political rights, some social and economical rights are offered to the citizens by the democracy.
5. Power sharing is the spirit of democracy and is necessary between government and social groups in a democracy.

2.

1. Democratic government is a legitimate government
2. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive or clean. But it is the people's own govt.
3. There is overwhelming support for the idea of democracy all over the world ; in countries withdemocratic regimes as well as countries without democratic regimes.

3.

1. It is necessary to understand that democracy is not simply rule by majority opinion. The majority always needs to work with the minority so that governments function to represent the general view.
2. It is also necessary that rule by majority does not become rule by majority community. In terms of religion, or race or linguistics groups. Rule by majority means that in case of every decision or in case of every election, different persons or groups may and can form a majority.
3. Democracy remains a democracy only as long as every citizen has a choice of living in majority, at some point of time.

4. To measure a democracy on the basis of its expected outcomes we have to observe the following practices and institutions like

1. In a democracy free and fair elections should be there.
2. Open criticism and debate on major policies and legislations.
3. Citizens right to information about the functioning of government.
4. Whether the democracies are providing a fair chance to everyone, to participate in elections and decision making process.

5. **Accountable**: A democratic government develops mechanism for citizens to take part in decision-making process. For this free and fair elections, open debate on major policies, legislation, Right to information- such rights are given to the citizens.

Responsive: Democracy is a responsive government. It is responsive towards the needs and expectations of the citizens. It takes care and makes policies for the welfare of the citizens.

Legitimate: A democratic government is a legitimate government. It is elected by the people and people wish to be ruled by the representatives elected by them.

6. Every individual expects a lot from democracy. Democracy is expected to solve all the socio-economic, political and economic problems of the country. Democracy is expected to give equality of status to every citizen. It is expected that there would not be any type of discrimination on ground of gender, race, religion or region. The reality is that everything is expected out of democracy. Any imperfection in any such area is termed as undemocratic. It should be realized that democracy is a form of government that creates conditions which will ensure quality of citizens before the law of the country. But the citizens have to know their rights and freedom and they should try to enforce them. A democratic set up does not ensure all the right policies. Individuals have to take advantage of the good conditions created by democracy and make good policies. Thus it is not right that any information in any area is thrown on democracy.

7.

1. It promotes equality among citizens.
2. It enhances the dignity of the individuals.
3. It improves the quality of decision making
4. It provides a method to resolve conflict.
5. It allows room to correct mistake.

8.

1. In the political sphere- Right to vote, Right to contest elections.
2. In the economic sphere-Minimized Economic inequalities.
3. In the Social sphere-Equal protection to women, SCs, STs, OBCs.

9.

1. All citizens have equal role in electing representatives.
2. Parallel to the process of bringing individuals into the political arena, we find growing economic inequalities.
3. Democracy does not appear to be very successful in reducing economic inequalities.
4. The ultra-rich enjoy a highly disproportionate share of wealth and income.

10.

1. It produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs of and expectations of the citizens.

2. Democracy is based on the idea of deliberations and negations.
3. Democratic government is attentive to the needs and demands of the people.
4. A government which is able to respond to grievance faster is able to avoid confrontation and provide good governance.

Long Answers-

1. Democracy involves debates and deliberations in the parliament before making a law. The views of all the members of parliament are taken into consideration before taking the final decision. Dictatorship means decisions taken by one person or one party. Different views of other members of the government or public are not considered. Democracy means delay in the decision making process as the debates take a long time. It means that the implementation will also take time. Dictatorship means quick decisions. But those decisions are orders of the government and people are not allowed to disagree with them. Even citizens are not supposed to criticize the decisions made by the government. Democracy is better even if it takes more time in making the decisions. At least, the views of the citizens are considered and they are not ordered to just follow them. Individuals can disagree with the policies of the government and show their protest against the government.

2. In case of dignity of women, most societies across the world were historically male dominated societies. Long struggles by women have created some sensitivity today that respect to and equal treatment of women are necessary ingredients of a democratic society. That does not mean that women are actually always treated with respect. But once the democratic principle is recognized, it becomes easier for women to wage a struggle against what is now unacceptable legally and morally. Democracy in India has strengthened the claims of the disadvantaged and discriminated castes for equal status and equal opportunity. There are instances still of caste-based inequalities and atrocities, but these lack the moral and legal foundations. Perhaps it is the recognition that makes ordinary citizens values their democratic right.

3.

1. Democracy develops a harmonious social life. Democracies accommodate various social divisions.
2. Democracies usually develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of these tensions becoming explosive or violent.
3. In democracies people learn to respect the differences and also evolve mechanism to negotiate the differences.
4. The majority always needs to work with the minority so that government functions to represent the general view.
5. Democracy has ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflict.

4. Yes, this is far of following reasons;

1. A democracy believes in equitable distribution and makes efforts to serve the poor at the root level.
2. A democracy believes in providing equal opportunity to all. Democratic governments have been supporting poor people through various schemes to uplift their economic level.
3. Poor people are being provided food and shelter at a subsidized rate and also free medicines and treatment facilities.
4. They are being insured for any unhappening's so that their families do not get crushed.
5. They are being provided free education, reservation in educational institution and government jobs, etc.

5.

1. It has now become an accepted fact that leaders use money to win favour of the votes. This reason lessens the very sprit of democratic values.
2. There is an ever increasing tendency among the political parties to give tickets to those who are rich. The parties think that they could win not only their own seats but also help the party monetarily.
3. Now scams by leaders and governments have become a routine tale in the Indian democracy. Many of the popular leaders are facing trials for corruption charges against them.

4. It has been seen that the wards of the prominent leaders of party easily get tickets for election. The party workers keep serving for years but sometimes outsiders get tickets.
5. It has now become a traditional in many of the popular political parties that the chair is inherited.

6.

1. Decisions are made by the representatives elected by the people. These representatives represent the ideas and opinions of those voters who have elected them to take decisions on their behalf.
2. In a democracy, people want to know if a decision was taken through correct procedure, can find this out. In this way, they have some degree of control over the whole process of decision making.
3. In a democracy people have the right and mean to examine the process of decision making.
4. Sometimes important issues are put forward by the government for public debate before a decision is taken.
5. Demonstration, movement, pressure groups, etc. provide means in the hands of people to influence decision making.

7.

1. Democracy is based on the principles of equality, liberty and brotherhood. To achieve the prescribed goal the framers of our constitution adopted the aims like secularism, socialism democratic republic.
2. The framers of our constitution provided for a representative democracy in a liberal framework in order to sustain democracy.
3. In our country there are periodic elections for all levels of the government.
4. All elections are based on secret ballot and universal adult franchise.
5. Our Constitution has given complete liberty to pressure and other organized or unorganized.

8.

1. Comparative analysis between democracy and dictatorship.
2. It provides accountable, responsible, representative and legitimate government.
3. It develops mechanism for the people's participation in the decision making process.
4. It promotes economic development. At the same time democracy has the characteristics of economic inequality and disparities.
5. We can also assess its outcome on the basis of the way it accommodates the social diversities.

   It also promotes dignity and freedom of the citizens

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (c) A is correct but R is wrong.
2. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A

Case Study Answer:

1.

(i)	(c)	Right to vote
(ii)	(b)	Right to information
(iii)	(c)	Free and fair elections
(iv)	(d)	Taken after following due processes

2.

(i)	(a)	Political equality
(ii)	(a)	There is political equality for all individuals
(iii)	(b)	Food, clothing, house, education and health
(iv)	(a)	Their income is very less

ECONOMICS

Development 1

Idea of Development

Development involves many questions for better life and the ways in which one can work to achieve goals. Different persons can have different goals and what may be development for one person may not be development, or may even be detrimental, for the other.

Development is defined as the people's economic growth, along with the growth of their basic needs like education, health, lifestyle, etc.

The main aim of development is to update as per the demand of time.

For example: to generate electricity, a dam is constructed over a river where nearby mass is considered for construction resulting in the development of society and country.

It causes destruction for farmers and the lives of people living nearby.

1. **Different persons can have different developmental goals.**
2. **what may be development for one may not be development for the other. It may even be destructive for the other.**

Income and Other Goals

Generally, people desire to have regular work, better wages and good price for the crops they produce. Apart from earning more income, one may expect to have a better quality of life. The quality of life depends on non-material things such as equal treatment, security, respect for others and freedom in society. For example, women may tend to work in a variety of jobs or start a business to receive a sense of security and freedom in the household and in society.

National Development

The idea about the national development of a country tends to vary and conflict from person to person. **For development, people look at a mix of goals.** To determine whether the country is developed or underdeveloped, one needs to consider the characteristics of a country. Let us consider income as one of the important attributes to compare countries. If a country has a higher income level than other countries, then it is said to be a well-developed country. Therefore, the average income or the per capita income of a country is measured to compare the developmental status of different nations.

How to Compare Different Countries or States?

To compare countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes. Countries with higher income are more developed than others with less income. As different countries have different populations, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person earns. So, we compare the average income of countries.

Average income is the total income of the country divided by its total population. It is also called per capita income.

Average Income = Total Income of Country / Total Population of Country

In World Development Reports, per capita income is used in classifying countries.

Countries with per capita income of US$ 49,300 per annum and above in 2019, are called high income or rich countries and those with per capita income of US$ 2500 or less are called low-income countries.

Per Capita Income

The per capita income is the total income of the country divided by its total population. Countries with a per capita income of Rs 4,53,000 per annum and above are called rich countries, and countries with a per capita income of Rs 37,000 per annum or less are called low-income countries. In 2004, India was considered a low-income country because its per capita income was just Rs 28,000. In 2006, the World Development Report to classify countries was based on the average income criterion.

PER CAPITA INCOME OF SELECT STATES	
State	**Per Capita Income for 2017-18 (in Rs)**
Haryana	2,03,340
Kerala	1,84,000
Bihar	38,631

If per capita income were to be used as the measure of development, Haryana will be considered the most developed and Bihar the least developed state of the three. However, this is not true, if we look at the other criteria.

Income and Other Criteria

According to the Reserve Bank of India, 2011, the per capita income of Delhi has the highest per capita income and Bihar has the lowest per capita income. While looking at other indicators such as the literacy rate and mortality rate, the literacy rate of Kerala was 93.9%, the highest among these states.

Human development Index:

It is a composite Index prepared by United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) through its Annual Human Development Report published every year. Major parameters such as longevity of life, levels of literacy and Per capita income are used to measure the development of countries. World countries are ranked accordingly in to Very High Developed countries, High Developed countries, Medium Developed countries and Low Developed countries.

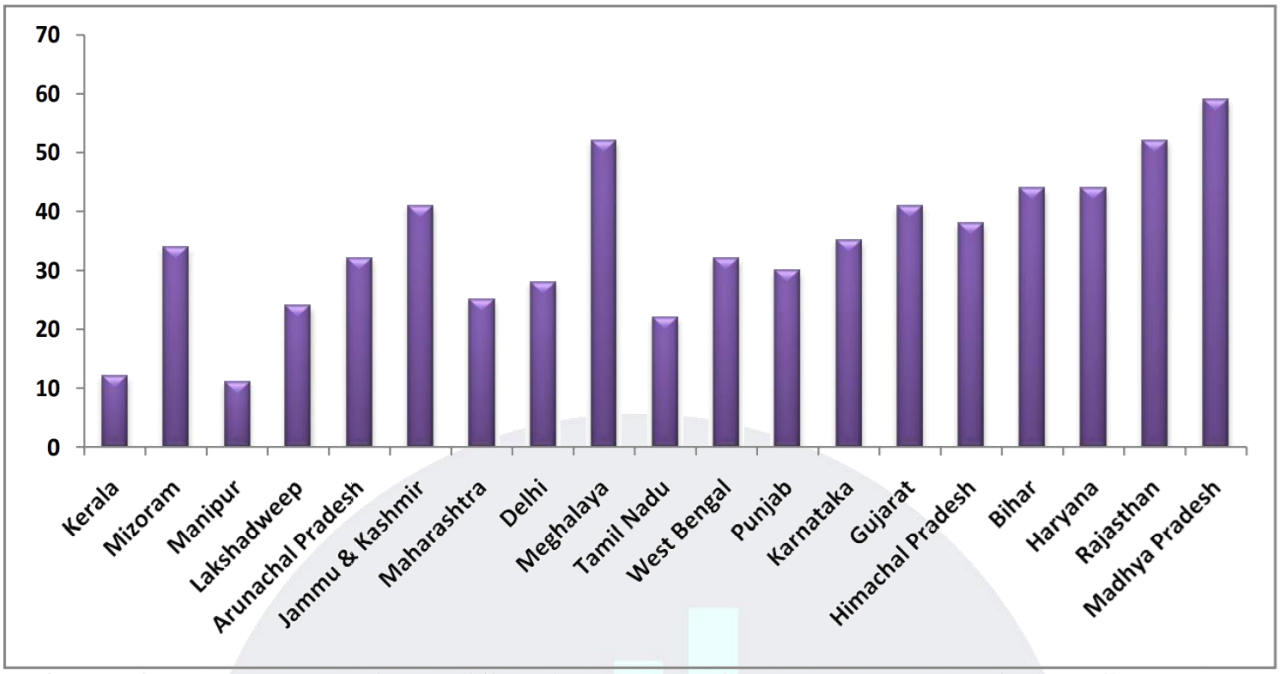
- Infant Mortality Rate. The number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1,000 live birth in that particular year.
- Literacy Rate. It measures the proportion of literate population in the 7 and above age group.
- Net Attendance Ratio. It is the total number of children of age group 6-10 attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.
- Body Mass Index. (BMI) one way to find out if adults are undernourished is to calculate Body Mass Index. Divide the weight of a person (in kg) by the square of the height (in metres). If this figure is less than 18.5 then the person would be considered undernourished. If this BMI is more than 25, then a person is overweight.

Public Facilities

Income is not an adequate indicator of material goods and services which the people are to use. In many regions, education, health and sanitary facilities are not adequately available to educate and prevent from infectious diseases. Kerala has a low infant mortality rate because it has adequate public facilities. The nutritious status will be low in states in which the public distribution system does not function properly.

- The level of income is an inadequate measure of the level of development; therefore, other indicators such as health and education are used to compare a country's development.

- Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational level, health status and per capita income.

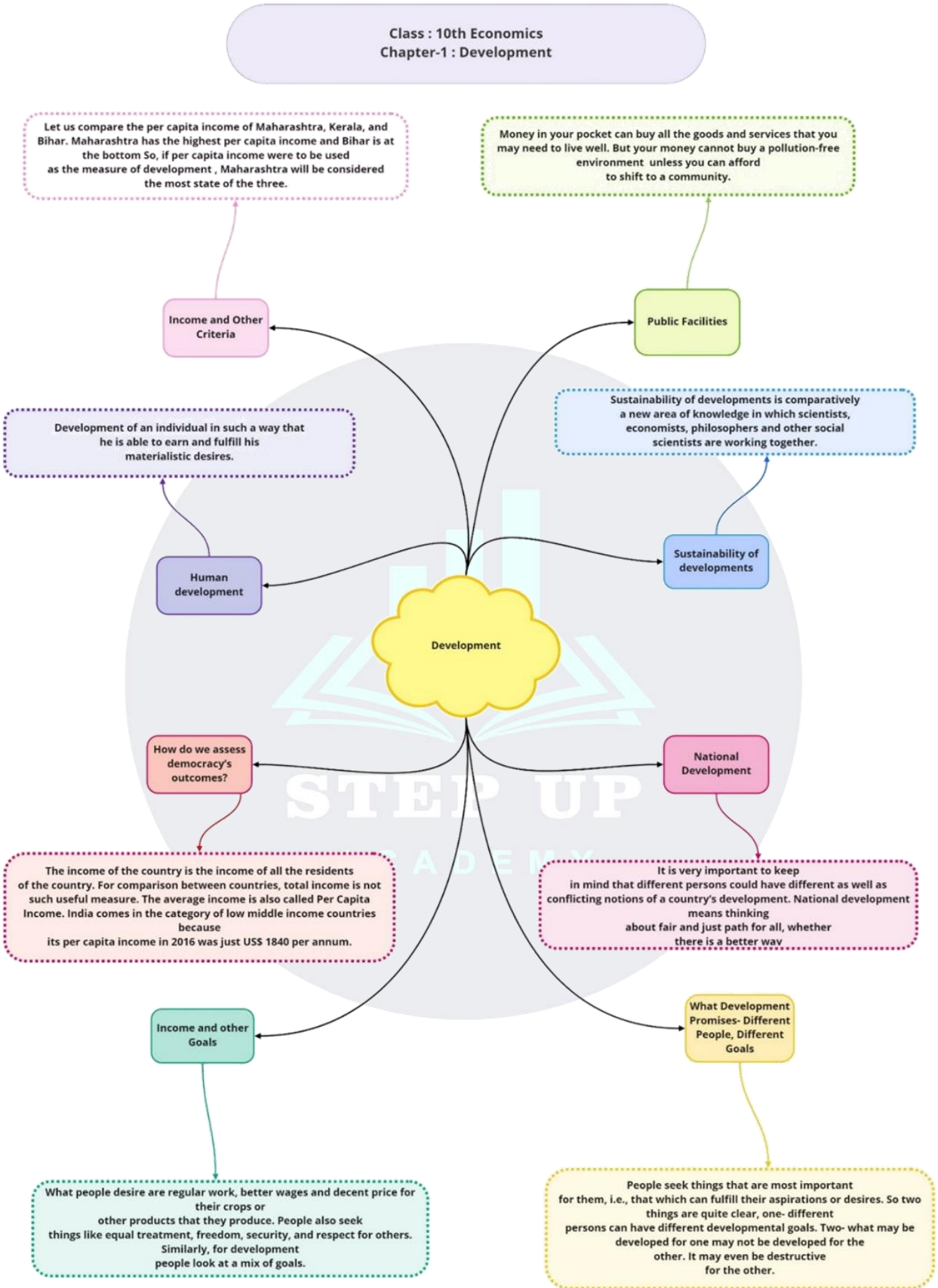


Source: Sample Registration System Office of the Registrar General, India, Ministry of Home Affairs, 2011

Sustainability of Development

The renewable resources are replenished by nature. Let us consider groundwater. If we use groundwater more than what is being replenished by rain, then this resource would be overused. Non-renewable resources are those which will get exhausted after few years of use. Environmental degradation is no longer region or nation-specific. Sustainable development is the development which looks into the requirement of the present and builds scope for the future generations. There are many works in progress for sustainability of development.

- **Infant Mortality Ratio:** Infant Mortality Ratio indicates the number of children who die before the age of one year, as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.
- **Literacy Rate:** Literacy Rate measures the proportion of literate population in the 7 and above age group.
- **Net Attendance Ratio:** It is the total number of children of age group 14 and 15 years who attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.


Class : 10th Economics
Chapter-1 : Development
Development
Income and Other Criteria
Let us compare the per capita income of Maharashtra, Kerala, and Bihar. Maharashtra has the highest per capita income and Bihar is at the bottom So, if per capita income were to be used as the measure of development , Maharashtra will be considered the most state of the three.
Public Facilities
Money in your pocket can buy all the goods and services that you may need to live well. But your money cannot buy a pollution-free environment unless you can afford to shift to a community.
Human development
Development of an individual in such a way that he is able to earn and fulfill his materialistic desires.
Sustainability of developments
Sustainability of developments is comparatively a new area of knowledge in which scientists, economists, philosophers and other social scientists are working together.
How do we assess democracy's outcomes?
The income of the country is the income of all the residents of the country. For comparison between countries, total income is not such useful measure. The average income is also called Per Capita Income. India comes in the category of low middle income countries because its per capita income in 2016 was just US$ 1840 per annum.
National Development
It is very important to keep in mind that different persons could have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development. National development means thinking about fair and just path for all, whether there is a better way
Income and other Goals
What people desire are regular work, better wages and decent price for their crops or other products that they produce. People also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security, and respect for others. Similarly, for development people look at a mix of goals.
What Development Promises- Different People, Different Goals
People seek things that are most important for them, i.e., that which can fulfill their aspirations or desires. So two things are quite clear, one- different persons can have different developmental goals. Two- what may be developed for one may not be developed for the other. It may even be destructive for the other.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Development of a country can generally be determined by its:
   (a) per capita income
   (b) average literacy level
   (c) health status of its people
   (d) none of these
2. Different persons could have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development. A fair and just path for all should be achieved. Interpret the concept being discussed here.
   (a) Social development
   (b) Cultural development
   (c) National development
   (d) Economic development
3. Countries with higher income are _____ than others with less income.
   (a) Less developed
   (b) More developed
   (c) Less stronger
   (d) More organized
4. Total income of the country divided by its total population is known as:
   (a) Capital Income
   (b) National Income
   (c) Per capita income
   (d) GDP
5. Proportion of literate population in the 7 and above age group is called as:
   (a) Knowledge rate (b) Literacy rate
   (c) Attendance rate (d) Excellence Rate
6. Which age group of children is included for calculating Net Attendance Ratio?
   (a) 6-10 (b) 7-11
   (c) 5-9 (d) 14-15
7. For calculating Body Mass Index (BMI), weight of the person is divided by the:
   (a) Square of the weight
   (b) Square of the height
   (c) Square root of the height
   (d) Square of the sum of height and weight
8. If BMI is less than 18.5 then the person would be considered: v
   (a) over weight (b) long height
   (c) under nourished (d) short height
9. What proportion of the country is over using their groundwater reserves?
   (a) One-Fourth (b) One-Tenth
   (c) One-Third (d) Half
10. Resources which will get exhausted after years of use are:
    (a) Renewable resources
    (b) Non-durable resources
    (c) Non-renewable resources
    (d) Competing resources
11. What will be the top priority in the developmental goal of a landless labourer?
    (a) Expansion of rural banking
    (b) More days of work and better wages
    (c) Metal roads for transportation
    (d) Establishment of a high school
12. What will be the aspiration of an educated urban unemployed youth?
    (a) An educated urban unemployed youth will aspire for better opportunities in agriculture.
    (b) Support from government at every step-in life for his upward movement.
    (c) An urban educated unemployed will aspire for good job opportunities where his education can be made use of.
    (d) Better facilities of recreation for his leisure time.
13. Pick out the correct meaning listed below to define 'average income'.
    (a) Average income of the country means the total income of the country.
    (b) The average income in a country is the income of only employed people.
    (c) The average income is the same as per capita income.
    (d) The average income includes the value of property held.

14. Which country can be considered as a developed country in the modern world? Select your answer from the following statements.
    (a) Countries which have accumulated huge amount of wealth and always secures the future of their citizens. These countries are considered to be developed.
    (b) Countries which are among the highest in the 'Human Development Index' are considered to be the developed countries.
    (c) Only rich countries are considered to be developed because people have money to buy everything needed for human beings—both material and non-material.
    (d) Iran is a rich country and therefore it is a developed country.
15. Money cannot buy all the goods and services that we may need to have a good life. A list of things required for a good life is given below. Which among the following are things money cannot buy?
    (i) Full protection from infectious diseases
    (ii) High quality education
    (iii) A luxury home
    (iv) A pollution-free atmosphere in every part of the country
    (a) (i) and(ii) (b) (ii) and (iii)
    (c) (i), (ii) and (in) (d) (i) and (iv)

Very Short Questions-

1. Define the term National Income?
2. Define GDP.
3. What is the main criterion used by the World Bank in classifying different countries?
4. Why is the total income of countries not used to make comparisons between them?
5. Literacy rate measures the proportion of literate population in which age group?
6. Which state of India has the lowest infant mortality rate?
7. What is Human Development Index?
8. Name the report published by UNDP which compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
9. What term is used to describe the 'average number of years a person is expected to live at birth'?
10. What is the advantage of per capita income? Mention any one.

Short Questions-

1. Why do we use averages? Are there any limitations to their use? Illustrate with your own examples related to development.
2. What is per capita income? Mention any two limitations of per capita income as an indicator of development.
3. Kerala, with lower per capita income, has a better human development ranking than Punjab. Hence, per capita income is not a useful criterion at all and should not be used to compare States. Do you agree? Discuss.
4. On the basis of which three indicators of HDI 2004 Sri Lanka has better rank than India?
5. 'Conflicting goals can also be developmental goals'. Elaborate with examples.
6. What are common developmental goals? Give any two suitable examples of common developmental goals.
7. "Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well" Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.
8. Apart from income, which other six things people look for as important aspects of our lives?
9. One what basis the rich and low-income countries have been categorized in the world? What are the limitations of this approach? According to the World Development Report, 2006, India comes in which category? Give reason for the same.
10. Why do people look at a mix of goals for development? Explain.

Long Questions-

1. Why do different persons have different notions of development? Which of the following explanations is more important and why?
    (a) Because people are different.
    (b) Because life situations of persons are different.

2. What does HDI stand for? Explain the main criteria of measuring HDI according to UNDP Report of 1990.
3. Explain with examples that there are other important development goals also besides income.
4. Explain any five fields other than income where development is needed.
5. Explain with reasons why state of Punjab with a very high per capita income has a low literacy rate.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion (A): India has experienced some significant changes in the contribution to GDP by the primary sector.

   Reason (R): In terms of GDP, the service sector emerged as the largest producing sector in India replacing the primary sector.
2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion (A): Different persons have different notions of development.

   Reason (R): Each person seeks similar things. All persons seek things that are least important for them.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

   ''Here are many activities that are undertaken by directly using natural resources. Since most of the natural products we get are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry, this sector is also called agriculture and related sectors. The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing. This could be in a factory, a workshop, or at home. For example, using cotton fibre from the plant, we spin yarn and weave cloth. Since this sector gradually became associated with the different kinds of industries that came up, it is also called the industrial sector. After primary and secondary, there is a third category of activities that falls under the tertiary sector and are different from the above two. These are activities that help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors. These activities, by themselves, do not produce a good but they are an aid or support for the production process. For example, goods that are produced in the primary or secondary sector would need to be transported by trucks or trains and then sold in wholesale and retail shops. At times, it may be necessary to store these in God owns. Transport, storage, communication, banking, trade are some examples of tertiary activities. Since these activities generate services rather than goods, the tertiary sector is also called the service sector. The service sector also includes some essential services that may not directly help in the production of goods. For example, we require teachers, doctors, and those who provide personal services such as washermen, barbers, cobblers, lawyers, and people to do administrative and accounting work''

   Secondary sector: Workers in a match factory, Tertiary sector: _____.

   Beekeeper.

   Milk vendor.

   Handloom worker.

   Tailor.

i. Which is the correct option for classification based on nature of activities?
   a. Organised and unorganised sector.
   b. Public sector and private sector.
   c. Primary, secondary and tertiary sector.
   d. None of these.

ii. "After primary and secondary, there is a third category of activities that falls under the tertiary sector and is different from the above two." Which of the following is incorrect regarding the given statement?
   a. These activities do not produce a good by themselves.
   b. These activities help in the development of the primary and secondary sectors.
   c. These activities are an aid or support for the production process.
   d. These activities generate goods rather than services.

iii. Choose the incorrect pair:
   a. Call centre employee-Secondary sector.
   b. IT specialists-Quaternary sector.
   c. Potter-Primary Sector.
   d. Money Lender-Tertiary sector.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

One way to find out if we are properly nourished is to calculate what nutrition scientists call it BMI. This is easy to calculate. Let each student in the class find out his or her weight and height. Take the weight of each student in kilograms (kg). Then, take the height by drawing up a scale on the wall and measuring accurately with the head straight. Convert the height recorded in centimetres into meters. Divide the weight in kg by the square of the height. The number you get is called BMI. Then, look at the BMI-for-Age tables given on pages 90–91. A student's BMI could be within the normal range or less than that (underweight) or more (obesity). For example, if a girl student is 14 years and 8-month-old and the BMI is 15.2, then she is undernourished. Similarly, if the BMI of a boy aged 15 years and 6 months is 28, then he is overweight. Discuss the life situation, food and exercise habits of students, in general, without body shaming anyone.

i. What is BMI?
   a. Body mass information.
   b. Body mean information.
   c. Body mean index.
   d. Body mass index.

ii. Identify the correct formula to calculate the BMI.
   a. Height/ Weight^2
   b. Weight/ height^2
   c. Weight/ height
   d. Weight^2/ heigh

iii. Rahul is 5 ft 6 inches tall, and he weighs 82 kilos. Calculate his BMI.
   a. 23.5
   b. 29.2
   c. 27.6
   d. 21.3

iv. According to Rahul's BMI, he is _____.
   a. Overweight.
   b. Underweight.
   c. Normal.
   d. Obese.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: a
2. **Answer**: c
3. **Answer**: b
4. **Answer**: c
5. **Answer**: b
6. **Answer**: d
7. **Answer**: b
8. **Answer**: c
9. **Answer**: c
10. **Answer**: c
11. **Answer**: b
12. **Answer**: c
13. **Answer**: c
14. **Answer**: b
15. **Answer**: d

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer**: National income is defined as the total value of all final goods and services produced with a country plus net income from transactions like (export and import) with other countries.
2. **Answer**: GDP or Gross Domestic Product is the total value of all final goods and services produced during a particular year in a country.
3. **Answer**: The World Bank uses average income or per capita income as a criterion for classifying different countries.
4. **Answer**: The total income of countries is not used to make comparisons between them, because the population of different countries is different and does not give a clear picture if comparisons are made on this basis.
5. **Answer**: The age group of 7 years and above.
6. **Answer**: Kerala
7. **Answer**: Human Development Index is a composite index of achievements of a nation in terms of three important variables, namely—longevity, knowledge and standard of living, that determine the quality of life.
8. **Answer**: Human Development Report
9. **Answer**: Life Expectancy
10. **Answer**: It helps to compare the development of countries as per capita income tells us whether people in one country are better off than others in a different country.

Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** Total income is not a useful measure for comparison between countries. Since countries have different populations, comparing total income does not tell what an average person is likely to earn. Hence, we use average income which is total income of the country divided by total population.

   The defect of average as a measure is that it does not show the distribution (dispersion) of income between the rich and the poor.

   Two countries may have the same average income but in one country almost every family may enjoy more or less the same kind of income, whereas in the other, some may be very rich and others very poor. The disparity between rich and poor is an important feature that the average measure (per capita income) does not consider.

   Example: In terms of development, we can take the example of India, where the metro towns are full of high-rise buildings and shopping malls while some villages have not yet been provided with a basic necessity like electricity.

2. **Answer:** The total income of a country divided by its total population gives the Per Capita Income.

   Money cannot buy all the goods and services that are needed to live well. So, income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. For example, money cannot buy a pollution-free environment or ensure that one gets unadulterated medicines, unless one can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things.

3. **Answer:** Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these,

joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor.

Kerala ranks higher compared to Punjab even with a lower per capita income because—

1. mortality rate is lower
2. literacy rate is higher and
3. total number of children attending school (Classes I-V) is higher.

4. Answer: Three indicators of HDI 2004 in which Sri Lanka has better rank than India:

1. **Per capita income**—The per capita income of Sri Lanka in US dollars was 4,390 US dollars while that of India was 3,139 US dollars.
2. **Life expectancy at birth**—The life expectancy at birth for Sri Lanka was 74, higher than that of India at 64.
3. **Gross enrolment ratio for three levels**—Sri Lanka had Gross Enrolment ratio of 69 while that of India was 60.

5. Answer: All persons do not have the same notion of development or progress. Each one of them seeks different things. They seek things that are most important for them, *i.e.*, that which can fulfil their aspirations or desires. In fact at times two persons or groups of persons may seek things which are conflicting.

A girl expects as much freedom and opportunity as her brother and that he also shares in the household work. Her brother may not like this.

To get more electricity, industrialists may want more dams. But this may submerge the land and disrupt the lives of people who are displaced, such as tribals. They might resent this and may prefer small check dams or tanks to irrigate their land.

6. Answer: There are certain goals which are the same or common for all. These are common developmental goals. The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life. More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life.

Here are other aspects such as equal treatment, freedom, security, opportunity to learn, good working conditions, pollution-free atmosphere, job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life. Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things, for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us.

7. Answer: Yes, I agree with the statement because money income and material goods alone are not an adequate indicator of a good quality of life. Money cannot buy all the goods and services one needs to live well.

- Money cannot buy a pollution free and dean environment with fresh air.
- It cannot protect us from infectious diseases and guarantee good health for us.
- Money cannot assure that medicines available in the market are not adulterated.

To live well one needs non-material factors such as equal treatment, freedom, security, equal opportunity to learn, a pollution free environment, good and safe working conditions etc.

8. Answer: High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, job security, good working conditions, etc. are essential for a good standard of living.

9. Answer: The World Bank uses average income or per capita income as a criterion for classifying different countries. Countries with per capita income of ₹4,53,000 per annum and above (in the year 2004) are called rich countries and those with per capita income of ₹37,000 or less are called low-income countries (India comes under low-income countries; the per capita income in India is ₹28,000 per annum). Those falling in between ₹37,000 – ₹4,53,000 are placed in the middle category.

Limitations of this criterion.

1. While averages are useful for comparison, they also hide disparities. Two countries may have identical average income, but one country may have equitable distribution where people are neither very rich nor very poor, while in the other country most citizens are very poor and very few are extremely rich,

2. Better income cannot ensure a good quality life. Criterion set by the World Bank has ignored certain attributes of a good life which do not depend on income or cannot be. bought with money.

Example, freedom, equal treatment, equal opportunities, free atmosphere, provision of unadulterated medicines, etc.

10. Answer: Though income is one of the most important components of development, but there are other important goals which people look at for development—

1. People also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security and respect.
2. Women need a safe and secure environment to take up a variety of jobs or to run businesses as entrepreneurs.
3. People seek a pollution free environment.
4. Students seek better education and equal opportunities to learn.

Long Answers-

1. Answer: The correct explanation is 'Because life situations of persons are different.'

Developmental goals are different for different categories of people because of their different aspirations. Aspirations are based on their needs. At times people may have conflicting developmental goals also. What may be development for one may not be development for another. It may even be destructive for the other.

Example, Industrialists may want construction of more dams for more electricity, but this may lead to displacement of tribals who live in those areas and thereby disrupt their lives.

Example, the inhabitants of Nandigram in West Bengal are mainly agriculturists and their aspirations are to see development in the field of agriculture, whereas to some it may appear that industrial advancement is more necessary for national development.

2. Answer: HDI Stand for Human Development Index.

Main criteria of measuring HDI:

1. HDI published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
2. HDI determines the rank of a country by its overall achievement in three areas, i.e., life expectancy, educational level and per capita income.
3. Many improvements have been suggested in calculating HDI and many new components have been added to Human Development Report.
4. Pre-fixing Human to Development, it has made it clear that what is important in development is what is happening to citizens of a country, i.e., the health and wellbeing of the people is most important.

3. Answer: More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life. There are other aspects such as equal treatment, freedom, security, opportunity to learn, good working conditions, pollution-free atmosphere, job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life.

Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things, for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us. Another example, if we get a job in a far-off place, before accepting it we would try consider many factors apart from income such as facilities for our family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. Similarly, for development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of house work and greater acceptance of women.

The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.

4. Answer: Fields other than income where development is needed:

1. **Education.** The government must provide adequate education facilities in all rural and urban areas. The government must necessarily focus on education for girls so that all girls are able to acquire atleast secondary level schooling. Running proper schools and providing quality education, particularly elementary education, is the duty of the Government.

2. **Health.** Basic health care facilities are a must for all. Establishment of government hospitals, clinics and dispensaries, especially in rural areas, to provide subsidized and unadulterated medicines to the poorer sections of society.
3. **Nutrition.** An effective Public Distribution System—proper functioning of ration shops and equitable distribution of foodgrains is very essential.
4. **Transportation.** A well-developed public transport system to make it easy for general public to commute.
5. **Electricity.** It is the duty of the government to provide electricity and water at reasonable rates to the common man and prevent him from exploitation by private companies.

5. Answer: Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life.

This can be seen in the case of Punjab which has a very high per capita income but a low literacy rate. Having money in one's pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that we need to live well. Money cannot ensure education and literacy. Another reason for low literacy rate in Punjab could be the lack of free and compulsory educational facilities. The government needs to open more schools and provide other facilities so that all children have a chance to study.

Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (d) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.
2. (c) Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (b) Milk vendor.

   ii. (c) Primary, secondary, and tertiary sector.

   iii. (d) These activities generate goods rather than services.

   iv. (a) Call centre employee-Secondary sector.
2. i. (d) Body mass index.

   ii. (b) Weight/ height^2

   iii. (b) 29.2

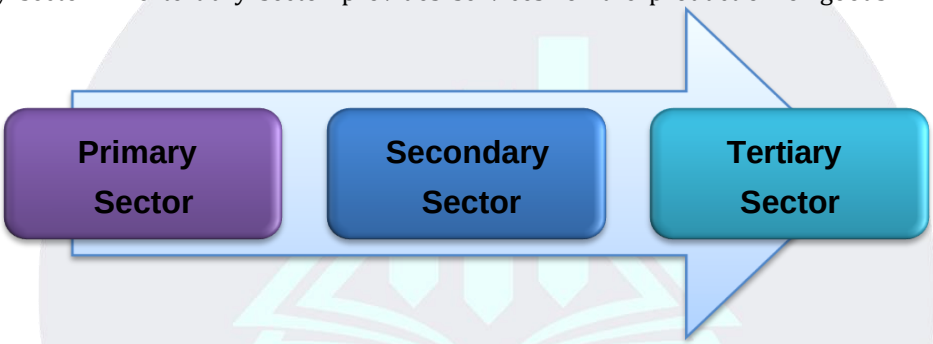
   (a) Overweight.

Sectors of The Indian Economy 2

Economic Activities—All the activities that generate incomes are called economic activities.

Economic activities are performed by three different sectors. They are the primary, secondary and tertiary sectors.

The primary sector is involved in natural products which we get from agriculture, fishing, dairy and forestry. When these natural products are converted to other forms of production through an industrial activity, it is known as the secondary sector. The tertiary sector provides services for the production of goods in the primary and

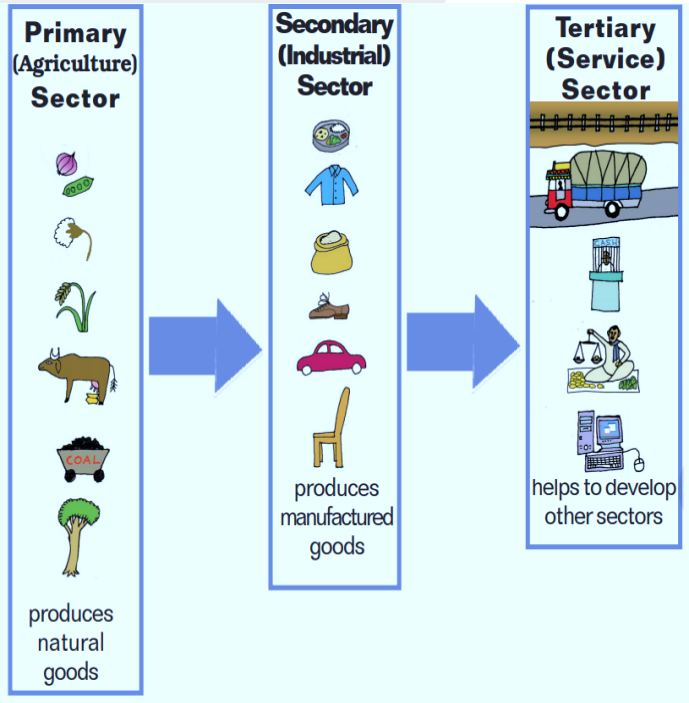


secondary sectors. There are also certain important services such as teaching, medicine, law and information technology which may not directly help in the production of goods.

Primary sector: When we produce goods by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the primary sector. Eg: Farming, forestry, hunting, fishing and mining.

Secondary sector: Covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing, it is also called as industrial sector. For example, using cotton fibre from the plant, we spin yarn and weave cloth. Using sugarcane as raw material, we make sugar or gur.

Tertiary sector: These are the activities that help in the development of the primary & secondary sector. These activities by themselves do not produce good but they are an aid and support to the production process. Example: Transportation- Goods that are produced in the primary sector need to be transported by trucks or trains and than sold in the wholesale and retail shops; Storage-at times it is necessary to store these products in godowns, which is also a service made available. Communication -talking to others on telephone); Banking-borrowing money from the banks. Since these activities are generate services rather than goods it is also called Service sector.

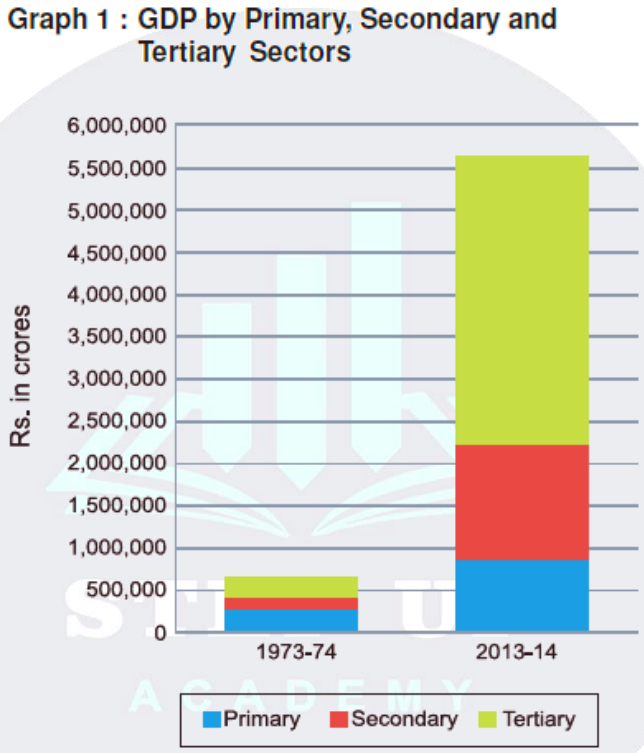


Comparing The Three Sectors

In an economy, there could be one or more sectors which are dominant in terms of total production and employment, while other sectors are relatively small in size. Therefore, Comparison can be done among these three sectors on the basis of value of final goods and services produced.

The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year and the sum of production in these sectors gives us gross domestic product (GDP) of a country.

Historical Change in Sectors: The importance of sectors has changed, At the initial stages of development, primary sector was the most important sector of economic activity but over a period of time Secondary sector gradually became the most important in total production and employment. But there has been a further shift from secondary to tertiary sector in developed countries. The service sector has become the most important in terms of total production.



In the year 2013-14, the tertiary sector emerged as the largest producing sector in India, replacing the primary sector. The tertiary sector has become important in India because of the following reasons:

- Services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices, municipal corporations, defence, transport, banks, insurance companies, etc. are considered as basic services and are necessary for all people.
- The development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as transport, trade, storage, etc.
- With the rise in the income of people, they start demanding more services like eating out, tourism, shopping, private hospitals, private schools, professional training, etc.
- Over the past decade, certain new services based on information and communication technology have become important and essential.

Value of Goods and Services

Only the final value of goods and services are counted because the value of final goods includes the value of all the intermediate goods which are used in producing the final good.

Gross Domestic Product

The gross domestic product (GDP) is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year.

Historical Change in Sectors

Agricultural production was the predominant activity in the initial stage of development. Most of the people were employed in the primary sector. With the advancement in manufacturing, the secondary sector began to increase the total production and employment level. Gradually, the concentration of technological changes improved the efficiency of production in the tertiary sector.

Primary, Secondary and Tertiary Sectors in India

Over the years, there has been a massive growth in the turnover of all sectors of the economy. Therefore, the tertiary sector has been considered one of the largest producing sectors in India.

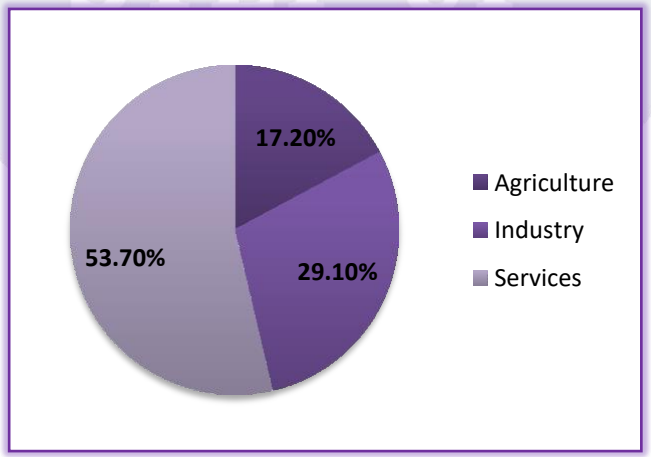
Importance of the Tertiary Sector

- Basic services such as education, health, postal communication, transport and banks are essential in daily life.
- The development of the primary and secondary sectors has improved the growth of the service sector.
- Because of an increase in the income level, people demand services such as tourism, shopping and dining.
- Recently, the services of advanced information and communication have gained more importance.

Employment Status

The share of the agricultural sector has substantially decreased, and the share of the tertiary sector has grown tremendously. However, the share of employment in these sectors was not in tune with the GDP, and still the agricultural sector is the largest employer. It means that there are more people employed in the agricultural sector than actually required. Even if few agricultural workers stop working, it does not affect the production level. This is known as disguised employment.

Share of Sectors in GDP (%), 2008



Creation of Employment

- National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005 (NREGA, 2005) is implemented by the Central Government for guaranteeing 100 days of employment in a year.
- The Government provides money or banks provide loans to farmers to construct wells for irrigation of land.
- Under-employment in rural areas can be tackled by creating job opportunities where youth are employed in the construction of dams or in the digging of canals.

- Farming co-operatives need to provide cheap credit to farmers for improving farming.
- Identify and locate job opportunities in industries and services in semi-rural areas.
- Strengthen the functions of education and health industries.
- Proper planning and support from the Government to facilitate services such as IT and tourism.

Division of Sectors as Organised and Unorganised

Organised Sector

The organised sector includes enterprises or places of work where the terms of employment are regular and work is assured. Companies are compelled to follow the rules and regulations passed under registered acts such as the Factories Act, Minimum Wages Act, Payment of Gratuity Act, and Shops and Establishments Act. Workers enjoy the security of employment and are expected to work only for a fixed number of hours. Over time hours are paid by the employer, and employees receive several other benefits.

Unorganised Sector

The unorganised sector is small and has scattered units which are mostly out of government control. Jobs are usually with low wages and are often not regular. An employee's job is not secured and there are no provisions for perks and benefits.

- A farmer needs support through adequate facilities for timely delivery of seeds, agricultural inputs, credit, storage facilities and marketing outlets.
- Small-scale industries require the government's support for procuring raw material and marketing of output.
- The casual worker needs protection in rural and urban areas.

Organised sector	Unorganised sector
It is a sector where the employment terms are fixed and regular, and the employees get assured work.	The unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units, which are largely outside the control of the government.
The job is regular and has fixed working hours. If people work more, they get paid for the overtime by the employer.	Jobs are low-paid and often not regular.
Workers enjoy the security of employment.	Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason.
Employes will get medical and several other benefits.	No benefits are available for the workers.
Examples: Government employees, registered industrial workers, etc.	Examples: Shopkeeping, Farming, Domestic works, etc.

Sectors in Term of Ownership: Public and Private Sectors

On the basis of who owns the assets and is accountable for the delivery of services, economic activities can be classified into public and private sectors.

Public Sector

In the public sector, the Government owns most assets and provides services to the public. Earning profit is not the motive. Some activities which involve large investment can be undertaken only by the Government such as constructing roads, bridges, railways; generating electricity; building ration shops; and providing facilities for health and education. In these activities, the Government has to support and ensure for everyone.

Private Sector

In the private sector, the ownership of assets and delivery of services are with individuals or private companies. Earning profit is the main motive. All services provided are to earn revenue.

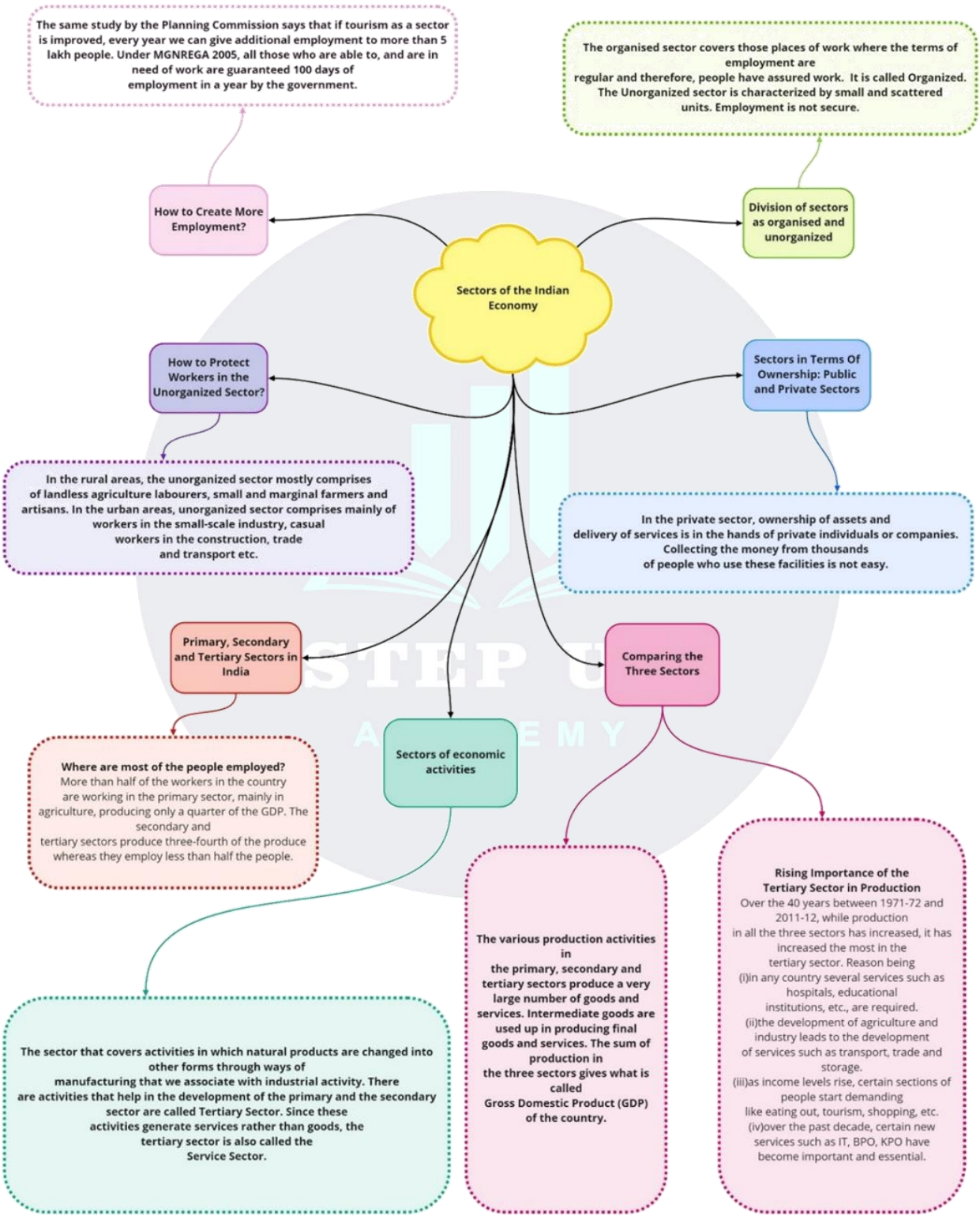
Public Sector	Private Sector
This sector is controlled and managed by the government.	This sector is owned by a private individual.
The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profits.	Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits.
This sector focuses on serving the general people of the country i.e. public welfare.	This sector focuses on constructing a brand image.
Capital is obtained by public revenue such as taxes, bonds, other duties and many more.	Capital can be obtained by issuing shares or loans in this sector.
Extremely secured employment by parameters of merit, progress or term of working.	This doesn't ensure security of employment, totally based on merit and production output.
Highly secured job, multiple retirement facilities etc.	It doesn't give any retirement benefit or allowances.
Jobs under this sector: Railways, Post office, Armed forces, Education etc.	Jobs under this sector: Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited, Reliance, IT sector etc.

Responsibilities of Government

There are a large number of activities which are the primary responsibility of the government. Here, we have listed a few of them:

- Government raises money through taxes and other ways to meet expenses on the services rendered by it.
- Governments have to undertake heavy spending such as the construction of roads, bridges, railways, harbours, generating electricity, providing irrigation through dams, etc. Also, it has to ensure that these facilities are available for everyone.
- There are some activities, which the government has to support to encourage the private sector to continue their production or business.
- The government in India buys wheat and rice from farmers at a 'fair price' and sells at a lower price to consumers through ration shops. In this way, it supports both farmers and consumers.
- Running proper schools and providing quality education, health and education facilities for all are some of the duties of the government.
- Government also needs to pay attention to aspects of human development such as availability of safe drinking water, housing facilities for the poor and food and nutrition, taking care of the poorest and most ignored regions of the country.

Class : 10th Economics
Chapter-2 : Sectors of the Indian Economy



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. The sectors are classified into public and private sector on the basis of:
   (a) Employment conditions
   (b) The nature of economic activities
   (c) Number of workers employed
   (d) Ownership of enterprises3
2. When we produce a good by exploiting natural resources, it is an activity of the:
   (a) Secondary sector
   (b) Tertiary sector
   (c) Primary sector
   (d) Organised sector
3. The service sector includes activities such as:
   (a) agriculture, dairy, fishing and forestry
   (b) making sugar, gur and bricks
   (c) transport, communication and banking
   (d) None of these
4. Choose the correct meaning of organised sector:
   (a) It covers those enterprises where the terms of employment are regular.
   (b) It is outside the control of the government.
   (c) Jobs are not regular.
   (d) It provides low salaries.
5. Which of the following is included in tertiary sector?
   (a) ATM booths
   (b) Call centres
   (c) Internet cafe
   (d) All of them
6. Government owns most of the assets and provides all the services:
   (a) Private Sector (b) Public Sector
   (c) Organised Sector (d) Tertiary Sector
7. The value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year is called as:
   (a) Gross Domestic Product
   (b) Net Domestic Product
   (c) National Product
   (d) Production of Tertiary Sector
8. A situation in which more persons are employed on a job than are optimally required is:
   (a) Structural unemployment
   (b) Disguised unemployment
   (c) Cyclical unemployment
   (d) Seasonal unemployment
9. Out of 200 million children in the school going age group, how many are attending schools?
   (a) One-fourth
   (b) Half
   (c) Two-thirds
   (d) One-fifth
10. Central government in India made a law, implementing the Right to Work in how many districts of India?
   (a) 150 districts (b) 200 districts
   (c) 250 districts (d) 625 districts
11. GDP stands for Gross Domestic Product. What does it show? Pick up the correct statement given below:
   (a) It shows how big is the economy of a country in a given year in terms of its total output.
   (b) It shows what the total product of a country in a given year without counting the country's total resources.
   (c) It shows the number of people involved in production in a particular year.
   (d) It shows the total value of trade transactions of a country in a particular year.
12. Employment figures of a country are based on data collected from 5-yearly survey on employment and unemployment. Which organisation conducts this survey?
   (a) NSSO—National Sample Survey Organisation
   (b) NREGA 2005—National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005
   (c) ILO — International Labour Organisation
   (d) Census of India
13. Identify the natural product from the list of items given below:
   (a) Textile (b) Wheat flour
   (c) Cotton (d) Tomtao sauce

14. Which of the following examples does not fall under unorganized sector?
    (a) A farmer irrigating his field.
    (b) A daily wage labourer working for a contractor.
    (c) A doctor in a hospital treating a patient.
    (d) A handloom weaver working on a loom in her house.
15. Identify the correct answer from the alternatives provided.
    Both Tisco and Reliance Industries are owned by:
    (a) The government
    (b) Private company
    (c) A cooperative society
    (d) Jointly by private companies and the govt.

Very Short Questions-

1. Classify the economy on the basis of ownership of enterprises.
2. Classify the economy on the basis of the nature of the activity.
3. What is disguised unemployment?
4. Production of a commodity, mostly through the natural process is an activity of which sector?
5. Name the sector in which the government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.
6. Name the sector which continued to be the largest employer even in the year 2000.
7. How many days of guaranteed employment are provided under National Rural Employment Guarantee Act, 2005?
8. ATM is an example of which sector?
9. Suggest any one way to create employment opportunity in the rural areas.
10. Production of a commodity, mostly through the natural process is an activity of which sector?

Short Questions-

1. Explain how public sector contributes to the economic development of a nation.
2. Why is NREGA also called the Right to work? Explain the objectives of National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005.
3. With the example of sugarcane, explain the interdependence of all the three sectors of the economy.
4. "The problem of underemployment is not confined only to agriculture". Support the statement with examples.
5. What are final goods and intermediate goods? How do they help in calculating (GDP) Gross Domestic Product?
6. Explain any three ways to solve the problem of underemployment.
7. Why didn't shift out of primary sector happen in case of employment although there has been a change in the share of the three sectors in GDP?
8. Classify the economic sectors on the basis of nature of activities. Mention the main feature of each.
9. What is meant by Gross Domestic Product (GDP)? How is GDP measured in India?

Long Questions-

1. Describe the importance of Primary sector in the Indian economy.
2. How can we create more employment in secondary and tertiary sectors in rural India?
3. Explain the importance of the service sector.

Or

Explain reasons for the rising importance of the tertiary sector in India.

4. How can employment be increased in both rural and urban areas? Explain.
5. "There are several things needed by the society as a whole". In the light of this statement explain as to who can provide them at a reasonable cost, the private or the public sector and why?

Or

Explain any three demerits of private sector.

6. Describe any five conditions or aspects that you would consider before accepting a job?
7. 'There has been a big change in the three sectors of economic activities, but a similar shift has not taken place in the share of employment.' Explain the above statement on the basis of facts.
8. Define tertiary sector. Describe about the different kinds of people employed in this sector in India.
9. State any five features each of public sector and private sector.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion (A): In the public sector, the government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.

   Reason (R): The purpose of the public sector is not first to earn profits but to promote public welfare.

2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion (A): Disguised unemployment is hidden in contrast to someone who does not have a job and is clearly visible as unemployed. Everyone is working, no one is fully employed.

   Reason (R): In actual fact, labour effort gets divided.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

   Total income is not such a useful measure. Since, countries have different populations, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person is likely to earn. Are people in one country better off than others in a different country? Hence, we compare the average income which is the total income of the country divided by its total population. The average income is also called per capita income. In World Development Reports, brought out by the World Bank, this criterion is used in classifying countries. Countries with per captain come of US$ 12,056 per annum and above in 2017, are called rich countries and those with per capita income of US$ 955 or less are called low-income countries. India comes in the category of low middle income countries because its per capita income in 2017was just US$ 1820 per annum. The rich countries, excluding countries of Middle East and certain other small countries, are generally called developed countries.

   i. Countries with per capita income of US$ 12,056 per annum and above are called _____ .
      a. Low-income countries.
      b. Rich countries.
      c. Small countries.
      d. None of these.

   ii. We compare the average income by _____.
      a. Total income of the country divided by the total population.
      b. Total population multiplied by total income.
      c. Both A and B.
      d. None of these.

   iii. The rich countries exclude the countries of _____.
      a. Middle East.
      b. Certain other small countries.
      c. Sri Lanka.
      d. All of these.

   iv. The average income is:
      a. Income per person.
      b. Income per family.
      c. Income per month.
      d. Income per earning person.

2. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:

   This sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations, but these are not followed. Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness etc. Employment is not secure.

People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave. A lot also depends on the whims of the employer. This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own doing small jobs such as selling on the street or doing repair work. Similarly, farmers work on their own and hire labourers as and when they require:

i. Which sector are we talking about?
   a. Private sector.
   b. Public sector.
   c. Organised sector.
   d. Unorganised sector.

ii. Which of the following is applicable for a worker, who works in the above-mentioned sector?
   a. She gets medical allowance.
   b. She got an appointment letter stating the terms and conditions of work when she joins work.
   c. She gets a regular salary at the end of the month.
   d. She is not paid for leave.

iii. Choose the correct meaning of the organised sector:
   a. It covers those enterprises where the terms of employment are regular.
   b. It is outside the control of the government.
   c. Jobs are not regular.
   d. It provides low salaries.

iv. Read the statements given below and choose the incorrect options:
   1. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, etc. in the organised sector.
   2. Workers in organised sector enjoy security of employment.
   3. Organised sector covers those places of work where the terms of employment are regular.
   4. Workers in the organised sector expected to work only a fixed number of hours.
   a. Only (1) is incorrect.
   b. (1) and (2) both are incorrect.
   c. (2), (3) and (4) are incorrect.
   d. Only (4) is incorrect.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers-

1. **Answer**: d
2. **Answer**: c
3. **Answer**: c
4. **Answer**: a
5. **Answer**: d
6. **Answer**: b
7. **Answer**: a
8. **Answer**: b
9. **Answer**: c
10. **Answer**: d
11. **Answer**: a
12. **Answer**: b
13. **Answer**: c
14. **Answer**: c
15. **Answer**: c

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer**: Public Sector and Private Sector.
2. **Answer**: The economy is classified on the basis of economic activities into three sectors namely Primary sector, Secondary sector and Tertiary sector.
3. **Answer**: Disguised unemployment is a situation in which more people are employed on a job than the required number.
4. **Answer**: Primary Sector
5. **Answer**: Pubic Sector
6. **Answer**: The primary sector continued to be the largest employer even in the year 2000.
7. **Answer**: 100 days of employment are guaranteed under NREGA, 2005.
8. **Answer**: Tertiary sector

9. **Answer**: Setting up a dal mill, opening a cold storage, starting or promoting honey collection are some of the ways of creating employment opportunities in rural areas.

10. **Answer**: Primary Sector

Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** In the public sector, ownership of assets and delivery of services is under the government. The government spends huge amounts of money in providing various services to the public at reasonable costs.

The government thus contributes towards the economic development of the nation:

By development of infrastructure, i.e.,

1. Construction of roads, national highways, flyovers, metro-rails, railway lines, irrigation through dams, etc.
2. The government provides an impetus to industrial growth by supplying electricity at affordable rates.
3. By running schools and providing good quality of education, the government is trying to remove illiteracy and taking the nation forward.

2. **Answer:** Every state or region in India has potential for increasing the income and employment in that area.

Recognising this, the Central Government in India has passed an act called the National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005,

Main objectives of the NREGA 2005 are:

- to implement the Right to Work in 200 districts of India.
- to guarantee 100 days of employment in a year by the Government. In case the Government fails, it offers unemployment allowance.
- to give preference to the type of work that will help increase the production from land.

3. **Answer:** The primary sector involves production at the most basic level, i.e., through exploitation of natural resources. Cultivation of sugarcane is an agricultural activity which comes under the primary sector. Raw materials from the primary sector are converted into processed goods through manufacturing in the secondary sector. Using sugarcane as raw material, jaggery and sugar is made in the factories. The tertiary or service sector provides support to the process of production. It includes transportation, storage, marketing and sale of products. For instance, transportation of sugarcane from the fields to the sugar mills. Further on, the transportation of jaggery and sugar from factories and sugar mills to the markets.

The farmer (Primary sector) also needs fertilisers and seeds which are processed in some factory (Secondary sector) and which will be delivered to his doorstep by some means of transportation (Tertiary sector). In this way, for every little process there is interdependence of the three sectors of the economy on each other.

4. **Answer:** The problem of underemployment is not confined only to agriculture. It can also happen in other sectors.

- For example, there are thousands of casual workers in the service sector in urban areas who search for daily employment. They are employed as painters, plumbers, repair persons and other odd jobs. Many of them don't find work every day.
- Similarly, we see other people of the service sector on the street pushing a cart or selling something where they may spend the whole day but earn very little. They are doing such work only due to the lack of better employment opportunities.
- The unorganised sector includes small and scattered units outside the government control. Employment is not secure. People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave.

5. **Answer:** Final goods are goods that are ultimately consumed by the consumer rather than used in the production of another good.

Intermediate goods are goods used as inputs in the production of final goods and services. For example, a car sold to a consumer is a final good; components such as a tyre sold to the car manufacturer is an intermediate good. The value of final goods already includes the value of all intermediate goods that are used in making the final good.

The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year.

6. Answer: There are people who are capable of better work and earning more than what they are getting. The reason for this is that better jobs for which they are qualified are not available. Such people are termed as underemployed, e.g., a graduate teacher driving a taxi. Underemployment is most prevalent in the primary or agricultural sector.

Three ways to solve the problem of underemployment:

1. Provision of loans may help in creating jobs for disguised unemployed and underemployed workers.

   The loan money can be used for the promotion of economic activity of the family adding to the family's earning or for setting up a cottage industry.

2. Another way is to promote and locate industries and services in semi-rural areas where a large number of people may be employed.

   Example, setting up a dal mill, opening a cold storage, starting or promoting honey collection.

3. If local banks give credit to farmers at a reasonable rate of interest, they will be able to buy agricultural inputs and increase productivity.

4. Centres for vegetables and fruit processing, health centres, educational institutions, tourism and IT centres will certainly help in creating jobs.

7. Answer: A remarkable fact about India is that while there has been a change in the share of the three sectors in GDP, a similar shift has not taken place in employment.

1. A similar shift out of primary sector did not happen in case of employment because not enough jobs were created in the secondary and tertiary sectors.

2. Even though industrial output or the production of goods went up by eight times during the period, employment in the industry went up by only 2.5 times.

3. While production in the service sector rose by 11 times, employment in the service sector rose less than three times.

   As a result, more than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector, mainly in agriculture, producing only a quarter of the GDP.

8. Answer: On the basis of nature of activities, economic sectors are classified into:

1. Primary sector
2. Secondary sector
3. Tertiary sector

Primary sector forms the base for all other products that we subsequently make. Since most of the natural products we get, are from agriculture, dairy, fishing, forestry, this sector is also called sector for agriculture and related activities (stone quarrying, animal husbandry, etc.).

Secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing. It can take place in a factory, workshop or at home.

Examples:

(a) Spinning yam from cotton fibre from plants.

(b) Making sugar from sugarcane.

It is also called the Industrial sector.

Tertiary sector. Activities in this sector do not produce any goods. This sector produces services that act as aid and support to the Primary and Secondary sectors. Services like administration, police, army, transport, hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph, courts, municipal corporation, insurance companies, storage, trade communication and banking are some of the examples of activities of the Tertiary sector. This sector is also known as Service sector.

9. Answer: Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country is the value of all the final goods and services produced in each sector within a country during a particular year. This indicates how big the country's economy is. GDP is measured by the

Central Government Ministry. This Ministry, with the help of all the Indian States and Union Territories, collects information relating to total volume of goods and services and their prices and then makes an estimate of the GDP.

Long Answers-

1. Answer: Importance of Primary sector:

1. Primary Sector provides the basic needs of economy for food and mineral ores.
2. It produces some of the raw materials (like jute, cotton, coal extracted from mines) for the industrial sector.
3. The Primary sector continued to be the largest employer in the economy even in the year 2000, the reason being that Secondary and Tertiary sectors still do not create enough jobs.
4. The agricultural population in the Primary sector provides a very large market of consumers for the Secondary sector (for buying finished products like clothes, goods of daily need, fertilizers, etc.).

2. Answer: Investing in basic agricultural infrastructure like construction of dams and canals for irrigation can lead to a lot of employment generation within the agricultural sector itself reducing the problem of under employment.

If the government invests some money in the storage and transportation of crops, or makes better rural roads so that mini-trucks reach everywhere, several farmers can continue to grow and sell these crops throughout the year. This activity can provide productive employment to not just farmers but also others such as those in services like transport or trade.

Providing credit at a reasonable rate of interest to help farmers buy seeds, fertilisers, agricultural equipments, pumpsets etc. can generate employment in rural banking.

The government/banks can provide loans at cheap rates to the small farmers to improve their irrigational facilities like constructing a well so that they can irrigate their land well and get two to three crops a year instead of one. Thus more people can be employed in the same field.

Another way is to promote and locate industries and services in semi-rural areas where a large number of people may be employed. For example, setting up a dal mill, opening a cold storage, starting or promoting honey collection, etc.

3. Answer: Tertiary sector or service sector plays a very significant role and its importance is rising day by day:

1. Greater the development of primary sector and secondary sector more would be the demand for Services.
2. Tertiary sector has become the largest producer in India because various kinds of Services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations, courts, village administrative offices, transport, banks, insurance companies, etc. are required.
3. Even development of agriculture and industry leads to the development of services such as transport, trade and storage, etc.
4. With the rise in income, demand for more services is rising.

   For example, eating out in restaurants, tourism, malls and shopping complexes, schools, professional training, etc.
5. New services like Information Technology and outsourcing have become very important for modem day trade and industry.

   Unfortunately, the rapid growth of the service sector in India has not yet shown the expected corresponding increase in employment.

4. Answer: Ways to provide more employment opportunities in rural areas:

1. Promote and locate industries and services in semi-rural areas where a large number of people may be employed. Example, setting up a dal mill, opening a cold storage, starting or promoting honey collection.
2. Promoting small-scale industries, small-scale manufacturing units, agro-processing industries and providing loans for the same. The government/banks can provide loans at cheap rates to the small farmers to improve their irrigational facilities so that they can

get two or three crops a year instead of one. Thus, more people can be employed in the same field.

3. If more dams are built and canal water is provided to all the small farmers, then a lot of employment can be generated in the agricultural sector.
4. If more money is spent on transportation and storage, then not only small farmers will be benefitted but many more people can be employed in transport and storage sector.
5. Investing more in tourism and employing more youth in this sector.

5. Answer: Society as a whole need several things which the private sector will not be able to provide at a reasonable cost.

Reasons for this are:

1. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits and not welfare of the people,
2. There are several services needed by the society which the private sector cannot provide at a reasonable price. Activities like construction of roads, bridges, railways, irrigation through dams etc., require huge amount of money which is beyond the capacity of the Private sector. Private sector charges high rates for the use of these services.
3. It is difficult for the Private sector to collect money from thousands of people who use these services.
4. The Private sector sometimes ignores regional balanced development, equality of income and development of basic industries.
5. Private sector charges include profit margins whereas the government will charge a reasonable price for services. It is the primary duty of the government to ensure the provision of public facilities with a service motto.

6. Answer: Before accepting a job, many factors need to be considered apart from income—

1. These include factors such as facilities for families, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn.
2. In another case, a job may give less pay but may offer regular employment that enhances sense of security. Another job however, may offer high pay but no job security and also leave no time for family.
3. The terms of employment are as per government rules and regulations.
4. The enterprise also gives several other benefits like paid leave, provident fund, gratuity, etc.
5. The employer also makes provisions for medical benefits and safe working environment. A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs.

7. Answer: Though there has been a change in the share of the three sectors in GDP, similar shift has not taken place in the structure of employment. The Primary sector continues to be the largest employer even in the year 2000. The reason for this is that not enough jobs are created in the Secondary and Tertiary sectors. More than half of the workers in the country are working in the Primary sector, mainly in agriculture, producing only a quarter of GDP. In contrast to this, Secondary and Tertiary sectors produce three-fourths of the produce though they employ less than half of the people.

Reasons:

1. During the last thirty years in the Indian economy, not enough jobs have been created in the Secondary and Tertiary sectors, although their output has increased many folds. As a result, more than half of the workers in the country are working in the primary sector, mainly agriculture, causing gross underemployment due to overcrowding in the sector.
2. There are more people engaged in agricultural activities than is necessary. The situation is such that even if we remove a lot of people from agriculture, the production of this sector will not be affected.

8. Answer: Tertiary sector. Activities in this sector do not produce any goods. This sector produces services that act as aid and support to the primary and secondary sector. Services like administration, police, army, transport, hospitals, educational institutions, post & telegraph, courts,

municipal corporation, banking & insurance, storage, trade and communications are examples of activities in the tertiary sector. This sector is also known as the Service Sector.

1. The first kind of people are the highly skilled and educated people providing specialised services. E.g., doctors, lawyers, accountants, etc. There are a limited number of services that employ highly skilled and educated workers and offer big salaries.
2. There are also a very large number of workers engaged in services, such as small shopkeepers, repair persons, transport persons. These people barely manage to earn a living and yet they perform these services because no alternative opportunities for work are available to them.

Hence, only a part of this sector is growing in importance.

9. Answer:

Public Sector:

1. The government owns most of the assets.
2. All the services are provided by the government.
3. The main motive of the public sector is the welfare of the people (masses). Activities are guided by the interest of the nation as a whole.
4. Employees feel secured and there is discipline and regular work.
5. Governments raise money through taxes and other measure:
6. For example, railways, post offices, construction of roads, bridges, harbours, dams, etc.

Private Sector:

1. In the private sector, ownership of assets is in the hands of private individuals or companies.
2. Services are provided or are in the hands of individuals.
3. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profits and not welfare of the people.
4. Jobs of the employees are less secured and the whims of the owners are above all.
5. Private sector charges high rates for the use of services provided by them.
6. For example, Companies like Tata Iron and Steel Co. (TISCO), Reliance Industries, etc.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
2. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (b) Rich countries.
   ii. (a) Total income of the country divided by the total population.
   iii. (d) All of these.
   iv. (a) Income per person.
2. i. (d) Unorganised sector.
   ii. (d) She is not paid for leave.
   iii. (a) It covers those enterprises where the terms of employment are regular.
   iv. (a) Only (1) is incorrect.

Money and Credit 3

Money as a Medium of Exchange

An intermediary instrument is used to facilitate the sale or purchase of goods between the buyer and the seller. In the olden days, both parties agreed to sell and buy each other's goods. This is known as the barter system. Here, the **double coincidence** of wants is an important feature because the goods are directly exchanged without the use of currency. Later, metallic coins of gold, silver and copper were used as a medium of exchange in transaction. In modern economies, money functions as a medium of exchange. A person holding money can exchange it for any desired good and service in the market.

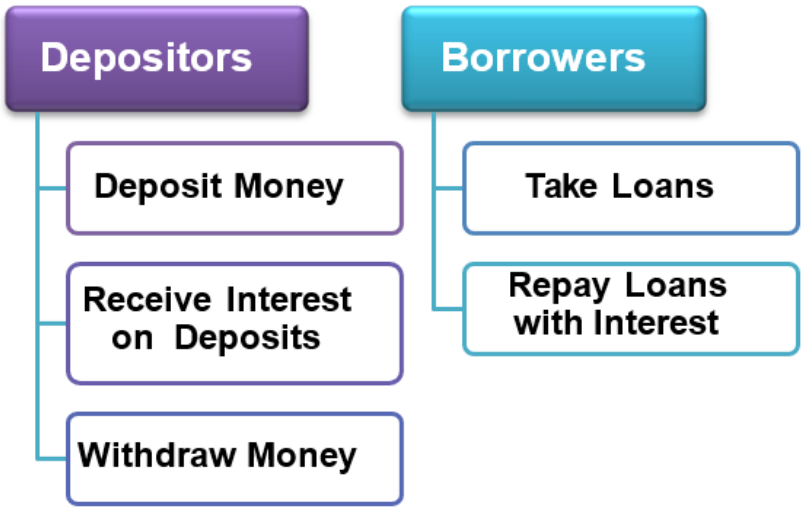
Modern Forms of Money

Modern forms of money are currencies and coins which are authorised by the Government of the country. The Reserve Bank of India (RBI) issues currency notes on behalf of the Government. The law legalises the use of currency notes as a medium of payment which everyone has to accept in all the transactions in India.



Deposits with Banks

- **Cash Deposit:** Some people may hold certain amount of money with banks as deposits after meeting the day-to-day expenses. The banker accepts the person's deposit and pays an amount of interest on the deposits. **The deposits in the bank account can be withdrawn on demand, and these deposits are called demand deposits.**
- **Cheques:** A bank account holder can make payment through a cheque for a specific amount instead of cash. A cheque is a paper with the instruction to the banker to pay the specified amount from the person's account to the person in whose name the cheque has been issued.



Bank Loans

The bank maintains only a certain portion of deposits as cash with them and most deposits are used to extend loans. People may require loans for their economic activities. Thus, banks make use of these deposits to meet the loan requirement of people. Banks charge a higher rate of interest on loans than the interest they pay on deposits. The difference between the amount of interest received and paid is their main source of income.

Credits

Credit refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment.

Generally, farmers take crop loans at the beginning of the season and repay the loan after harvest. If the income from the harvest is not sufficient to repay the credit, then a part of the land is sold to repay the credit. **This is a situation called debt-trap.**

In certain cases credit plays a vital and positive role.

Terms of Credit

- The loan agreement specifies that the borrower needs to pay interest to the lender along with the principal amount, and the lender may demand **collateral** against loans.
- Collateral is an asset which the borrower owns (such as land, livestock and bank deposits) and uses as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.
- Thus, the terms of credit comprise interest rate, collateral, documentation and the mode of repayment.

Loans from Cooperatives

Cooperative societies are the other major source of cheap credit in rural areas. It accepts deposits from farmers and uses it as collateral for obtaining loans from banks. Further, these funds are used to provide loans to members.

Types of Credit in India

Types of loan/credit can be grouped into formal and informal sector loans.

- Loans provided by banks and cooperatives are formal sector loans. The functions of **formal sector** loans are supervised by RBI. They are:
    - To maintain minimum cash balance as reserve in the bank.
    - To provide loans not only to the profit-making business but also to the small-scale industries, small cultivators and borrowers.
    - To submit the periodical report to RBI regarding the total amount extended as credit and the rate of interest charged on credit.
- Loans provided by moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends are informal sector loans. There is no organisation to supervise the activities of the **informal sector**. These lenders charge a higher rate of interest than banks and cooperatives. Because of the higher interest rate, the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of the borrower. Thus, banks and cooperatives need to lend cheap and affordable credit for the country's development.

Importance of formal and informal sources of credit for people in rural areas:

- Only 50% of the total credit is provided by the formal sector and the remaining by the informal sector.
- The formal sector has to increase the credits in rural areas to reduce the dependence on credits from the informal sector.
- The formal sector loan has to expand and it is equally distributed to everyone.

Self-help Groups for Poor

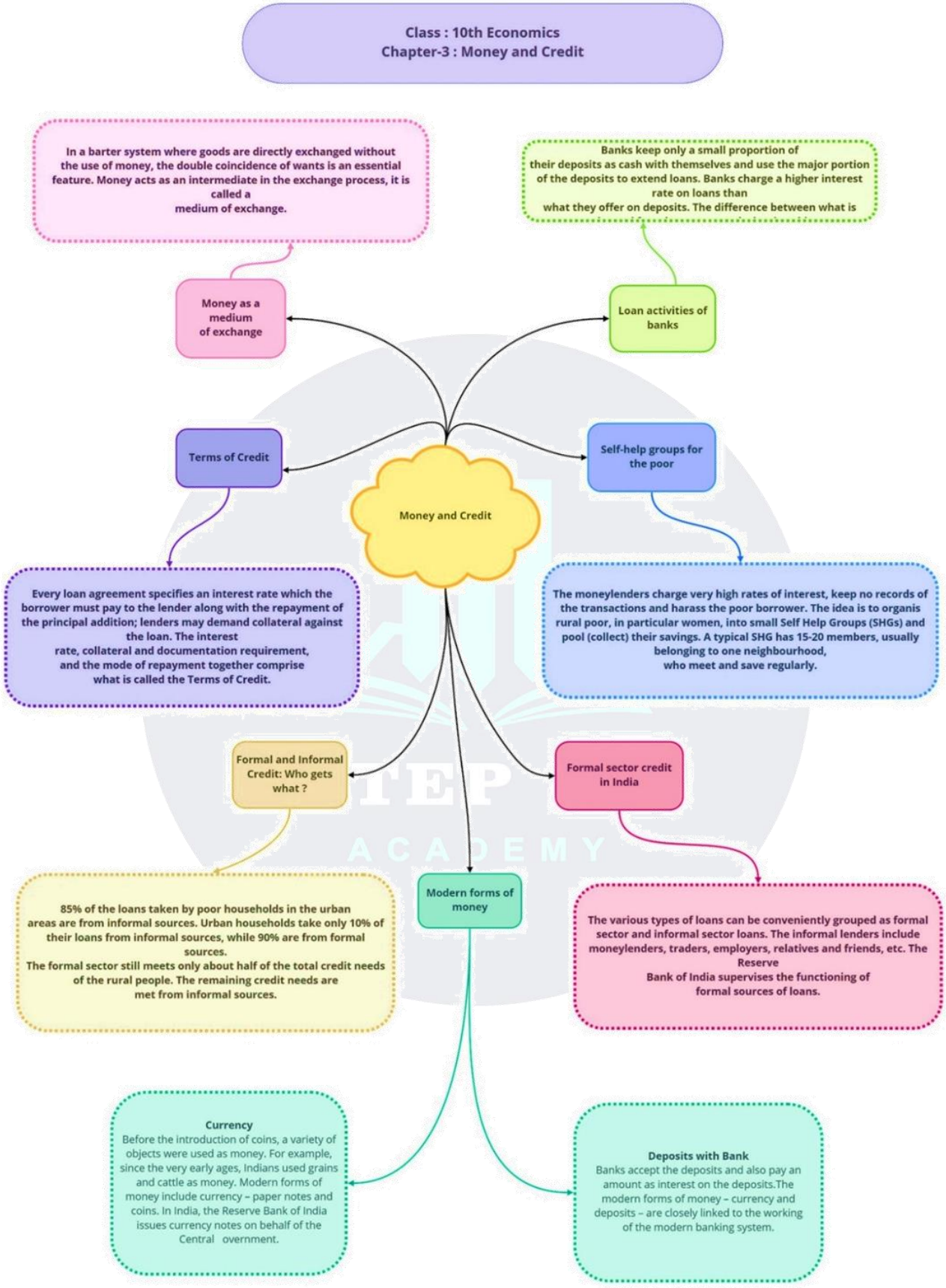
As the bank requires clear documentation and collateral to avail loans, the poor people depend on informal sources

for loans. They are bound to pay high rates of interest for the absence of collateral. Therefore, self-help groups (SHGs) with 15–20 members (particularly women) are formed to pool their savings. A member's savings may vary from Rs 25 to Rs 100 or above based on their ability to save. Members of the group can take small loans at a reasonable rate of interest. This development of a group helps to obtain loans from banks. Thus, SHGs help borrowers to receive loans without collateral at times of necessity such as for releasing mortgaged land, for meeting working capital needs and for acquiring assets (e.g. sewing machine, handloom and cattle).

Advantages of Self-Help Group (SHG):

- It assists borrowers in overcoming the lack of collateral issues.
- SHGs are the foundations of the rural poor's organisation.
- People can receive loans on schedule and at a fair interest rate for a number of objectives.
- It assists women in becoming financially self-sufficient.
- The group's frequent meetings give a forum for discussing and taking action on a variety of social concerns such as health, nutrition, domestic violence, and so on.

STEP UP ACADEMY


Class : 10th Economics
Chapter-3 : Money and Credit
In a barter system where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, the double coincidence of wants is an essential feature. Money acts as an intermediate in the exchange process, it is called a medium of exchange.
Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves and use the major portion of the deposits to extend loans. Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits. The difference between what is
Money as a medium of exchange
Loan activities of banks
Terms of Credit
Self-help groups for the poor
Money and Credit
Every loan agreement specifies an interest rate which the borrower must pay to the lender along with the repayment of the principal addition; lenders may demand collateral against the loan. The interest rate, collateral and documentation requirement, and the mode of repayment together comprise what is called the Terms of Credit.
The moneylenders charge very high rates of interest, keep no records of the transactions and harass the poor borrower. The idea is to organis rural poor, in particular women, into small Self Help Groups (SHGs) and pool (collect) their savings. A typical SHG has 15-20 members, usually belonging to one neighbourhood, who meet and save regularly.
Formal and Informal Credit: Who gets what ?
Formal sector credit in India
85% of the loans taken by poor households in the urban areas are from informal sources. Urban households take only 10% of their loans from informal sources, while 90% are from formal sources.
The formal sector still meets only about half of the total credit needs of the rural people. The remaining credit needs are met from informal sources.
Modern forms of money
The various types of loans can be conveniently grouped as formal sector and informal sector loans. The informal lenders include moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends, etc. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.
Currency
Before the introduction of coins, a variety of objects were used as money. For example, since the very early ages, Indians used grains and cattle as money. Modern forms of money include currency – paper notes and coins. In India, the Reserve Bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central overnment.
Deposits with Bank
Banks accept the deposits and also pay an amount as interest on the deposits.The modern forms of money – currency and deposits – are closely linked to the working of the modern banking system.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Farmers usually take crop loans at the beginning of the season and repay the loan after:
   (a) Sowing
   (b) Tilling
   (c) Harvesting
   (d) All the above
2. Credit sometimes, pushes the borrower to a situation from which recovery is:
   (a) Easy
   (b) Hard
   (c) Very painful
   (d) None of the above
3. Sometimes lenders demand against loan:
   (a) Payment
   (b) Cheque
   (c) Draft
   (d) Collateral
4. Interest rate, security and documentation requirement, and the mode of repayment together comprise what is called the:
   (a) Loan factor
   (b) Credit factor
   (c) Terms of loan
   (d) Terms of credit
5. Loans from banks and cooperatives are called:
   (a) Mixed loans
   (b) Term loans
   (c) Formal loans
   (d) Informal loan
6. Loans from moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends are called:
   (a) Mixed loans
   (b) Term loans
   (c) Formal loans
   (d) Informal loans
7. The RBI monitors the banks are actually maintaining:
   (a) Cash books (b) Cash balance
   (c) Cash register (d) None of the above
8. Most of the informal lenders charge:
   (a) A less interest on loans
   (b) A much higher interest on loans
   (c) Can be both (a) and (b)
   (d) None of the above
9. The rich households are availing cheap credit from formal lenders whereas the poor households:
   (a) Do not get a loan
   (b) Get loan at a much less interest
   (c) Have to pay a heavy price for borrowing
   (d) None of the above
10. Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for:
    (a) The development of urban areas
    (b) The development of rural areas
    (c) The country's development
    (d) All the above
11. About 85 percent of the loans taken by poor households in the urban areas are from:
    (a) Formal sources
    (b) Informal sources
    (c) Mixed sources
    (d) None of the above
12. Most loans from informal lenders carry a very high interest rate and do little to:
    (a) Do anything for the poor
    (b) Pay the loans
    (c) Increase the income of the borrowers
    (d) None of the above
13. It is important that the formal credit is distributed more equally so that:
    (a) The rich can benefit from the cheaper loans
    (b) The poor can benefit from the cheaper loans
    (c) The women can benefit from the cheaper loans
    (d) None of the above
14. The full form of SHG is:
    (a) Station House Guard
    (b) State Housing Guarantee
    (c) Self Happy Groups
    (d) Self Help Groups

15. The SHGs help borrowers overcome the problem of:

(a) Lack of funds (b) Lack of money

(c) Lack of collateral (d) None of the above

Very Short Questions-

1. The currency notes on behalf of the Central Government are issued by whom?
2. Why do banks ask for collateral while giving credit to a borrower?
3. What do banks do with the deposits they accept from customers?
4. What comprises 'terms of credit'?
5. What is the main informal source of credit for rural households in India?
6. Which body supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans?
7. 'Modern currency is without any use of its own'; then why is it accepted as a medium of exchange?
8. What is the meaning of 'barter system'?
9. What is the meaning of 'investment'?
10. What is meant by double coincidence of wants?

Short Questions-

1. What is money? Why is modern money currency accepted as a medium of exchange?
2. What are the modern forms of money? Why is the 'rupee' widely accepted as a medium of exchange? Explain two reasons.

   Or

   Why is modern currency accepted as a medium of exchange without any use of its own? Give reasons?
3. What is collateral? Why do lenders ask for collateral while lending? Explain.
4. "Cheap and affordable credit is essential for poor households both in rural and urban areas." In the light of the above statement explain the social and economic values attached to it.

   Or

   "Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's development." Assess the statement.

   Or

   'Credit has its own unique role for development'. Justify the statement with arguments.
5. How does money solve the problem of double coincidence of wants? Explain with an example.
6. How is money used in everyday life? Explain with examples.
7. Explain with examples, how people are involved with the banks.
8. Why is it necessary for the banks and cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas? Explain.
9. How can money be easily exchanged for goods or services? Give an example to explain.
10. "The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged." Support the statement with arguments.

Long Questions-

1. What is the basic objective of 'Self Help Groups'? How do they work? Describe any four advantages of 'Self Help Groups' for the poor.
2. 'Banks and cooperatives help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans' Which values according to you does this support?
3. What is Credit? Why is cheap and affordable credit important for the country's development? Give four reasons.

   Or

   What is credit? Explain with an example, how credit plays a vital and positive role for development.
4. What are the two categories of sources of credit? Mention four features of each.
5. Which government body supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India? Explain its functioning.
6. What are the various sources of credit in rural areas? Which one of them is the most dominant source of credit and why?
7. "Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation". Examine the statement.
8. How do banks play an important role in the economy of India? Explain.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

b. Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

c. Assertion is true, but reason is false.

d. Both assertion and reason are false.

Assertion (A): Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, deposits with banks) and uses this as a guarantee to a lender until the loan is repaid.

Reason (R): Collateral is given as the lender can sell the collateral to recover the loan amount if the borrower fails to repay the loan.

2. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

b. Both assertion and reason are true, but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

c. Assertion is true, but reason is false.

d. Both assertion and reason are false.

Assertion (A): Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.

Reason (R): The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.

Case study Questions:

1. Read the source given below and answer the following questions:

Swapna, a small farmer, grows groundnut on her three acres of land. She takes a loan from the moneylender to meet the expenses of cultivation, hoping that her harvest would help repay the loan. Midway through the season, the crop is hit by pests and the crop fails. Though Swapna sprays her crops with expensive pesticides, it makes little difference. She is unable to repay the moneylender, and the debt grows over the year into a large amount. Next year, Swapna takes a fresh loan for cultivation. It is a normal crop this year. But the earnings are not enough to cover the old loan. She is caught in debt. She has to sell a part of the land to pay off the debt.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option

i. The passage given above relates to which of the following options:

a. Collateral Credit.

b. Credit recovery is very painful.

c. Failure of Crops.

d. Credit is somewhere beneficial.

ii. According to the passage, Swapna faced which of the following options:

a. The crop is hit by pests and the crop fails.

b. She had to sell a part of the land to pay off the debt.

c. Credit left her worse off.

d. All of these.

iii. It refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment:

a. Terms and Credit.

b. Credit.

c. Depositor.

d. Borrower.

iv. The above passage is an example of:

a. Collateral.

b. Debt Trap.

c. Credit plays a vital and positive role.

d. None of these.

2. Read the source given below and answer the following questions:

Getting a loan from bank is much more difficult than taking loan from informal sources. Absence of collateral security and documentation prevents the poor's from getting bank loans. Self Help Group is a group of people usually belonging to one neighbourhood having same social and economic backgrounds. They meet and save money regularly as per their ability. Members of the group can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. The group charges interest less than moneylenders on these loans. After one or two years, if the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank. Loan is sanctioned in the name of group

and is meant to create self-employment opportunities.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. What is the most essential requirement for taking loan from information services?
   a. Collateral security.
   b. Bribe.
   c. Source from a top officer.
   d. None of these.

ii. SHG is a group of people usually belonging to:
   a. The same caste.
   b. Nearby villages.
   c. One neighbourhood having same social and economic backgrounds.
   d. Different villages.

iii. What facilities do the members have who are in the same group?
   a. They are not given any facility.
   b. They can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs.
   c. They are debarred from the group.
   d. No facility is given to them.

iv. What benefits are there for a SHG that is regular in savings?
   a. The dispute arise after sometimes.
   b. They are rewarded by the government.
   c. They get jobs in government departments.
   d. They are entitled to raise loan from bank in the name of SHG.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (c) Harvesting
2. **Answer**: (c) Very painful
3. **Answer**: (d) Collateral
4. **Answer**: (d) Terms of credit
5. **Answer**: (c) Formal loans
6. **Answer**: (d) Informal loans
7. **Answer**: (b) Cash balance
8. **Answer**: (b) A much higher interest on loans
9. **Answer**: (c) Have to pay a heavy price for borrowing
10. **Answer**: (c) The country's development
11. **Answer**: (b) Informal sources
12. **Answer**: (c) Increase the income of the borrowers
13. **Answer**: (b) The poor can benefit from the cheaper loans
14. **Answer**: (d) Self Help Groups
15. **Answer**: (c) Lack of collateral

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer**: Reserve Bank of India.
2. **Answer**: Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (land, building, vehicle, livestock, land documents, deposits with banks, etc.) which stands as a security against the money borrowed. In case the borrower fails to repay the loan, the lender has the right to sell the asset or collateral.
3. **Answer**: Banks use a major portion of deposits to extend loans to people.
4. **Answer**: Interest rate, collateral and documentation requirement and mode of repayment together comprise terms of credit.
5. **Answer**: Money lenders are the main source of informal credit for rural households.
6. **Answer**: Reserve Bank of India.
7. **Answer**: Modern currency is accepted as a medium of exchange because it is certified for a particular denomination (₹10, ₹100, etc.) of the country by authorities set up by the Central Government. It is issued by the Reserve Bank of India and it can be used for buying any commodity which is on sale. It is authorized by the government of the country.
8. **Answer**: Barter system refers to the system of exchange of goods and services. It is the system by which one commodity is exchanged for another without the use of money. Before money was introduced, people practiced barter system.

   Example: A farmer could buy a dhoti from a weaver or a pair of shoes from a cobbler in exchange of grains he produced.

9. **Answer**: Investment is buying of an asset in the form of a factory, a machine, land and building, etc. (physical assets) or shares (monetary assets) for the purpose of making or sharing profits of the enterprises concerned.

   Common investments are—buying land, factories, machines for faster production, buying small local companies to expand production, cheap labour, skilled engineers, IT personnel, etc.

10. **Answer**: Double coincidence of wants means when both parties have agreed to sell and buy each other's commodities.

Short Answers-

1. Answer: Money is a medium of exchange in transactions. A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.

Modem money currency is accepted as a medium of exchange because

- it is certified for a particular denomination (For example, ₹ 10, ₹ 20, ₹ 100, ₹ 1,000).
- it is issued by the Central Bank of the country.
- it is authorized by the government of the country.

2. Answer: Modem forms of money currency in India include paper notes and coins which are known as Rupees and Paise.

1. It is accepted as a medium of exchange because the currency is authorized by the Government of India.
2. In India, the Reserve bank of India issues currency notes on behalf of the Central Government of India.
3. The law legalizes the use of rupee as a medium of payment that cannot be refused in settling transaction in India.
4. No Individual in India can legally refuse a payment made in rupees.

Therefore, the rupee is widely accepted as a medium of exchange.

3. Answer: Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (land, building, vehicle, livestock, land documents, deposits with banks etc.) which stands as a security against the money borrowed. In case the borrower fails to repay the loan, the lender has the right to sell the asset or collateral to recover the loan money. Most lenders ask for collateral while lending as a security against their own funds.

4. Answer: Credit means: It refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future repayment.

1. Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development. Credit is in great demand for various kinds of economic activities—big or small investments, to set up business, buying cars, houses, etc.
2. In rural areas credit helps in the development of agriculture by providing funds to farmers to buy seeds, fertilizers, expensive pesticides.
3. Manufacturers need credit for buying raw material or to meet ongoing expenditure of production. Credit helps in the purchase of plant, machinery, equipment, etc.
4. Some people may need to borrow for illness, marriages etc.

Thus, cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development.

5. Answer: Money acts as a medium of exchange. Money can be exchanged for any kind of commodity or service of one's choice or need. Before money was introduced, people practised barter system. They exchanged goods with each other.

Example, A farmer could buy a dhoti from a weaver or a pair of shoes from a cobbler in exchange of grains he produced.

The problem with the barter system was that both the parties had to agree to sell and buy each other's product. This is known as double coincidence of wants.

In barter system, where goods are directly exchanged without the use of money, it is essential that there is a double coincidence. Double coincidence is a situation where two persons need or desire to have each other's product.

Money solves this problem as with money we can buy whatever we want and whenever we want, without having to exchange something in return.

6. **Answer:**
   1. Money plays a central role in our daily life. It is used as a medium of exchange to carry out transactions.
   2. Money buys us food, clothing, shelter and other basic necessities of life.
   3. Money provides us social security. It is needed to procure services like transport, education, healthcare, entertainment, recreation, and so on. Money facilitates business and trade and is the basis of the working of an economy.
7. **Answer:**
   1. Banks help people to save their money and keep their money in safe custody of the bank. Banks accept deposits from the public and also help people to earn interest on their deposits.
   2. People can withdraw the money deposited with the bank at the time of their need. As the money can be withdrawn on demand, these are called demand deposits.
   3. Banks also grant loans to people for a variety of purposes. In times of need individuals, business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.
8. **Answer:** Banks and Cooperatives can help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans. This will help people to grow crops, do business, set up small-scale industries or trade in goods and also help indirectly in the country's development. They should do so, so that relatively poor people do not have to depend on informal sources of credit (money-lenders).
9. **Answer:** Money as a medium of exchange for goods and services:

   A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want. Everyone prefers to receive payments in money and exchange the money for things they want.

   For example: A shoemaker wants to sell shoes in the market and buy wheat. The shoe maker will first exchange shoes for money and then exchange the money for wheat. If the shoemaker had to directly exchange shoes for wheat without the use of money, he would have to look for a wheat growing farmer who not only wants to sell wheat but also wants to buy the shoes in exchange. Both the parties have to agree to sell and buy each other's commodities. This process is very difficult, time consuming and unhealthy.
10. **Answer:** The credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged because:
    1. 85% of loans taken by the poor households in the urban areas are from informal sources. There is no organisation that supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector.
    2. Informal lenders charge very high interest on their landed money. They try to charge more and more interest on their loans as there are no boundaries and restrictions.
    3. Higher cost of borrowing means a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers is used to repay the loan.
    4. In certain cases, the high interest rate for borrowing can mean that the amount to be repaid is greater than the income of borrower. This could lead to increasing debt and debt trap; therefore, the credit activities of the informal sector should be discouraged.

Long Answers-

1. **Answer:** The basic objective of 'Self Help Groups' is to organize rural poor, particularly women belonging to one neighbourhood into small Self-Help Groups (15-20 members). These members save regularly and the amount varies from ₹25-100 or more depending upon their ability to save.

   The four advantages of 'Self Help Groups' are as follows:
   1. The members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. The group charges interest on these loans which is still less than what moneylenders charge.
   2. After a year or two, if the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank which is sanctioned in the name of the group to create self-employment opportunities. All important decisions regarding loan, purpose, amount of interest, non-payment of loan is taken by the group members.

For instance, small loans are provided to the members for releasing mortgaged land, meeting working capital needs, for acquiring assets like sewing machines, handlooms, cattle etc.

3. Since non-repayment of loans is dealt with seriously by group members, therefore banks are willing to lend to the poor women when organized in SHGs, even though they have no collateral as such. Thus, the SHGs help women to become financially self reliant.
4. The regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence etc.

2. Answer: Cheap and affordable loans help people to grow crops, do business, set up small scale industries or trade in goods.

This promotes:

1. Self-reliance and financial security and independence of people.
2. Protection of the relatively poor against corrupt moneylenders.
3. Eradication of poverty in general.
4. All this indirectly helps in the country's development.

3. Answer: Credit means loans. It refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future repayment.

1. Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development. Credit is in great demand for various kinds of economic activities—big or small investments, to set up business, buying cars, houses, etc.
2. In rural areas credit helps in the development of agriculture by providing funds to farmers to buy seeds, fertilizers, expensive pesticides.
3. Manufacturers need credit for buying raw material or to meet ongoing expenditure of production. Credit helps in the purchase of plant, machinery, equipment, etc.
4. Some people may need to borrow for illness, marriages etc.

Thus, cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development.

4. Answer: The two sources of credit are formal sources and informal sources:

Formal sources of credit:

1. Banks and cooperative societies fall under the formal sector. One can obtain loans from banks or cooperative societies.
2. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of credit.
3. Bank loans require documentation and collateral (collateral is an asset such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, deposits with the bank, etc.). This is used as a guarantee to the lender until the loan is paid back.
4. Formal sources cannot charge any rate of interest from the borrowers according to their whims.

Informal sources of credit:

- In the informal sector money can be borrowed from a person, friend, relative, moneylender, traders, employers, etc.
- There is no organization that checks or supervises the activities of lenders in the informal sector.
- Loans from informal sources do not require any such collateral.
- They charge a very high rate of interest on loans as they do not require any collateral.

5. Answer: The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.

Functions of Reserve Bank of India.

1. RBI requires commercial banks to maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance.
2. RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, SHGs, etc.
3. RBI issues guidelines for fixing rate of interest on deposits and lending by commercial banks.
4. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rate, etc.

6. **Answer:** Moneylenders are the most dominant amongst sources of credit for rural households. They constitute an informal source of credit. They charge a very high rate of interest on loans as they do not require any collateral. They are the most convenient source of credit in the rural areas.

Other sources of rural credit:

1. Cooperative Societies are another major source of rural credit. They are a source of formal sector credit. Members of a Cooperative pool their resources for helping one another, e.g., Farmers' Cooperatives, Weavers' Cooperatives, etc. They offer cheap credit in rural areas for their members. Once these loans are repaid, another round of loans is offered.
2. Agricultural traders, relatives and friends are other informal sources of rural credit. Some farmers borrow from agricultural traders who supply the farm inputs (such as seeds, fertilizers, pesticides, etc.) on credit at the beginning of the cropping season and repay the loans after the harvest.
3. Commercial banks also give loans to rural households. However, not many rural households borrow from banks as they require proper documentation and collateral.

7. **Answer:** Benefit of deposits to the depositors:

1. Bank accepts the deposits and pays interest to the depositor.
2. Banks help people save their money and keep their money in safe custody of the bank.
3. People can withdraw the money as and when they require.
4. Banks also grant loans to people for a variety of purposes. In times of need, individuals, business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.

Benefit of deposits to the Nation:

1. Banks use the major proportion of the deposit to extend loans.
2. There is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities. In times of need, business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.
3. Banks mediate between those who have surplus funds and those who are in need of these funds. Thus, it helps in the economic development of the Nation.

8. **Answer:**

1. Banks help people to save their money and keep their money in safe custody. To ensure safety of their money, people deposit their money with banks. Banks accept deposits and pay interest on deposits. People have the provision to withdraw their money as and when they require.
2. Banks also grant loans to people for a variety of purposes. In times of need individuals, business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.
3. Credit provided by banks is crucial for the country's growth and economic development. Credit is needed for all kinds of economic activities, to set up business, buy cars, houses, etc.
4. Banks also help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans. This can help people to grow crops, do business, set up small-scale industries or trade in goods and also help indirectly in the country's development. They should do so, so that relatively poor people do not have to depend on informal sources of credit (money-lenders).

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
2. (a) Both assertion and reason are true, and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

Case Study Answer:

(i)	(a)	Collateral Credit.
(ii)	(d)	All of these.
(iii)	(a)	Terms and Credit.
(iv)	(b)	Debt Trap.

1. H
2. U

Globalisation and The Indian Economy 4

Production across Countries

Over the years, there has been rapid transformation in terms of explosion of brands for many goods in the Indian market. India used to export raw materials and food products, and import some finished goods. Trade was the main connecting link with different nations.

Multinational Corporations

In multinational corporations (MNCs), the production is owned and controlled in more than one nation. MNCs establish their factories and premises for production in different regions where they acquire cheap labour and resources. This leads to low cost of production and higher profit for goods produced globally.

Interlinking Production

- Investment made by MNCs for buying assets such as land, building and other materials is called foreign investment.



- They produce goods jointly with local companies and their benefit of joint production is twofold- additional investment for new machines and advanced technology to increase the efficiency of production.
- Their wealth is more than the entire budgets of a developing country.
- They have tremendous power to determine the price, quality, quantity and delivery of goods produced by small producers in distant places.

MNCs are spreading their production and interacting with local producers in numerous nations throughout the world in a variety of methods, as listed below:

- **Joint Production:** MNCs partner with an existing local company in joint production or partnership. The investment enables local producers to obtain new and improved assets as well as cutting-edge technologies.
- **Acquisition of Local Companies:** MNCs purchase large established local enterprises with vast networks in order to grow their production.
- **Controlled Production:** MNCs source materials and make orders with local companies who create goods, resulting in controlled production. The MNC's brand name is used to market the products.

Foreign Trade and Integration of Markets

Foreign trade creates an opportunity for producers not only to sell goods in the local market but also to compete in the global market. Buyers can import goods of their own choice from the global market. Thus, it connects markets of different nations.

Foreign trade provides opportunities for both producers and buyers to reach beyond the markets of their own countries. Goods travel from one country to another. Competition among producers of various countries as well as buyers prevails. Thus, foreign trade leads to integration of markets across countries. For example, during Diwali season, buyers in India have the option of choosing between Indian and Chinese decorative lights and bulbs. So this provides an opportunity to expand business.

Globalisation

Globalisation is a process of integration among the people of different countries, and it is driven by trade and investment and aided by technology.

Globalisation is defined as the integration between countries through foreign trade and foreign investments by multinational corporations (MNCs). Increase in foreign trade, migration of people, spread of technology, capital flow, private and public investments from foreign countries all together contribute to globalisation. **Globalisation has been facilitated by several factors like rapid improvements in technology, liberalisation of trade and investment policies and, pressures from international organisations such as the WTO.**

Factors that have Enabled Globalisation

Technology

Advancement in transport, information and communication technology has enabled the globalisation process. A container for the transport of goods has increased the volume of goods transported by airlines. Telecommunication facilitates communication with one another around the world. The amazing world of the Internet allows obtaining and sharing information, sending mail and speaking to others across the world at a lower cost.



Liberalisation of Foreign Trade

After independence the Indian Government protected domestic producers by putting barriers on foreign trade and investment. A trade barrier is a set of restrictions imposed on foreign trade, such as tax on imports. Liberalisation with its new policies came into existence in India in 1991. **Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is what is known as Liberalisation.** It removed barriers set by the Government to import and export goods. The Government felt that the competition would improve the quality of products and it was supported by powerful international organisations. Thus, Indian producers competed with producers in the global market.

World Trade Organization

World Trade Organization (WTO) is an organisation of 160 members (2014) which aims to liberalise international trade. At the international level, WTO has pressured developing countries to liberalise trade and investment.

- World Trade Organisation (WTO) is an international rganisation whose aim is to liberalise international trade.

- Started at the initiative of the developed countries, WTO establishes rules regarding international trade, and sees that these rules are obeyed.
- Nearly 160 countries of the world are currently members of the WTO (as on June 2014).
- Though WTO is supposed to allow free trade for all, in practice, it is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers.
- On the other hand, WTO rules have forced the developing countries to remove trade barriers.

Impact of Globalisation in India

Positive impact:

- Globalization has resulted in more choices for the consumers who now get better quality and at lower prices several products.
- This has improved the standard of living of people, particularly living in urban areas.
- MNCs have increased their investments in developing countries like India in industries such as cell-phones, automobiles, electronics, soft drinks, etc. As a result of it new jobs have been created in developing countries.
- Some local companies that supply raw materials to MNCs have also benefited.
- Some local companies in countries like India have been able to invest in newer technology and production methods. They are successful in raising their production standards.
- Globalisation has enabled some large companies such as Tata Motors, Infosys to emerge as multi-national companies.
- Companies providing services particularly in the field of information and communica-tion technologies have also benefited by globalisation. Similar is the case in services like data entry, accounting, administrative tasks and engineering.

Negative impact:

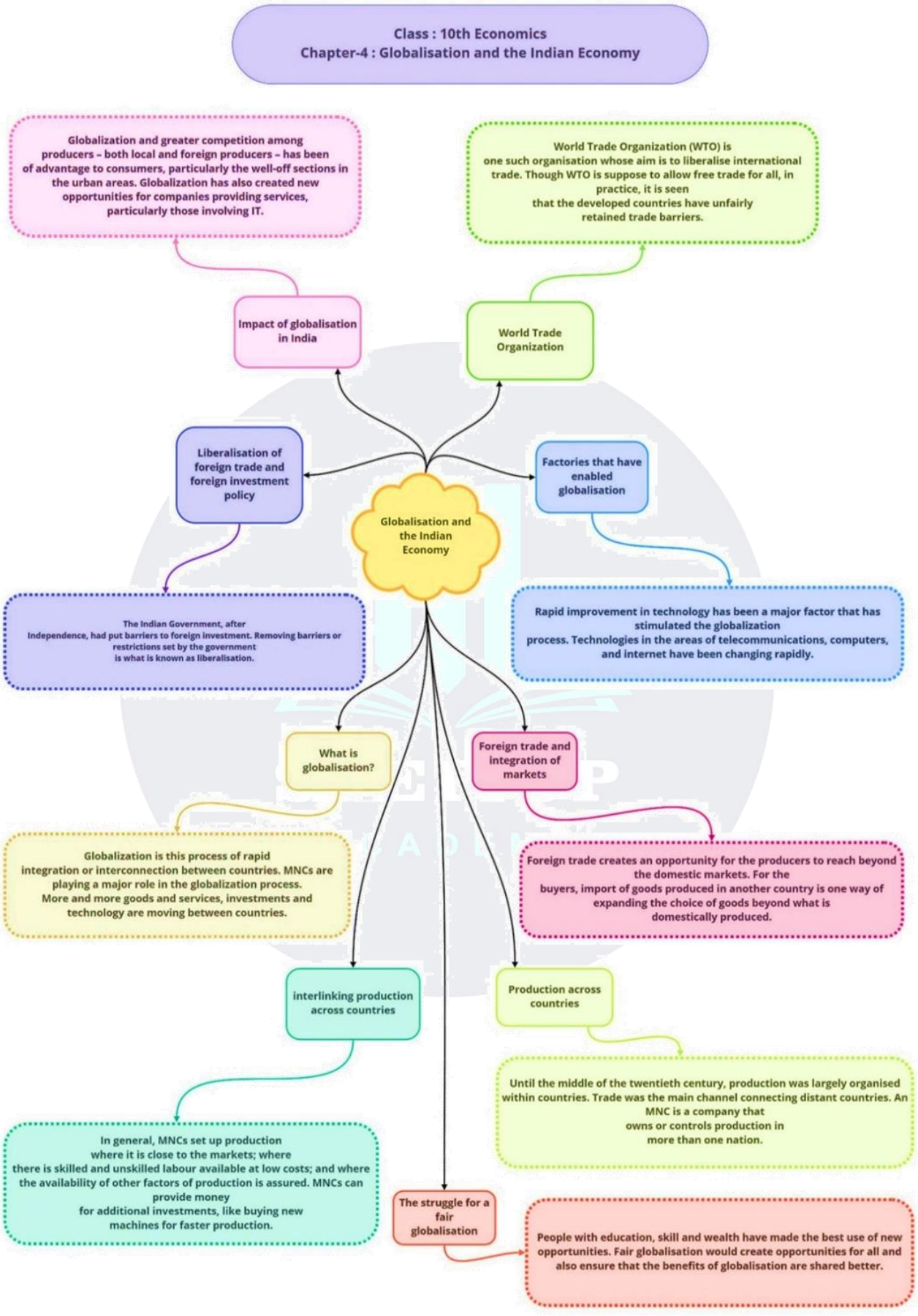
The impact of globalisation has been harmful too as mentioned below:

- Creation of special economic zones has disrupted the lives of people who are displaced such as tribals. Sometimes to produce more electricity dams are constructed and their land is submerged and the people are left without any job.
- Flexibility in labour laws: Flexibility in labour laws is allowed by the government to attract foreign investment. This has resulted in worsening the condition of workers because they are appointed on a temporary basis to avoid payment of provident fund and other facilities. No overtime is paid for extra hours of work. The workers are paid low wages.
- Effect on small producers: Globalisation has hit the small producers because they are unable to compete with MNCs or the big producers or manufacturers. Several units have been shut down rendering many workers jobless. In India, small industries which employ about 20 million workers have been hit adversely.
- From above description, it is clear that the impact of globalisation has not been uniform. It has positive as well as a negative impact.

Struggle for Fair Globalisation

The Government needs to focus on policies which will protect the interest of all the people in the country. Fair globalisation would create better opportunities for all, and the benefits of globalisation are equally shared by everyone.

- It has the potential to help small producers boost their output.
- It can ensure that labour rules are followed and that workers' rights are protected.
- The government can deploy trade and investment obstacles if required.
- It can negotiate for "fairer rules" in the WTO.
- It can also band together with other developing countries with similar interests to combat the WTO's hegemony of developed countries.


Class : 10th Economics
Chapter-4 : Globalisation and the Indian Economy
Globalisation and the Indian Economy
Impact of globalisation in India
Globalization and greater competition among producers – both local and foreign producers – has been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off sections in the urban areas. Globalization has also created new opportunities for companies providing services, particularly those involving IT.
World Trade Organization
World Trade Organization (WTO) is one such organisation whose aim is to liberalise international trade. Though WTO is suppose to allow free trade for all, in practice, it is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers.
Liberalisation of foreign trade and foreign investment policy
The Indian Government, after Independence, had put barriers to foreign investment. Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is what is known as liberalisation.
Factories that have enabled globalisation
Rapid improvement in technology has been a major factor that has stimulated the globalization process. Technologies in the areas of telecommunications, computers, and internet have been changing rapidly.
What is globalisation?
Globalization is this process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries. MNCs are playing a major role in the globalization process. More and more goods and services, investments and technology are moving between countries.
Foreign trade and integration of markets
Foreign trade creates an opportunity for the producers to reach beyond the domestic markets. For the buyers, import of goods produced in another country is one way of expanding the choice of goods beyond what is domestically produced.
interlinking production across countries
In general, MNCs set up production where it is close to the markets; where there is skilled and unskilled labour available at low costs; and where the availability of other factors of production is assured. MNCs can provide money for additional investments, like buying new machines for faster production.
Production across countries
Until the middle of the twentieth century, production was largely organised within countries. Trade was the main channel connecting distant countries. An MNC is a company that owns or controls production in more than one nation.
The struggle for a fair globalisation
People with education, skill and wealth have made the best use of new opportunities. Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are shared better.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Foreign trade results in connecting the markets or integration of markets:
   (a) In same countries
   (b) In different countries
   (c) In friendly countries
   (d) None of the above
2. Foreign investments by MNCs in many countries have:
   (a) been rising
   (b) been decreasing
   (c) remained the same
   (d) none of the above
3. A large part of the foreign trade is also controlled by:
   (a) The government
   (b) By MNCs
   (c) The people
   (d) None of the above
4. Activities of most MNCs involve:
   (a) goods and raw materials
   (b) substantial goods and trade
   (c) substantial trade in goods and services
   (d) none of the above
5. MNCs are playing a major role in:
   (a) Production of goods
   (b) Increasing investment
   (c) Providing employment
   (d) The globalisation process
6. More regions of the world are in closer contact with each other:
   (a) Then a few years back
   (b) Then a few days back
   (c) Then a few centuries back
   (d) Then a few decades back
7. Tele communication facilities have been facilitated by:
   (a) Remote connection devices
   (b) Remote communication devices
   (c) Satellite communication devices
   (d) None of the above
8. Information and communication technology has played a major role in spreading out:
   (a) Production of goods across countries
   (b) Production of raw materials across countries
   (c) Production of services across countries
   (d) None of the above
9. Tax on imports is an example of:
   (a) Tax barrier
   (b) Export barrier
   (c) Import barrier
   (d) Trade barrier
10. The Indian government, after independence, had put barriers to:
    (a) MNCs
    (b) Import and export
    (c) Foreign trade and foreign investment
    (d) None of the above
11. Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is known as:
    (a) Globalisation
    (b) Liberalisation
    (c) Free trade
    (d) All the above
12. The number of countries that are currently members of the WTO are:
    (a) 119
    (b) 129
    (c) 139
    (d) 149
13. WTO rules have forced the developing countries to remove:
    (a) Export
    (b) Import
    (c) Trade
    (d) Trade barriers
14. Among producers and workers the impact of globalisation has:
    (a) Been uniform
    (b) Been mixed
    (c) Not been uniform
    (d) None of the above

15. Fair globalisation would create opportunities for all, and also ensure that the benefits of globalisation are:
    (a) Shared between the rich
    (b) Shared between the poor
    (c) Shared between the rich and poor
    (d) Shared better

Very Short Questions-

1. What are Multi-National Corporations (MNCs)?
2. Explain 'what is investment? Give a few examples of investment.
3. In which year did the government decide to remove barriers on foreign trade and investment in India?
4. Why is 'tax' on imports known as a trade barrier?
5. Which organization lays stress on liberalization of foreign trade and foreign investment?
6. Give one characteristic feature of a 'Special Economic Zone'?
7. Name an important barrier on foreign trade.
8. What is meant by "fair globalization'?
9. What do you understand by the term 'Foreign Direct Investment'?
10. Why had the Indian Government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence? State any one reason.

Short Questions-

1. Explain the role of government to make globalization fair.
2. Explain any three advantages of globalization.
3. What is a trade barrier? Why did the Indian Government put up trade barriers after Independence? Explain.
4. What would happen if Government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys? Explain any three points.
5. How do Multinational Companies manage to keep the cost of production of their goods low? Explain with examples.

   Or

   Explain the conditions that determine MNCs setting up production in other countries?
6. How do we participate in the market as producers and consumers? Explain with three examples.
7. How are local companies benefitted by collaborating with multinational companies? Explain with examples.
8. How has foreign trade been integrating markets of different countries in the world? Explain with examples.

   Or

   "Foreign trade integrates the markets in different countries." Support the statement with arguments.
9. Define the term liberalization. Explain the reasons why the Indian Government started the policy of liberalization in 1991.

   Or

   'Barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent in India since 1991'. Justify the statement.
10. How has information and communication technology stimulated globalisation process? Explain with examples.

Long Questions-

1. Give the meaning of WTO? What is the major aim of WTO? Mention any two shortcomings of WTO?
2. What is globalization? Explain with three examples how top Indian companies have benefitted from globalization.
3. What is an MNC? Give two examples of Indian companies that have emerged as MNCs. What are the harmful effects of MNCs to a host country? Give three examples.
4. How has globalization been advantageous to both the producers as well as the consumers in India? Explain.
5. How has globalization benefitted India? Explain with five examples.
6. How is the Government of India trying to attract more foreign investment? Explain with examples.
7. What is the meaning of SEZ? Mention any three features of SEZ.
8. "Advancement of international trade of a country is an index of its economic prosperity." Justify the statement with five arguments.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put

forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation of A.

b. Both A and R are true, But R is not the correct explanation of A.

c. A is true, R is false.

d. A is false, R is true

Assertion (A): Ford Motors is an MNC.

Reason (R): It is one of the world's largest automobile manufacturers with production spread over 26 countries.

2. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation of A.

b. Both A and R are true, But R is not the correct explanation of A.

c. A is true, R is false.

d. A is false, R is true

Assertion (A): MNCs can exert a strong influence on product at distant locations

Reason (R): MNCs set up partnership with local companies, use local companies for supplies, compete with local companies or buy them.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the source given below and answer the following questions:

In recent years, the central and state governments in India are taking special steps to attract foreign companies to invest in India. Industrial zones, are called Special Economic Zones (SEZs), are being set up. SEZs are to have world class facilities: electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities. Companies who set up production units in the SEZs do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years. Government has also allowed flexibility in the labour laws to attract foreign investment. Companies in the organised sector have to obey certain rules that aim to protect the workers' rights. In the recent years, the government has allowed companies to ignore many of these. Instead of hiring workers on a regular basis, companies hire workers 'flexibly' for short periods when there is intense pressure of work. This is done to reduce the cost of labour for the company. However, still not satisfied, foreign companies are demanding more flexibility in labour laws.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. What do you understand by the term 'Special Economic Zones'?

a. Industrial zones.

b. Banking zone.

c. Farming zone.

d. Forest Conservation zone.

ii. Which of the following steps have been taken by the government to attract foreign companies?

a. Providing food, shelter and cloth.

b. Judicial facilities.

c. Companies do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years. Government has also allowed flexibility in the labour laws to attract foreign investment.

d. All of these.

iii. Which facilities are provided in Special Economic Zones?

a. Free raw materials for industries.

b. Voting facility.

c. SEZs are to have world class facilities: electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities.

d. Zero taxes in 10 years.

iv. Which of the following are/ is the demands of foreign companies?

a. Free electricity

b. Free transport.

c. Less flexibility in labour laws.

d. Foreign companies are demanding more flexibility in labour laws.

2. Read the source given below and answer the following questions:

Ever since humans appeared on the earth, they have used different means of communication.

But, the pace of change, has been rapid in modern times. Long-distance communication is far easier without the physical movement of the communicator or receiver. Personal communication and mass communication including television, radio, press, films, etc. are the major means of communication in the country.

Mass communication provides entertainment and creates awareness among people about various national programmes and policies. It includes radio, television, newspapers, magazines, books and films. All India Radio (Akashwani) broadcasts a variety of programmes in national, regional and local languages for various categories of people, spread over different parts of the country. Doordarshan, the national television channel of India, is one of the largest terrestrial networks in the world. It broadcasts a variety of programmes from entertainment, educational to sports, etc. for people of different age groups.

India publishes a large number of newspapers and periodicals annually. They are of different types depending upon their periodicity. Newspapers are published in about 100 languages and dialects. India is the largest producer of feature films in the world. It produces short films, video feature films and video short films. The Central Board of Film Certification is the authority to certify both Indian and foreign films.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. What does AIR stand for?
   a. All India Radio.
   b. American Indian Radio.
   c. Asian Indo Radio.
   d. None of these.

ii. Which is the authority to certify both Indian and foreign films?
   a. Censorship Board.
   b. Central Board of Film Certification.
   c. Central Bureau of Certification.
   d. Central Board.

iii. Following are the features of mass communication, except:
   a. Mass communication includes television, radio, press, films, etc.
   b. It is one of the major means of communication in the country.
   c. It provides entertainment as well as creates awareness among the masses.
   d. It is a communication between person to person.

iv. Which is the largest terrestrial networks in the world?
   a. BBC.
   b. CNN.
   c. Doordarshan.
   d. Reuters.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (b) In different countries
2. **Answer**: (a) been rising
3. **Answer**: (b) By MNCs
4. **Answer**: (c) substantial trade in goods and services
5. **Answer**: (d) The globalisation process
6. **Answer**: (d) Than a few decades back
7. **Answer**: (c) Satellite communication devices
8. **Answer**: (c) Production of services across countries
9. **Answer**: (d) Trade barrier
10. **Answer**: (d) None of the above
11. **Answer**: (b) Liberalisation
12. **Answer**: (d) 149
13. **Answer**: (d) Trade barriers
14. **Answer**: (c) Not been uniform
15. **Answer**: (d) Shared better

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** A Multi-National Corporation (MNC) is a company that owns or controls production in more than one nation. The goods and services are

produced globally. The production process is divided into small parts and spread out across the globe.

2. **Answer:** Investment is buying of an asset in the form of a factory, a machine, land and building, etc. (Physical assets) or shares (monetary assets) for the purpose of making or sharing profits of the enterprises concerned.

   Common investments are: buying land, factories, machines for faster production, buying small local companies to expand production, cheap labour, skilled engineers, IT personnel, etc.

3. **Answer:** 1991

4. **Answer:** Tax on imports is known as a trade barrier because it increases the price of imported commodities. It is called a barrier because some restriction has been set up.

5. **Answer:** World Trade Organization (W.T.O).

6. **Answer:** Special Economic Zones or SEZs are industrial zones set up by the government having word class facilities such as electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities. Companies who set up production units in SEZs are exempted from taxes for an initial period of five years.

7. **Answer:** Tax on imports is an important barrier on foreign trade.

8. **Answer:** Fair globalization means globalization that would create opportunities for all and ensure that its benefits are shared better.

9. **Answer:** FDI is the investment of foreign capital in the economic and productive activities of a country by foreign companies or MNCs with the aim of expanding capacity and production to earn profits.

10. **Answer:** The Indian government after independence had put barriers to foreign trade and investment.

    - This was done to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.
    - To protect the Indian economy from foreign infiltration in industries affecting the economic growth of the country as planned.

Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** The government can play a major role in making fair globalization possible:

   Fair globalization would create opportunities for all, and also ensure that the benefits of globalization are shared better. Government policies must protect the interests not only of the rich and the powerful, but also of all the people in the country.

   1. Government should ensure that labour laws are implemented and workers' rights are protected.
   2. Government should support small producers to improve their performance till the time they become strong enough to compete with foreign competition.
   3. If necessary, government should use trade and investment barriers.
   4. It can negotiate with WTO for fairer rules.
   5. It can also align with other developing countries with similar interests to fight against the domination of developed countries in the WTO.

2. **Answer:** Globalization means integrating the economy of the country with the world economy.

   1. Under this process, goods and services along with capital, resources and technology can move freely from one nation to another.
   2. It has increased the movement of people between countries. People usually move from one country to another in search of better income, better jobs or better education. Earlier the movement of people between countries was less due to various restrictions.
   3. Rapid improvement in technology has been one major factor that has stimulated the globalization process. For instance, advancement in transportation technology has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs. Container services have led to huge reduction in port handling costs. The cost of air transport has fallen which has enabled much greater volumes of goods being transported by airlines.
   4. Developments in information and communication technology (IT in short) has brought a revolution in telecommunications. It has made e-banking, e-commerce, e-learning, e-mail and e-governance a reality.

5. Globalization has resulted in greater competition among producers and has been of advantage to consumers, particularly the well-off section. Rich people now enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products.

3. **Answer:** The restrictions set by the Government to regulate foreign trade are called trade barriers. Tax on imports is an example of a trade barrier.

The Indian Government had put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence to protect the domestic producers from foreign competition. Imports at that stage would not have allowed local industries to come up. India allowed imports of only essential items such as machinery, fertilizers, petroleum, etc.

4. **Answer:** If Government of India puts heavy tax on import of Chinese toys:

1. The cost of Chinese toys will increase.
2. Less Chinese toys would come in the Indian market.
3. Indian buyers would have lesser choice in the market and toys will become more expensive.
4. For Indian toy makers this would provide an opportunity to expand business as there will be less competition in the market.

5. **Answer:**

1. MNCs set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resources. Example, Countries like China, Bangladesh and India. They also provide with the advantage of cheap manufacturing locations.
2. MNCs also need close-by markets for their manufacturing goods. Mexico and Eastern Europe are useful for their closeness to the markets in the US and Europe.
3. Besides these, MNCs also require skilled engineers and IT personnel and a large number of English-speaking people who are able to provide customer care services (India possibly tops in this area).
4. All these factors help MNCs in saving costs of production by 50-60%.

6. **Answer:** We participate in the market both as producers and consumers.

1. As producers of goods and services we could be working in any of the sectors like agriculture, industry or services.

   For example, a farmer who sells wheat to a flour mill. The man at the mill grinds the wheat and sells the flour to a biscuit company. The biscuit company uses flour, sugar and oil to make packets of biscuits. It sells the biscuits in the market to the consumer. Biscuits are the final goods, i.e., the goods that reach the consumer and people as consumers buy.
2. We as producers in the market could be made to sell the produce to the moneylender at a low rate in return for a timely loan.

   For example, in case of small farmers; the failure of crops often makes loan repayment impossible. They have to sell a part of their land to repay the loans.
3. As consumers we participate in the market when we purchase goods and services that we need. As individual consumers we often find ourselves in a weak position. Whenever there is a complaint regarding a good or service that had been bought, the seller tries to shift all the responsibility on to the buyer.

   For example, a long battle had to be fought with court cases to make cigarette manufacturing companies accept that their product could cause cancer.

7. **Answer:** When local companies enter into a joint venture with MNCs:

1. First, the MNCs provide money for additional investments for faster production.
2. Second, MNCs bring with them the latest technology for enhancing and improving the production.
3. Some Indian companies have gained from successful collaborations with foreign companies.

   Globalization has enabled some companies to emerge as multinationals.
4. Parakh Foods was a small company which has been bought over by a large American Company — Cargill Foods. Parakh foods had built a large marketing network in various parts of India as a well- reputed brand.

Parakh Foods had four oil refineries whose control has now shifted to Cargill. Cargill is now the largest manufacturer of edible oil in India making five million pouches daily.

8. Answer:

(i) Foreign trade creates opportunities for producers to reach beyond domestic markets. Producers can compete in markets located in other countries of the world. Similarly, for the buyers, import of goods from another country leads to expanding choice of goods beyond what is domestically produced. Buyers can thus choose from a wide range of products to suit their individual tastes.

(ii) With the opening of trade, goods travel from one market to another. Choice of goods in the market rises. Prices of similar goods in two markets tend to become equal, and producers in the two countries now closely compete against each other even though they are separated by thousands of miles. Foreign trade, thus, results in connecting the markets or integration of markets in different countries.

For example, there are endless number of footwear brands available in the Indian market. A consumer who is aware of international trends can choose between a local brand like Bata, Lakhani and international brands like Adidas, Nike, Reebok etc.

9. Answer: Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government on foreign trade and foreign investment is what is known as liberalization. The Indian Government removed these barriers because:

1. Liberalization of trade and investment policies allows Indian producers to compete with producers around the globe leading to an improvement in performance and quality of products.
2. After the barriers on foreign trade and foreign investment were removed to a large extent, goods could be imported and exported easily and also foreign companies could set up factories and offices in India. This has led to an increase in trade with different countries.
3. Businesses are allowed to make decisions freely about what they wish to import or export due to the liberal policies of the government.
4. Doors of investment opened up for MNCs. They have been investing large sums of money in India and have been seeking to earn large profits.

10. Answer: Information and communication technology has helped globalisation in the following ways:

1. Rapid improvement in technology has contributed greatly towards globalisation. Advanced technology in transport systems has helped in the delivery of goods faster across long distances at lower costs.
2. Development in information and communication technology has also helped a great deal. Telecommunication facilities — telegraph, telephone, mobile phones, fax are used to contact one another quickly around the world, access information instantly and communicate from remote areas. This is possible due to satellite communication devices. Teleconferences help in saving frequent long trips across the globe.
3. Information technology has also played an important role in spreading out production of services across countries. Orders are placed through internet, designing is done on computers, even payment of money from one bank to another can be done through e-banking through internet. Internet also allows us to send instant electronic mail (e-mail) and talk (voice-mail) across the world at negligible cost.

Long Answers-

1. Answer: WTO (World Trade Organization). WTO believes that there should not be any barriers between trade of different countries. Trade between countries should be free.

Aims of WTO:

- To liberalize international trade.
- To establish rules regarding international trade.

Two shortcomings of WTO:

1. Though WTO is supposed to allow free trade

for all, in practice, it is seen that the developed countries have unfairly retained trade barriers and continued to provide protection to their producers. For example, farmers in the US receive huge sums of money from the government and as a result can sell the farm products at abnormally low prices in other countries, adversely affecting farmers in those countries.

2. On the other hand WTO rules have forced the developing countries to remove trade barriers.

2. Answer: Globalization is the process of rapid integration or interconnection among countries. It is the integration between countries through foreign trade and foreign investments by multinational corporations. It means the coming together of various economies of the world to form a global economy.

The top Indian companies have benefitted from the increased competition and globalization.

1. They have invested in new technology and production methods and raised their production standards.
2. Some have gained from successful collaborations with foreign companies.
3. Moreover, globalization has enabled some large Indian companies to emerge as multinationals themselves. For example, Tata Motors, Infosys, Ranbaxy, Asian Paints, Sundaram Fasteners etc.

3. Answer: A Multi-National Corporation (MNC) is a company that owns or controls production in more than one nation. The goods and services are produced globally. The production process is divided into small parts and spread out across the globe.

Tata Motors (automobiles), Infosys (IT), Ranbaxy (medicines), Asian Paints (paints), Sundaram Fasteners (nuts and bolts), etc. are some of the Indian companies which are spreading their operations worldwide as MNCs.

Harmful effects of MNCs to a host country:

1. Small producers compete or perish. MNCs have posed major challenges for a large number of small producers and workers. The small manufacturers have been hit hard due to competition. Several of the units have shut down rendering many workers jobless. Batteries, taps, tyres, dairy-products, vegetable oil are some of the industries that are badly affected due to stiff competition from MNCs.
2. Uncertain employment. In order to maximize the profit MNCs look for a location with minimum labour costs. Faced with competition, most employers these days prefer to employ workers on temporary basis so that they do not have to pay workers for the whole year. This has changed the lives of workers and their jobs are no longer secure.
3. The Condition of employment. Workers also have to put in very long working hours and work night shifts on a regular basis during the peak season. Wages are low and workers are forced to work overtime to make both ends meet. The workers are denied their fair share of benefits and no longer get the protection that they enjoyed earlier, for example, the Indian garment export industry often deny their workers their fair share of benefits.

4. Answer: To Producers. Several of the top Indian Companies have been able to benefit from the increased competition.

- They have invested in newer technology and production methods and thereby raised their production standards.
- They have gained from successful collaborations with foreign companies.
- Globalization helped in the development of IT sector.
- Good quality products are being produced at lower prices.

  To Consumers. There is greater choice before consumers who can enjoy improved quality and lower prices for several products.
- People today, enjoy much higher standards of living than was possible earlier.

5. Answer: Globalization has benefitted India in the following ways:

- People with education, skill and wealth have benefitted by globalization.
- Greater competition among producers (both

local and foreign) has been advantageous to consumers, particularly the well-off section. Rich people enjoy improved quality at lower prices for several products and enjoy a higher standard of living.

- MNCs have increased their investments in India over the past 20 years in industries such as cell phones, automobiles, electronics, soft drinks, fast food and services such as banking.
- New jobs have been created in all these industries and services.
- Top Indian companies have benefitted from the increased competition. They have invested in newer technology and production methods.
- Some Indian companies have gained from successful collaborations with foreign companies. Globalization has enabled some companies to emerge as multinationals.

6. **Answer:** In order to attract foreign investment, the Government has taken the following steps:
   1. All the barriers and restrictions on foreign trade and investment have been removed to a large extent.
   2. Liberalization of investment policies has allowed Indian producers to compete with the producers around the globe.
   3. Allowing privatization of many public sector industries by the government.
   4. Allowing businesses to make decisions freely about what they wish to import or export.
   5. The government has allowed flexibility in labour laws to attract foreign investment for the benefit of companies.

7. **Answer:** SEZ or Special Economic Zones are industrial zones set up by the Central and State Governments with world class facilities in electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities. Three features of SEZ:
   1. The companies who set up production units in the SEZs do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years.
   2. Government has also allowed flexibility in the labour laws to attract foreign investment. This is done to reduce the cost of labour for the company.
   3. These are being set up to attract foreign companies to invest in India.

8. **Answer:** "Advancement of international trade of a country is an index to its economic prosperity".
   1. As no country is self-sufficient in all resources, it cannot survive without international trade.
   2. If the balance of international trade is favourable, a country will be able to earn more foreign exchange.
   3. International trade encourages a country to develop secondary and tertiary sectors for exporting goods which can fetch more foreign exchange.
   4. A country's economic prosperity can be gauged by the health of its international trade.
   5. A country can earn large amounts of foreign exchange through international trade.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation of A.
2. (a) Both A and R are true, R is the correct explanation of A.

Case study Answer:

1.

(i)	(a)	Industrial zones.
(ii)	(c)	Companies do not have to pay taxes for an initial period of five years. Government has also allowed flexibility in the labour laws to attract foreign investment.
(iii)	(c)	SEZs are to have world class facilities: electricity, water, roads, transport, storage, recreational and educational facilities.
(iv)	(d)	Foreign companies are demanding more flexibility in labour laws.

2.

(i)	(a)	All India Radio.
(ii)	(b)	Central Board of Film Certification.
(iii)	(d)	It is a communication between person to person.
(iv)	(d)	Reuters.

GEOGRAPHY

Resources and Development 1

Natural Resources and their Classification

Resources are an indispensable part of human development. Everything which is available in our environment and which can be technologically and economically exploited for satisfying human wants are known as resources.

Classification of Resources



Resources can be classified on the basis of

Origin	Biotic and abiotic	**Biotic resources:** These resources are obtained from nature and have life. Examples: Humans, forests, fisheries, livestock **Abiotic resources:** These resources are obtained from nature but are made of non-living things. Examples: Metals, air, soil
Exhaustibility	Renewable and non-renewable	**Renewable resources:** These resources are available in plenty in nature and can be replenished. Examples: Sunlight, wind, water **Non-renewable resources:** These resources are present in nature and are formed after millions of years. They can be exhausted or depleted after a particular period of time. Examples: Coal, petroleum
Ownership	Individual, community owned national and international resources	**Individual resources** are owned privately by a person such as farmlands and houses. Community resources are owned by a community and are accessible to the members of that community such as grazing lands and burial grounds. **National resources** belong to a nation. Examples: Water resources, forests, minerals **International resources** are regulated by international laws and regulations. Example: Oceanic resources beyond 200 nautical miles of the Exclusive Economic Zone

Status of Development	Potential resources, developed resources, stock and reserves	**Potential resources:** These resources are available in the region but are not fully used such as wind energy and solar energy. **Developed resources:** These resources are surveyed and their quantity and quality are known. Examples: Coal mines, oil wells **Stock:** These resources can satisfy human needs but humans do not have the required technology to access and harness them. Examples: Geothermal power, hydrogen fuel **Reserves:** The use of such resources has not been fully started and they are used only up to a limited extent. Example: Dams

Resources are often centered in a few hands. This has led to a wide gap between the rich and the poor. Indiscriminate use of resources has resulted in its depletion and global ecological crises.

Development of Resources

Resources are vital for human survival as well as for maintaining the quality of life. It was believed that resources are free gifts of nature. Human beings used them indiscriminately and this has led to the following major problems:

- Depletion of resources for satisfying the greed of few individuals.
- Accumulation of resources in few hands, which, in turn, divided the society into two segments i.e. haves and have nots or rich and poor.
- Indiscriminate exploitation of resources has led to global ecological crises such as, global warming, ozone layer depletion, environmental pollution and land degradation.

Sustainable Development

Sustainable economic development means 'development should take place without damaging the environment, and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generations.'

Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit, 1992

In June 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, for the first International Earth Summit. The Summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socioeconomic development at the global level. The assembled leaders signed the Declaration on Global Climatic Change and Biological Diversity. The Rio Convention endorsed the global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21 for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

Agenda 21

It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992 at the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED), which took place at Rio de Janeiro, Brazil. It aims at achieving global sustainable development. It is an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty, disease through global co-operation on common interests, mutual needs and shared responsibilities.

Resource Planning

Planning is the widely accepted strategy for judicious use of resources. It has importance in a country like India, which has enormous diversity in the availability of resources. There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources but are deficient in some other resources.

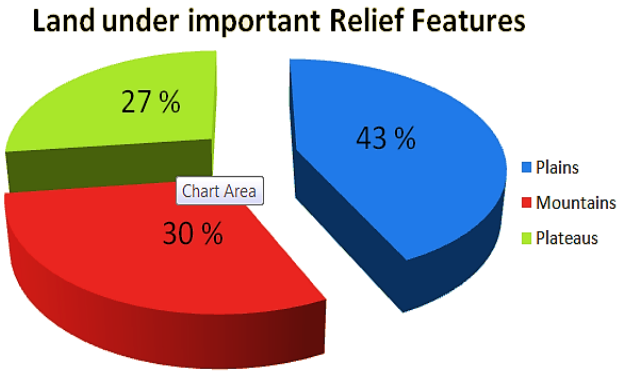
Resource Planning in India

Resource planning in India involves the following processes:

- To identify and make a list of existing resources across the country by surveying and mapping
- To frame a planning structure with the estimates of the level of technology, skill sets and institutions which are required for harnessing these resources
- To map the resource development plans with the national development plans

Land Resource

The land is among the most important natural resources. It covers only about thirty percent of the total area of the earth's surface. It supports natural vegetation, wild life, human life, economic activities, transport and communication systems. However, land is an asset of a finite magnitude, therefore, it is important to use the available land for various purposes with careful planning.



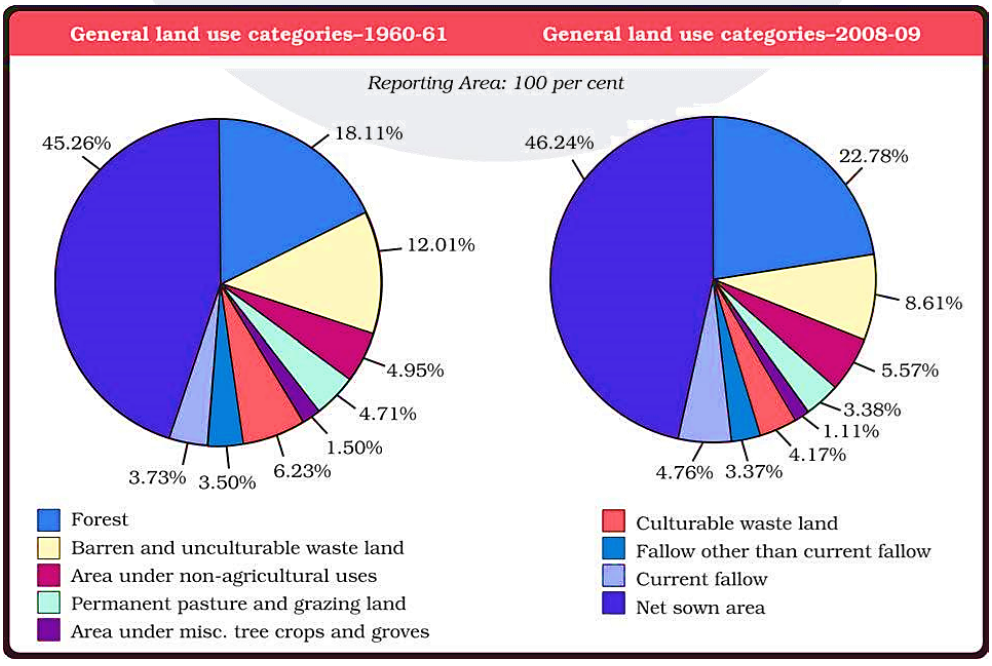
Land Utilisation

1. Forests
2. Land not available for cultivation
   (a) Barren and waste land
   (b) Land put to non-agricultural uses, e.g. buildings, roads, factories, etc.
3. Other uncultivated land (excluding fallow land)
   (a) Permanent pastures and grazing land,
   (b) Land under miscellaneous tree crops groves (not included in net sown area),
   (c) Cultruable waste land (left uncultivated for more than 5 agricultural years).
4. Fallow lands
   (a) Current fallow-(left without cultivation for one or less than one agricultural year),
   (b) Other than current fallow-(left uncultivated for the past 1 to 5 agricultural years).
5. Net sown area
   Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area is known as gross cropped area.

Land Use Pattern in India

The forest cover of the country is less than the prescribed 33% of the total country's land. Forests occupy about 23.81% of the total land surface in India.

The total net sown area of India is 46.24% of the total land in the country. The net sown area differs from state to state. While in Punjab and Haryana, the net sown area is more than 80% of the total land in the state, it is less than 10% in Arunachal Pradesh, Mizoram, Manipur and the Andaman and Nicobar Islands. 3.38% of the total land is used for grazing, while the remaining lands are fallow and waste lands.



Waste land is the land put to other non-agricultural uses which include rocky, arid and desert areas, roads, railways, industry etc. Continuous use of land over a long period of time without taking appropriate measures to conserve and manage it, has resulted in land degradation.

Reasons for the Degradation of Land in India

- **Mining:** It is the most important factor for land degradation.
    - The mining sites are abandoned after excavation work is over. The excavation work leaves deep scars and other material which degrades the soil. This is common in states like Jharkhand, Chattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa.
    - Mineral processing, grinding of lime stone, ceramic industry releases a heavy amount of dust, which later settles down in the surrounding areas.
- **Overgrazing:** Overgrazing of land by animals results in removal of grass over a large area making it easy for wind and water to remove the soil. Example Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh, Maharastra etc.
- **Water Logging:** Over irrigation of land is also responsible for land degradation, water logging, increases salinity and alkalinity in soil making it unfit for cultivation.
- **Industrialisation:** Industrial waste also leads to water and land degradation.
- Deforestation
- Erosion of land because of flooding
- Excess irrigation of lands

Mining and deforestation have deteriorated the quality of land in Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh, Jharkhand and Odisha. Overgrazing is one of the main reasons for the land degradation in Gujarat, Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Madhya Pradesh. In Punjab, Haryana and western Uttar Pradesh, excess irrigation has resulted in water logging leading to increased soil salinity. In major metropolitan cities, industrial effluents have degraded the land.

Some of the ways through which we can solve the problems of land degradation are:

- Afforestation and proper management of grazing.
- Planting of shelter belts of plants.
- Stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes.
- Proper management of waste lands.
- Control of mining activities.
- Proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment.

Soil Resource

Soil is a renewable natural resource. It supports various living organisms and is a medium of plant growth. Topsoil is the uppermost layer of the Earth. It consists of humus. Factors such as variation of temperature, parent rock, decomposers and running water affect the formation of soil. Soil in India can be classified based on their texture, thickness, age, chemical and physical properties.



Soil Profile

Classification of Soils

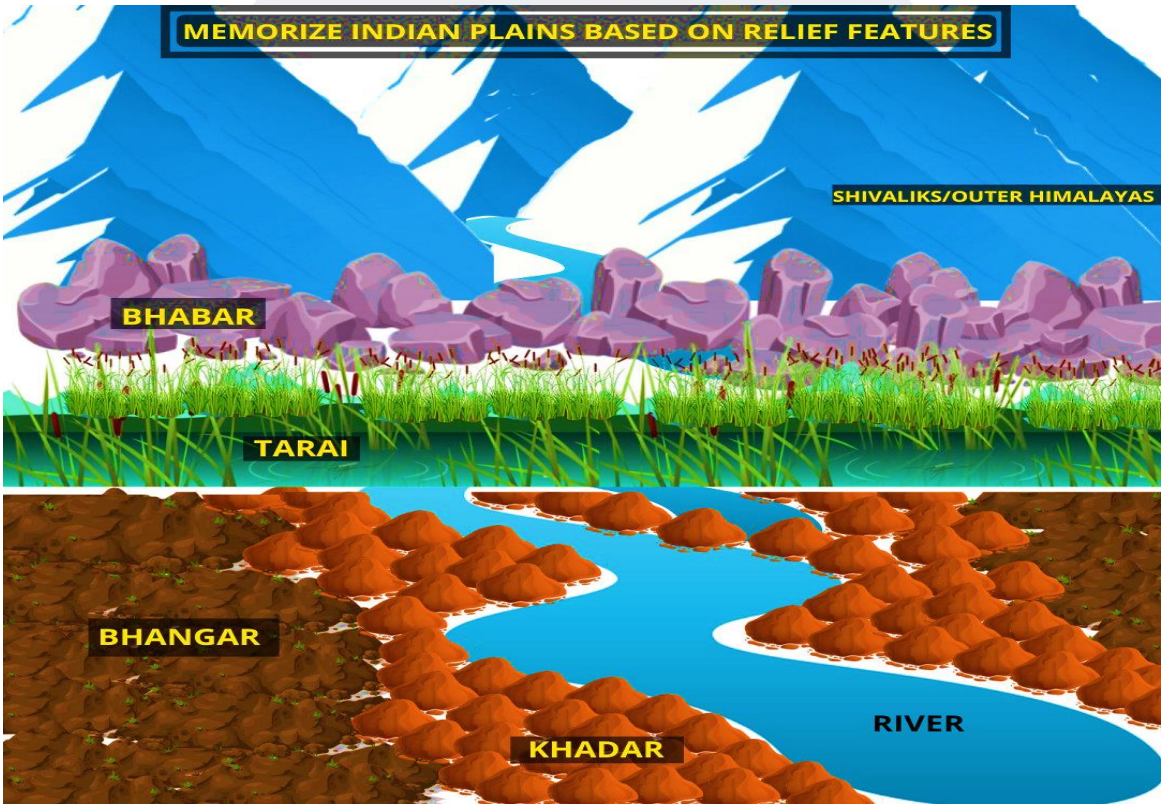
Alluvial Soil: It is the most widely spread soil in India. It has been deposited by three Himalayan river systems—Ganga, Indus and Brahmaputra. Alluvial soil is composed of sand, silt and clay particles. The entire North Indian Plains are made of this soil. It is also found in the eastern coastal plains and

some parts of Rajasthan and Gujarat. The soil is suitable for the cultivation of paddy, wheat, sugarcane and other cereal and pulse crops.

On the basis of age, soil can be classified as bangar and khadar soils.

Differences between Bangar and Khadar Soils

Bangar Soil	Khadar Soil
(i) Bangar is the old alluvium. In other words, Bangar is older than Khadar.	(i) Khadar is the new alluvium. In other words, Khadar is younger in age.
(ii) Bangar often contains kankar nodules with calcium carbonates in sub-soil.	(ii) Khadar is finer, more sandy and free from kankar nodules.
(iii) Bangar is not renewed frequently. Hence, it is less fertile.	(iii) Khadar is renewed frequently and is more fertile.
(iv) Bangar is found away from the river and higher than ground level.	(iv) Khadar is found near river channels in deltas and in flood plains.



Black Soil:

- This soil is black and is also known as regur. Because the soil is ideal for growing cotton, it is also known as black cotton soil.
- This soil is found in the plateau regions of Saurashtra, Maharashtra, Malwa and Chhattisgarh. The soil is made of fine clayey material and is known for holding moisture.
- The soil is rich in calcium carbonate, magnesium and potash. It is most suitable for growing cotton.

Red and Yellow Soils:

- These soils are found in parts of Odisha, Chhattisgarh, southern parts of middle Gangetic plains and some parts of Western Ghats.

- The soil becomes reddish because of the presence of iron oxides. It looks yellow in a hydrated form. Potatoes, maize and cotton are crops which are grown in red soil. Vegetables, tobacco and citrus fruits such as grapes are grown in yellow soil.

Laterite Soil:

- This soil is found in areas of high temperature and heavy rainfall. This soil has low humus content as most of microorganisms get destroyed because of high temperature.
- This soil is found in Kerala, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh and hilly regions of Assam.
- This soil is suitable for growing tea and coffee. Cashew nuts are grown in red laterite soils of Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Kerala.

Arid Soils:

- These soils are sandy in texture and saline in nature. They are found in areas of high temperature and dry climate.
- Because of dry climate, the moisture and humus content of the soil is very low. In some areas, common salt is obtained by evaporating the water from the soil.
- These soils are not fertile but can become fertile after adequate irrigation of the soil.
- The arid soil is found in Rajasthan and in the northwestern parts of Gujarat.

Forest Soil:

- This soil is found in the hilly and mountainous regions. It is made of sand and silt. In the snow regions of the Himalayas, the soil lacks humus content because of the loss of top cover of the soil.
- The forest soil found in the lower parts of the Himalayas is fertile.

<table>
<tr><td>  </td><td>  </td></tr>
<tr><td>Alluvial Soils</td><td>Black Soil</td></tr>
<tr><td>  </td><td>  </td><td>  </td></tr>
<tr><td>Red and Yellow Soils</td><td>Laterite Soil</td><td>Arid Soils</td></tr>
</table>

Soil Erosion

The wearing away (because of the action of winds) and washing down of soil cover (because of running water) is known as soil erosion. Because the processes of erosion and soil formation occur simultaneously, there is a balance between the two. However, overgrazing and deforestation at a rapid pace can disturb this balance. Different kinds of erosions are:

Gully Erosion: This occurs when running water cuts through the soil making deep channels. The land thus becomes unsuitable for cultivation and is known as **bad land**.


Gully Erosion


Sheet Erosion


Wind Erosion

Sheet Erosion: The washing away of the topsoil because of the flowing of water as a sheet over large areas is known as sheet erosion.

Wind Erosion: When the wind blows away the topsoil, it is known as wind erosion.

Soil Conservation

Soil can be conserved in the following ways:

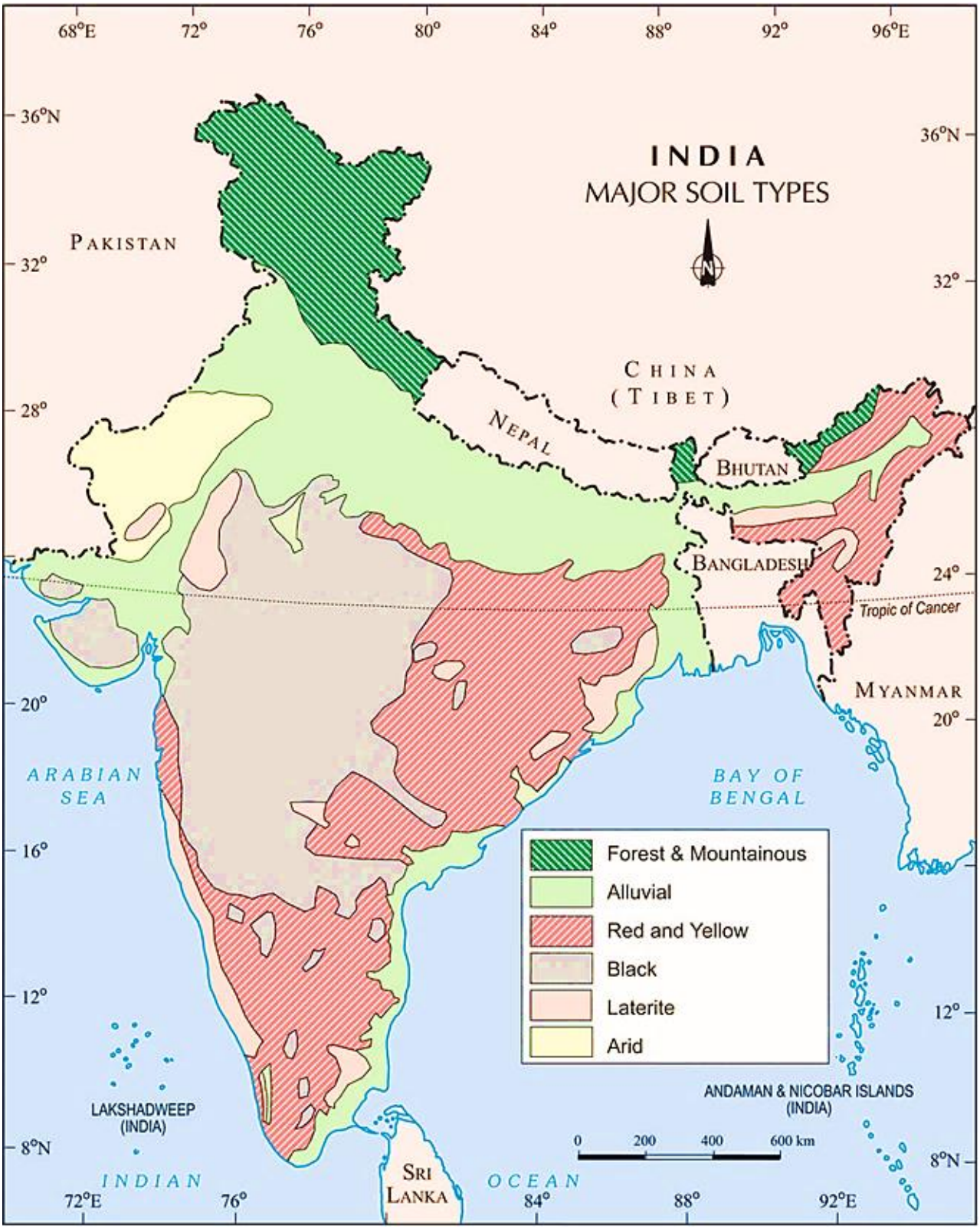
- **Contour Ploughing:** When one ploughs along the contour lines, it is called contour ploughing. It decreases the flow of water down the slopes and thus helps in soil conservation.
- **Terrace Farming:** When steps are cut out on the slopes of the hills making terraces, it reduces soil erosion.
- **Strip Cropping:** When strips of grass are grown between the strips of crops, it is known as strip cropping. It breaks down the speed of winds.
- **Shelter Belts:** When trees are planted in a row, it breaks the force of winds. This method has proved very useful in destabilising the sand dunes in the deserts of western India.


Contour Ploughing

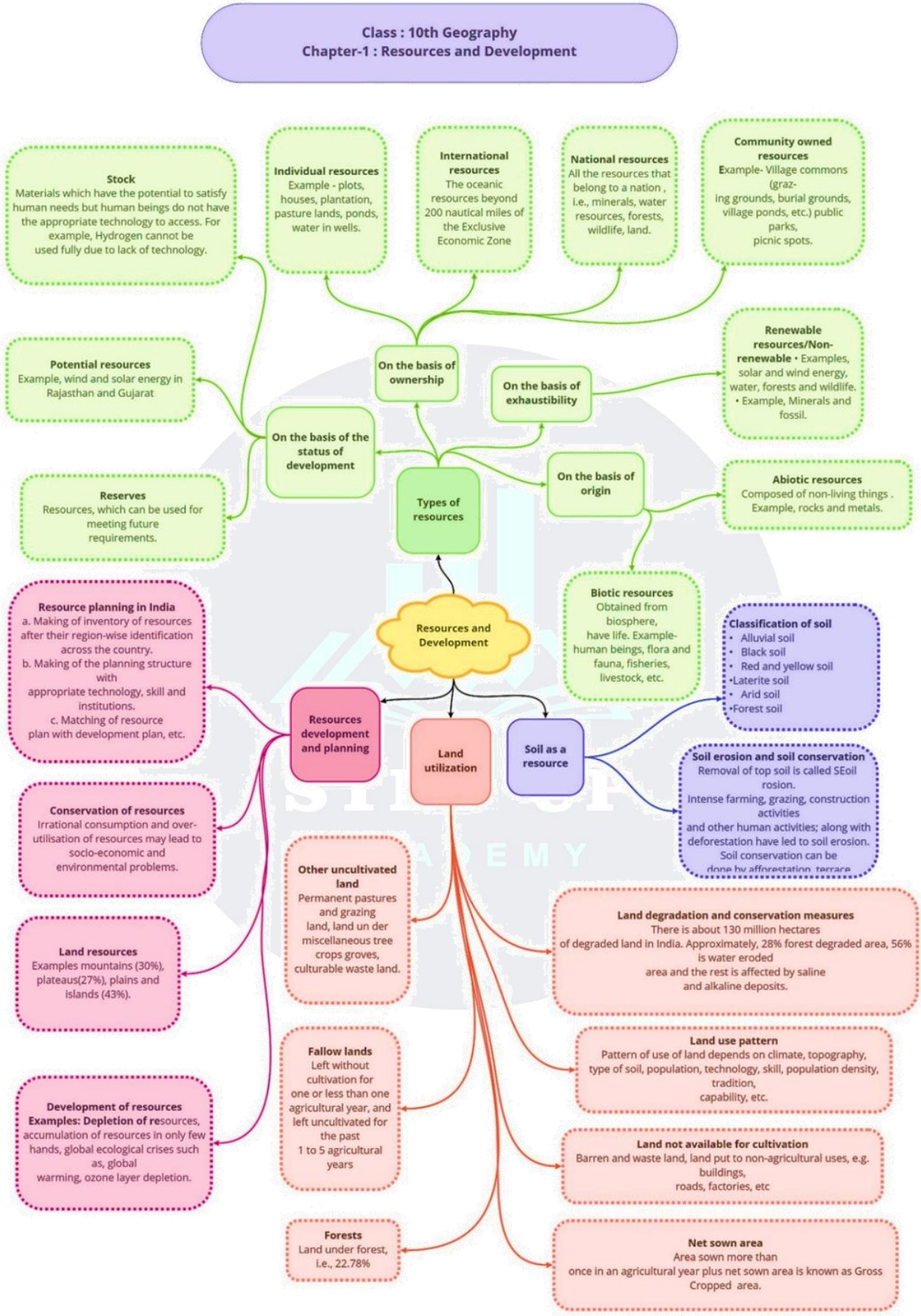

Terrace farming


Strip farming


Shelter belt



India: Distribution of Iron Ore, Manganese, Bauxite and Mica


Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-1 : Resources and Development
Resources and Development
Types of resources
On the basis of ownership
Stock
Materials which have the potential to satisfy human needs but human beings do not have the appropriate technology to access. For example, Hydrogen cannot be used fully due to lack of technology.
Individual resources
Example - plots, houses, plantation, pasture lands, ponds, water in wells.
International resources
The oceanic resources beyond 200 nautical miles of the Exclusive Economic Zone
National resources
All the resources that belong to a nation , i.e., minerals, water resources, forests, wildlife, land.
Community owned resources
Example- Village commons (graz-ing grounds, burial grounds, village ponds, etc.) public parks, picnic spots.
On the basis of the status of development
Potential resources
Example, wind and solar energy in Rajasthan and Gujarat
Reserves
Resources, which can be used for meeting future requirements.
On the basis of exhaustibility
Renewable resources/Non-renewable • Examples, solar and wind energy, water, forests and wildlife. • Example, Minerals and fossil.
On the basis of origin
Abiotic resources
Composed of non-living things . Example, rocks and metals.
Biotic resources
Obtained from biosphere, have life. Example- human beings, flora and fauna, fisheries, livestock, etc.
Resources development and planning
Resource planning in India
a. Making of inventory of resources after their region-wise identification across the country.
b. Making of the planning structure with appropriate technology, skill and institutions.
c. Matching of resource plan with development plan, etc.
Conservation of resources
Irrational consumption and over-utilisation of resources may lead to socio-economic and environmental problems.
Land resources
Examples mountains (30%), plateaus(27%), plains and islands (43%).
Development of resources
Examples: Depletion of resources, accumulation of resources in only few hands, global ecological crises such as, global warming, ozone layer depletion.
Land utilization
Other uncultivated land
Permanent pastures and grazing land, land un der miscellaneous tree crops groves, culturable waste land.
Fallow lands
Left without cultivation for one or less than one agricultural year, and left uncultivated for the past 1 to 5 agricultural years
Forests
Land under forest, i.e., 22.78%
Soil as a resource
Classification of soil
• Alluvial soil
• Black soil
• Red and yellow soil
•Laterite soil
• Arid soil
•Forest soil
Soil erosion and soil conservation
Removal of top soil is called SEoil rosion.
Intense farming, grazing, construction activities and other human activities; along with deforestation have led to soil erosion. Soil conservation can be done by afforestation, terrace
Land degradation and conservation measures
There is about 130 million hectares of degraded land in India. Approximately, 28% forest degraded area, 56% is water eroded area and the rest is affected by saline and alkaline deposits.
Land use pattern
Pattern of use of land depends on climate, topography, type of soil, population, technology, skill, population density, tradition, capability, etc.
Land not available for cultivation
Barren and waste land, land put to non-agricultural uses, e.g. buildings, roads, factories, etc
Net sown area
Area sown more than once in an agricultural year plus net sown area is known as Gross Cropped area.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which one of the following soils is ideal for growing cotton?
   (a) Regur soil
   (b) Laterite soil
   (c) Desert soil
   (d) Mountainous soil
2. Soil is formed by the process of
   (a) Denudation
   (b) Gradation
   (c) Weathering
   (d) Erosion
3. Land left without cultivation for one or less than one agricultural year is called
   (a) Culturable waste land
   (b) Current fallow land
   (c) Waste land
   (d) None of the above
4. "There is enough for everybody's need but not for anybody's greed". Who said this?
   (a) Jawahar Lai Nehru
   (b) Atal Bihari Vajpai
   (c) M. K. Gandhi
   (d) Sunder Lai Bahuguna
5. Resources which are surveyed and their quantity and quality have been determined for utilisation are known as [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Potential resources
   (b) Stock
   (c) Developed resources
   (d) Reserves
6. Which one of the following statements is correct as regard to international resources?
   (a) Resources which are regulated by international institutions.
   (b) Resources which lie beyond the territorial waters.
   (c) Resources which are found along the international frontier.
   (d) Resources which are not yet developed.
7. The first International Earth Summit was held in
   (a) Geneva
   (b) New York
   (c) Japan
   (d) Rio de Janeiro
8. The most widespread relief feature of India is
   (a) Mountains
   (b) Forests
   (c) Plains
   (d) Plateaus
9. Resources which are found in a region, but have not been utilised
   (a) Renewable
   (b) Developed
   (c) National
   (d) Potential
10. Which one of the following statements is true about the term resources?[CBSE 2011]
    (a) Resources are free gifts of nature.
    (b) They are the functions of human activities.
    (c) All those things which are found in nature.
    (d) Things which cannot be used to fulfill our needs.
11. The red soil is red in colour because
    (a) it is rich in humus.
    (b) it is rich in iron compounds.
    (c) it is derived from volcanic origin.
    (d) it is rich in potash.
12. Soil formed by intense leaching is
    (a) Alluvial soil
    (b) Red soil
    (c) Laterite soil
    (d) Desert
13. Which one of the following type of resource is iron ore? (Textbook)
    (a) Renewable
    (b) Biotic
    (c) Flow
    (d) Non-renewable

14. Under which of the following type of resource can tidal energy be put? (Textbook)
    (a) Replenishable
    (b) Human-made
    (c) Abiotic
    (d) Non-renewable
15. Which one of the following is the main cause of land degradation in Punjab? (Textbook)
    (a) Intensive cultivation
    (b) Deforestation
    (c) Over-irrigation
    (d) Overgrazing

Very Short Questions-

1. What do you understand by Resource?
2. Classify resources on the basis of exhaustibility.
3. Classify resources on the basis of development.
4. Give an example of Biotic resources.
5. What types of resources are solar and wind energy?
6. Mention a non-renewable source that cannot be recycled and get exhausted with their use.
7. What do you understand by international resources? Give example.
8. What are developed resources?
9. Which are the results of using resources indiscriminately by human beings? Mention any one.
10. What is sustainable development?

Short Questions-

1. What is meant by resource? Mention the four basis to classify the resources.
2. Are resources free gifts of nature?
3. What are biotic and abiotic resources? Give two examples for each.
4. Highlight any three problems associated with the indiscriminate use of resources by the human beings.
5. Why is the issue of sustainability important for development? Explain.
6. Write a note on the Rio de Janeiro Earth Summit 1992.
7. Explain Agenda 21.
8. Explain the three stages of Resource Planning in India.
9. Describe the relief features of land in India and their importance.
10. What are the ways to solve the problem of land degradation?

Long Questions-

1. Provide a suitable classification for resources on the basis of ownership. Mention main features of any three types of such resources.
2. How are the resources divided on the basis of the status of development? Give example of each type.

    Or

    Differentiate between stock resources and reserves.
3. "In India some regions are rich in certain types of resources but deficient in some other resources." Do you agree with the statement? Support your answer with any three examples.
4. Explain causes for land degradation.

    Or

    Explain any four human activities which are mainly responsible for land degradation in India.
5. Describe features of laterite soil. Mention the places where they are found in India.
6. Describe the features of Arid soils and Forest soils. Mention the places where they are found in India.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
    a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
    b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
    c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
    d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

    ASSERTION (A): The black soils are made up of extremely fine i.e, clayey material.

    REASON (R): They are well known for their capacity to hold moisture.
2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:

a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

ASSERTION (A): Terrace cultivation is done in plains.

REASON (R): Running water cuts through the clayey soils and makes deep channels as gullies. The land becomes good for cultivation of crops.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

This is the most widely spread and important soil. In fact, the entire northern plains are made of alluvial soil. These have been deposited by three important Himalayan River s systems– the Indus, the Ganga, and the Brahmaputra. These soils also extend in Rajasthan and Gujarat through a narrow corridor Alluvial soil is also found in the eastern coastal plains particularly in the deltas of the Mahanadi, the Godavari, the Krishna, and the Kaveri River.

i. Name the soil which is being described in the above paragraph.
   a. Black soil.
   b. Alluvial soil.
   c. Laterite soil.
   d. Forest soil.

ii. The soil mentioned in the para is _____
   a. Very dry.
   b. Rocky.
   c. Very fertile
   d. Red in colour.

iii. This soil is mainly good for cultivation of.
   a. Sugar cane.
   b. Paddy.
   c. Wheat.
   d. All of the above.

iv. This soil is found in.
   a. Northern coastal plains.
   b. Eastern coastal plains.
   c. Southern coastal plains.
   d. Western coastal plains.

2. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

The village of Jhabua and the district of Jhabua have shown that it is possible to reverse land degradation. Tree density in Jhabua increased from 13 per hectare in 1976 to 1, 272 per hectare in 1992: Regeneration of the environment leads to economic well-being, as a result of greater resource availability improved agriculture and animal care, and consequently increased incomes. Average annual household income in Jhabua ranged from Rs. 10, 000 - 15, 000 between 1979 and 1984: people's management is essential for ecological restoration. With people being made the decision-makers by the Madhya Pradesh government, 2.9 million hectares, or about 1 percent of India's land area, are being greened across the state through watershed management.

i. The village Sukhomanjiri is located in the state of ___.
   a. Uttaranchal.
   b. Andhra Pradesh.
   c. Rajasthan.
   d. Madhya Pradesh.

ii. Which one of the following is not helpful to reverse land degradation?
   a. Using high doses of fertilizers.
   b. Practicing crop rotation.
   c. Permaculture.
   d. Developing Argo Forestry.

iii. Benefits of Ecological Restoration ……..
   a. Helps to solve challenges of water security
   b. Helps to solve challenges of food.
   c. Helps in securing livelihoods and wellbeing.
   d. All of the above.

iv. Which one of the following is not part of Watershed management?
   a. Percolation ponds.
   b. Canals with cement lining.
   c. Check dams and Gully
   d. Diversion drains.

Map Question:

1. The shaded region in the outline map of India represents which soil type.

a. Laterite soil.

b. Mountain soil.

c. Black soil.

d. Alluvial soil.



Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: a
2. **Answer**: c
3. **Answer**: b
4. **Answer**: c
5. **Answer**: c
6. **Answer**: a
7. **Answer**: d
8. **Answer**: c
9. **Answer**: d
10. **Answer**: b
11. **Answer**: b
12. **Answer**: c
13. **Answer**: d
14. **Answer**: a
15. **Answer**: c

Very Short Answers-

1. Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs, provided, it is technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable can be termed as 'Resource'.
2. Renewable and non-renewable resources.
3. Potential, developed stock and reserves.
4. Human beings, flora and fauna are examples of biotic resources.
5. Solar and wind energy are renewable resources.
6. Fossil fuel.
7. These resources are regulated by international institutions. Examples are the oceanic resources beyond 200 km of the Exclusive Economic Zone belong to open ocean and no [individual country can utilise these without the concurrence of international institutions.
8. Resources which are surveyed and their quality and quantity have been determined for utilisation. The development of resources depends on technology and level of their feasibility.
9.
    1. Accumulation of resources in a few hands.
    2. Depletion of resources for satisfying the greed of few individuals.
10. Sustainable economic development means 'development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generations'.

Short Answers-

1. (1) **Resource :** Everything available in our environment which can be used to satisfy our needs provided, it is technologically accessible, economically feasible and culturally acceptable can be termed as resource.

    (2) Four basis to classify resources are as mentioned below :

    1. On the basis of origin – biotic and abiotic.
    2. On the basis of exhaustibility – renewable and non-renewable.
    3. On the basis of ownership – individual, community, national and international.
    4. On the basis of status of development – potential, developed stock and reserves.
2. No. Resources are not free gifts of nature. Resources are a function of human activities. Human beings themselves are essential components of resources. They transform material available in our environment into resources and use them.
3. On the basis of origin resources are divided as given below :
    1. **Biotic resources :** These are obtained from biosphere and have life such as human beings, flora and fauna, fisheries and livestock.
    2. **Abiotic resources :** All those things which are composed of non-living things are called aboitic resources e.g., rocks and metals.
4. The indiscriminate use of resources by the human beings has resulted in the following:
    1. Depletion of resources for satisfying the greed of few individuals.

2. Accumulation of resources in few hands which has divided the society into rich and poor or have and have nots.
3. Indiscriminate exploitation of resources has led to global ecological crises such as global warming, ozone layer depletion, environmental pollution and land degradation.

   Thus, an equitable distribution of resources has become essential for a sustained quality of life and global peace. If the present trend of resource depletion by some individuals and countries continues, the future of our planet is in danger.

5. Sustainable development means that a development should meet the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. However, since the second half of the twentieth century, a number of scientists have been warning that the present type and levels of development are not sustainable. The issue of sustainable development has emerged from rapid industrialisation of the world in the past century. It is felt that the economic growth and industrialisation have led to reckless exploitation of natural resources. On the other hand, the stock of natural resources are limited. So, the growth of all countries in future is likely to be endangered if the limited resources are completely exhausted. Under these circumstances, the issue of sustainability has become important for development.

6.

(1) Place : In June 1992, more than 100 heads of states met in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil for the first International Earth Summit.

(2) Objective : The Summit was convened for addressing urgent problems of environmental protection and socio-economic development at the global level.

(3) Achievements :

1. The assembled leaders signed the Declaration on Global Climatic Change and Biological Diversity,
2. The Rio convention endorsed the Global Forest Principles and adopted Agenda 21 for achieving Sustainable Development in the 21st century.

7.

1. **Declaration :** It is the declaration signed by world leaders in 1992 at the United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED) which took place at Rio de Janeiro (Brazil).

2. Aims :

1. It aims at achieving global sustainable development.
2. It is an agenda to combat environmental damage, poverty, disease through global cooperation on common interest, mutual needs and shared responsibilities,
3. One major objective of the Agenda 21 is that every local government should draw its own local Agenda 21.

8. Three stages of Resource Planning in India are as given below :
   1. Identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country. This involves surveying, mapping and qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of resources.
   2. Evolving a planning structure endowed with appropriate technology, skill and institutional set up for implementing resource development plans.
   3. Matching the resource development plans with overall national development plans.
9. India has a variety of relief features of land i.e., mountains, plateaus, plains and islands.
   1. 43 per cent of land is plain. It is useful for agriculture and industry.
   2. 30 per cent of the total land area is mountainous which ensures perennial flow of some rivers. The mountains provide facilities for tourism and ecological aspects.
   3. 27 per cent area is plateau region which possesses rich reserves of minerals, fossil fuels and forests.
10. There are many ways to solve the problem of land degradation. These are as given below :
    1. Afforestation – Plantation of trees should be encouraged.
    2. Proper management of grazing – Separate sites should be fixed for grazing.

3. Planting of shelter belts of plants.
4. Control on overgrazing – Rules for grazing should be framed.
5. Stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes to stop land degradation.
6. Proper management of waste lands, control of mining activities, proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment in industrial and suburban areas.

Long Answers-

1. These are divided as individual, community owned, national and international resources.

(1) Individual resources :

1. These are owned privately by individuals,
2. Many farmers own land in the villages which is allotted to them by government against payment of revenue,
3. Urban people .own plots, houses and other property,
4. Plantation, pasture lands, ponds are also owned by individuals.

(2) Community owned resources :

1. These are owned by community.
2. These are accessible to all the members of the community,
3. Village commons (grazing grounds, burial grounds), public parks, picnic spots in urban areas are accessible to all the people living there.

(3) National resources :

1. These are owned and belong to the nation or state,
2. All the minerals, water resources, forests, wildlife land within the political boundaries and oceanic area upto 12 nautical miles (19.2 km) from the coast termed as territorial water and resources there-in belong to the nation.

(4) International resources :

These do not belong to any country. Some of these resources are regulated by international institutions. Oceanic resources beyond 200 km of the Exclusive. Economic Zone belong to open ocean and no individual country can utilise these without the concurrence of international institutions.

2. These can be divided into four types :

(1) Potential resources : These are found in a region but have not been utilised, e.g., enormous potential for development of wind and solar energy in Rajasthan and Gujarat. But so far these have not been developed properly.

(2) Developed resources :

1. Resources whose quality and quantity have been determined for utilisation.
2. Their development depends on technology and their level of feasibility.

(3) Stock :

Materials in the environment which can satisfy human needs but human beings do not have the appropriate technology to access these e.g., two components of water — hydrogen and oxygen can be used as a rich source of energy but we, human beings, do not have technology to use them. Hence it is considered as stock.

(4) Reserves :

1. These are the subset of the stock which can be used by present technology but their use has not been started fully.
2. River water can be used for generating hydroelectric power but presently it is being used only to a limited extent,
3. Such resources can be used for meeting future requirements,
4. Water in the dams, forests etc. is a reserve which can be used in the future.

3. (1) I agree with the statement that in India some regions are rich in certain types of resources but deficient in some other resources as mentioned below:

- Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh and Madhya Pradesh – rich in minerals and coal deposits.
- Arunachal Pradesh – abundance of water resources.

- Rajasthan — lot of solar and wind energy.
- Ladakh – rich cultural heritage.

(2) There is great variation in the availability of resources. Some regions are rich in one resource but deficient in other, as mentioned below :

- Arunachal Pradesh – Lack of infrastructural development.
- Rajasthan – Lack of water resources.
- Ladakh – Deficient in water, infrastructure and vital minerals.

(3) There is lack of technology in some regions. Thus there are regions that are rich in resources but these are included in economically backward regions.

4.

(1) At present there is about 130 million hectares of degraded land in India as mentioned below :

- Forest degraded area — 28%
- Water eroded area — 56%
- Wind eroded area — 10%
- Saline and Alkaline land — 6%

(2) Following factors/human factors are responsible for land degradation in India :

- **Mining :** Mining sites are abandoned after excavation work is complete leaving deep scars and traces of over burdening.
- **Deforestation :** In states of Jharkhand, Chhattisgarh, Madhya Pradesh and Orissa deforestation due to mining have caused severe land degradation.
- **Overgrazing :** In states like Gujarat, Rajasthan, Madhya Pradesh and Maharashtra overgrazing is the main reason for land degradation.
- **Over-irrigation :** In the states of Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh, over-irrigation is responsible for land degradation due to water logging leading to increase in salinity and alkalinity in the soil.
- The mineral processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry generate dust in the atmosphere. It retards the process of infiltration of water into soil after it settles down on the land. Thus industrial effluents as waste have become a major source of land and water pollution in many parts of the country.

5. **Laterite soil :**

(1) Features :

- Laterite has been derived from the Latin word 'later' which means brick. It develops in areas with high temperature and heavy rainfall
- Humus content of the soil is low.
- They lack in elements of fertility and are of low value for crop production,
- They are composed of little clay and much gravel of red sandstones,
- They are suitable for cultivation with manures and fertilizers

(2) Places :

- They are found in Karnataka, Kerala, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh and hilly areas of Orissa and Assam,
- After adopting appropriate soil conservation techniques particularly in the hilly areas of Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu, this soil is very useful for growing tea and coffee,
- Red laterite soils in Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Kerala are more suitable for crops like cashew nut.

6. **(1) Arid soils :**

Features

- They range from red to brown in colour.
- They are generally sandy in texture and saline in nature,
- In some areas the salt content is very high and common salt is obtained by evaporating the water. Due to the dry climate, high temperature, evaporation is faster and the soil lacks humus and moisture,
- The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by kankar because of increasing calcium content downward.

- These soils can become cultivable if irrigation facilities are made available as has been in the case of western Rajasthan.

Places :

- These soils are found in arid areas of Rajasthan, Punjab and Haryana.

(2) Forest soils :

Features :

- They are found in mountainous area,
- They are loamy and silty in valley slides and coarse grained in the upper slopes,
- In the snow covered areas of the Himalayas they are acidic with low humus content.

Places: They are found in the hilly and mountainous areas where sufficient rain forests are available. These places are Meghalaya, Arunachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand, Himachal Pradesh and Jammu and Kashmir. The soils found in the lower parts of the valleys particularly on the river terraces and alluvial fans are fertile.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (B) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A)
2. (c) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (b) Alluvial soil.
   ii. (c) Very fertile.
   iii. (b) Paddy.
   iv. (b) Eastern coastal plains.
2. i. (d) Madhya Pradesh.
   ii. (a) Using high doses of fertilizers.
   iii. (d) All of the above.
   iv. (a) Percolation ponds

Map Answer:

Alluvial soil.

Forest and Wildlife Resources 2

Forests are an important resource for any country. They not only provide a habitat to various organisms but are also the primary producers of all resources on which all the other living beings depend.

ECOSYSTEM: An ecosystem consists of all the organisms and the physical environment with which they interact. These biotic and abiotic components are linked together through nutrient cycles and energy flows.

We humans along with all living organisms form a complex web of ecological system in which we are only a part and very much dependent on this system for our own existence.

Flora and Fauna in India

India is known for its rich biodiversity. The term 'biodiversity' is used to describe various life forms which are found on the Earth. This includes flora, fauna and various ecosystems in which species live or depend on one another.

Because of deforestation, the demand for hides and horns of animals and for medicinal plants, commercialisation etc., many species of plants and animals are on the verge of extinction at present. According to their present numbers, various species of plants and animals can be categorised into the following divisions:

Normal Species: Those species whose numbers are considered normal for their survival are known as normal species. Some examples are sal, pine, rodents and cattle.

Extinct Species: Extinct species are those species of plants and animals which cannot be found in the wild or in captivity in areas where they may occur. For example, the cheetah in India and the dodo bird in the world have become extinct.

Endangered Species: Species which are facing a grave threat to their lives and are in danger of becoming extinct are known as endangered species. Black buck and Indian rhino are examples of such species.

Vulnerable Species: These species can become endangered if positive steps are not taken to improve their numbers. Desert fox and Asiatic elephants are examples of such species.

Rare Species: Species which are very uncommon or scarce in numbers are called rare species. They can become vulnerable or endangered if their numbers continue to decline. Some examples of this species are wild Asiatic buffalo, hornbill and desert fox.

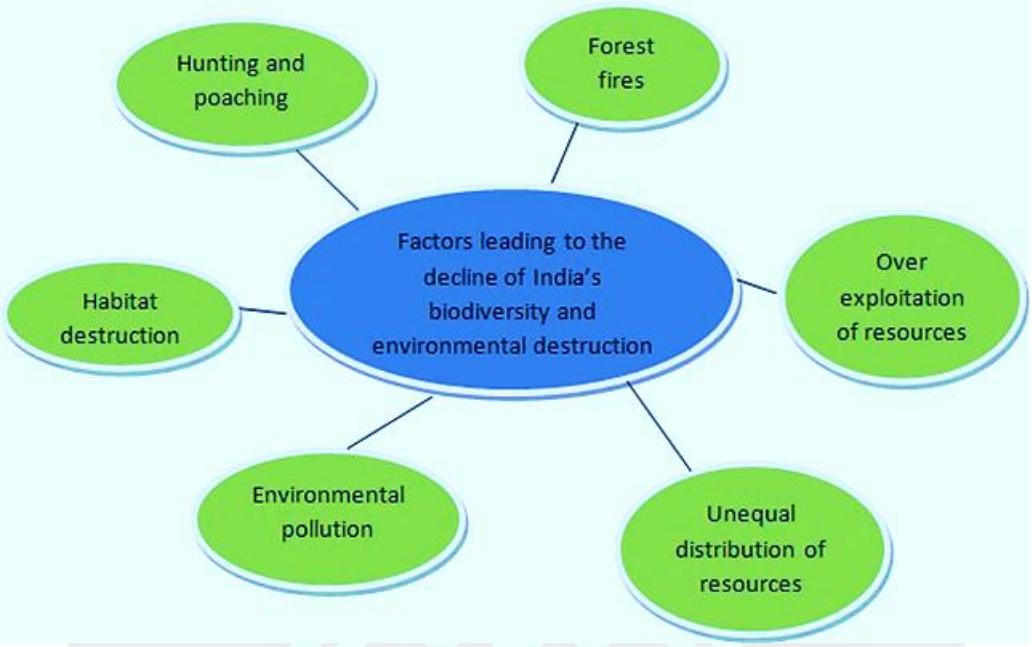
Endemic Species: These kinds of species are only found at a particular region, range or location in the world. Andaman wild pig and Nicobar pigeon are examples of such species.

Factors Leading to the Depletion of Flora and Fauna

Factors which have contributed to the decline in various species of plants and animals:

- The Indian forests were greatly damaged during the colonial period. The British brought many areas under cultivation to earn revenues. The expansion of railways led to the destruction of huge chunks of forests. Reckless mining and commercial forestry have further led to the destruction of forests.
- In the post-independence period, the expansion of cultivation continued. This also led to the destruction of forests and consequently the depletion of various species.

- Many river valley projects have resulted in the loss of forest lands. For example, the Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh has resulted in the reduction of forest cover of the region.
- Uncontrolled mining has resulted in deforestation. Mining not only disturbs the habitat of many species but also blocks the migration route of several animals. For example, dolomite mining has threatened the tigers in the Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal.
- According to many environmentalists, the collection of fuel wood and the grazing of animals have also depleted the forest ecosystems.



Conservation of Forest and Wildlife in India

- Conservation is vital since it will help us to protect our environment and protect our ecosystem which in turn helps to preserve the genetic diversity that the ecosystem has.
- The Indian Wildlife (Protection) Act was implemented in 1972, which made various provisions for protecting habitats.



Rhino and deer in Kaziranga National Park

- The central government also announced several projects for protecting specific animals, which were gravely threatened, including the tiger, the one horned rhinoceros, the Kashmir stag or hangul, three types of crocodiles – fresh water crocodile, saltwater crocodile and the Gharial are some of the animals. Under the Wildlife Act of 1980 and 1986, several hundred butterflies, moths, beetles, and one dragonfly have been added to the list of protected species.
- The government has also provided partial or full legal protection to animals such as Indian elephants, black buck, snow leopard etc. to protect them from extinction.

PROJECT TIGER: The Government of India launched the Project Tiger with the aim of saving the steadily declining population of tigers in India on 1 April 1973. Project Tiger was launched by the Indira Gandhi government in 1973 from the Jim Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand. In 1973, the Project Tiger was launched with an ambitious aim of increasing the population of the tiger (scientific name: Panthera tigris) in the country.

In the initial years of this project, there were only nine tiger reserves in India. At present, there are 47 such reserves located in 18 tiger range states of India. The initial reserves covered under Project Tiger were the Jim Corbett, Manas, Ranthambore, Simlipal, Bandipur, Palamau, Sundarbans, Melghta and Kanha national parks.

Types of Forests in India

Forests in India are controlled by the Indian Forest Department, which has divided forests into

- **Reserved Forests**: In India, more than half of the total forest land has been declared as reserved forests.
- **Protected Forests:** Protected forests are protected from any further destruction of forest cover.
- **Unclassed Forests:** This class of forests include the forests and wetlands which are owned by the Government, privately or jointly by communities.

Reserved and protected forests are also known as permanent forest estates. Madhya Pradesh has the largest area under permanent forests.

Biodiversity is the variety of life found on the Earth. An ecosystem which has rich biodiversity has several species of plants and animals which are closely connected to each other through biotic and abiotic factors.

Biodiversity helps in boosting the productivity of the ecosystems in which each species plays an important role. For example, a large number of plant species results in greater varieties of crops. Similarly, many microorganisms play an important role in biodiversity. They fertilise the soil and play a role in recycling of many minerals (e.g. carbon) in the environment. This helps in sustaining and improving human lives.

Conservation of Forests and Wildlife in India

Efforts of the Government towards Protecting Forests and Wildlife in India

WILDLIFE PROTECTION ACT 1972: The Indian Parliament enacted the Wildlife (Protection) Act in 1972, which provides for the safeguard and protection of the wildlife (flora and fauna) in the country. This Act provides for the protection of the country's wild animals, birds, and plant species, in order to ensure environmental and ecological security. Among other things, the Act lays down restrictions on hunting many animal species.

This Act provides for the protection of a listed species of animals, birds, and plants, and also for the establishment of a network of ecologically-important protected areas in the country.



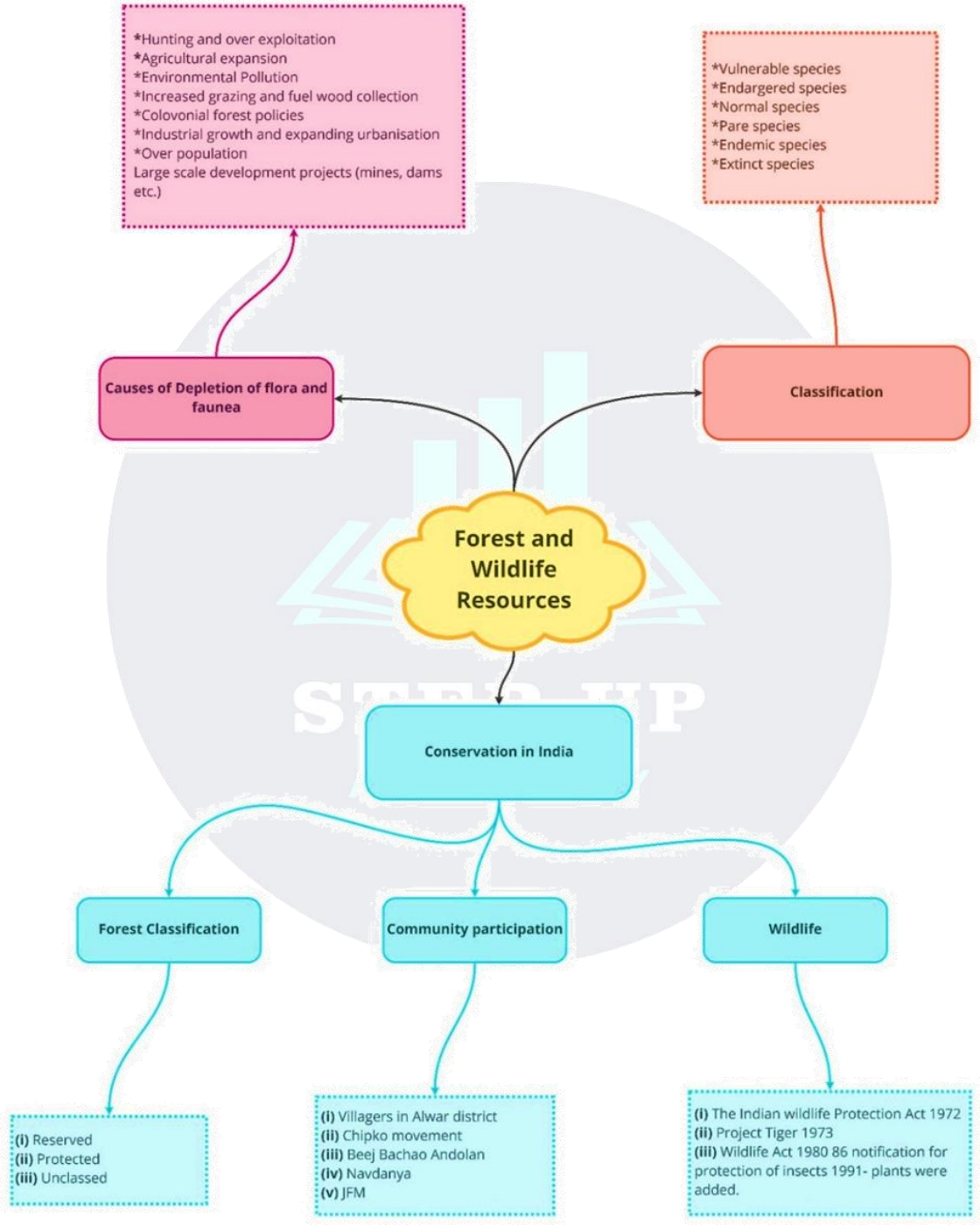
- In 1972, the Indian Wildlife Act was passed. In this Act, various provisions were made to preserve the endangered species of animals by banning hunting, restricting trade in wildlife and providing legal protection to wildlife habitats.
- As a result, many wildlife sanctuaries and national parks were established by the state and the Central Government to preserve the habitat of many wild animals.
- Many animals such as tigers, one-horned rhinoceros, saltwater crocodile, black buck and snow leopard have been give protection against hunting and trading in the country.
- Many conservation projects of the Government are now focusing on the preservation of biodiversity of the country rather than just protecting certain species of plants and animals.

Role of Communities towards Conservation



- In India, apart from the Government and Forest Departments, various communities have played an important role in conserving and protecting forests. The Chipko Movement was an example of communities coming together to save forests from the reckless felling by private contractors.
- Sacred groves are an example of the conservation of forests by tribal and village communities. Many forest areas are considered sacred by these communities, and any kind of activity or human interference in these patches of forests is banned.
- Similarly, villagers of the five villages in the Alwar district have declared 1,200 hectares of forests protected and do not allow any kind of interference, hunting or poaching in the forest area.
- In Sariska Tiger Reserve, Rajasthan, villagers have fought against mining by citing the Wildlife Protection Act.
- Mahua is worshipped by the the Mundas and the Santhal of Chota Nagpur region while tamarind and mango are worshipped by the tribes of Odisha and Bihar during weddings. In Indian Hindu society, peepal trees is considered sacred.
- Blackbuck, peacocks and nilgai are seen as an integral part of the Bishnoi villages in Rajasthan and aren't harmed or killed.
- Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya has promoted people to stop using synthetic chemicals as sufficient crop harvest can be produced even without the use of chemical fertilizers.
- **Joint Forest Management** is a programme in India which involves local communities in the management of forest lands. In this programme, local village communities undertake management of degraded parts of forests which are managed by the Forest Department. In return for their help, the communities are allowed to have a share in non-timber and timber products which are harvested by the joint efforts of the local communities and the Forest Departments. Odisha was the first state in India to pass the Joint Forest Management programme.

Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-2 : Forest and Wildlife Resources



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which one of the following is not considered a sacred tree in India [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Peepal
   (b) Neem
   (c) Banyan
   (d) Mango
2. Which one of the following is an example of endemic species? [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Nicobar Pigeon
   (b) Asiatic Buffalo
   (c) Horn Bill
   (d) Black buck
3. Periyar Tiger reserve is located in
   (a) Rajasthan
   (b) Uttar Pradesh
   (c) Tamil Nadu
   (d) Kerala
4. The Buxa Tiger Reserve in West Bengal has been threatened about the loss of habitat of many species due to
   (a) Industrial development
   (b) Agricultural expansion
   (c) Port activities
   (d) Mining
5. Which one of the following statements is not true with regard to depletion of flora and fauna?
   (a) Land required for housing
   (b) Agricultural expansion
   (c) Mining activities
   (d) Shifting agriculture
6. What was the aim of Chipko movement? [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Human rights
   (b) Political rights
   (c) Agricultural expansion
   (d) Forest conservation
7. Most of the forests in the North eastern states belong to the category of _____ .
   (a) Wastelands
   (b) Protected forests
   (c) Unclassed forests
   (d) Mangroves
8. The Mundas and Santhals of Chhota Nagpur region worship which one of the following trees?
   (a) Mahua
   (b) Mango
   (c) Peepal
   (d) Tamarind
9. Which of these statements is not a valid reason for the depletion of flora and fauna? (Textbook)
   (a) Agricultural expansion
   (b) Large-scale development projects
   (c) Grazing and fuel wood collection
   (d) Rapid industrialisation and urbanisation
10. Which of the following conservation strategies do not directly involve community participation? (Textbook)
    (a) Joint forest management
    (b) Beej Bachao Andolan
    (c) Chipko Movement
    (d) Demarcation of Wildlife Sanctuaries
11. The species which are in danger of extinction are called:
    (a) Vulnerable species
    (b) Rare species
    (c) Endangered species
    (d) Normal species
12. The forest cover in our country has recently increased due to:
    (a) Increase in natural forest growth
    (b) Increase in net sown area
    (c) Plantation by different agencies
    (d) None of the above

13. The species whose population has declined to a level from where it is likely to move into the endangered category in the near future if the negative factors continue to operate are called:
    (a) Endemic species
    (b) Extinct species
    (c) Vulnerable species
    (d) Normal species
14. The Himalayan brown bear is an example of:
    (a) Vulnerable species
    (b) Rare species
    (c) Endemic species
    (d) Extinct species
15. Substantial parts of the tribal belts in north¬eastern India, have been deforested by:
    (a) Shifting cultivation
    (b) Mining
    (c) Infrastructure development
    (d) None of the above

Very Short Questions-

1. Name any four Normal Species.
2. Name any four Endangered Species
3. Name any four Vulnerable Species
4. Name any four Rare Species
5. Name any four Endemic Species.
6. Name any four Extinct Species.
7. When and in which state was the program of joint forest management first adopted?
8. Which species of India's flora and fauna are on the verge of extinction?
9. Which state has the largest are under permanent forests?
10. What is the share of India in the total number of species in the world?

Short Questions-

1. How does deforestation affect eco system? Give two reasons.
2. Depletion of forests leads to disappearance of wild life as well as many wild varieties of plants. How is Afforestation helpful in maintaining ecological balance?
3. What is a National Park? Name any two national parks of India?
4. What is Wildlife Sanctuary? How is it different from National Park?
5. What are Biosphere Reserves?
6. Why is the Himalayan Yew in trouble?
7. What steps have been adopted under the Indian Wildlife Act to protect endangered species of animals?
8. What are the three types of forests as identified by Forest Department?
9. Large scale development projects have significantly to the loss of forests. Give reasons to support this statement.
10. How mining is responsible for the loss of forests. Give reasons.

Long Questions-

1. What were the views of foresters and environmentalists regarding the degrading factors behind the depletion of forest resources?
2. Write down the features of JFM.
3. What steps must be taken to preserve the natural vegetation?
4. What are the steps taken by Government to conserve flora and fauna of the country?
5. Highlight the trees and animals which are worshiped by Indian societies in different parts of India?
6. Write a short note on Beej Bachao Andolan in TehriNavdanya.
7. Mention the negative factors which since pre-independence to present period have contributed significantly to the fearful depletion of flora and fauna in India.
8. The destruction of forests and wildlife is not just a biological issue. The biological loss is strongly correlated with the loss of cultural diversity. Elucidate.

Assertion and Reason Questions-

1. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
    a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.

c) Assertion is correct statement, but reason is wrong statement.

d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

Assertion (A): Forests plays a key role in the ecological system.

Reason (R): Forest are the primary producers on which all other living beings depend.

2. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.

a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.

c) Assertion is correct statement but reason is wrong statement.

d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

Assertion (A): Neglect of our environment has led to the destruction and extinction of many species of animals and plant life.

Reason (R): Decreasing Forest cover area is a major reason of destruction of species.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: b
2. **Answer**: a
3. **Answer**: d
4. **Answer**: d
5. **Answer**: a
6. **Answer**: d
7. **Answer**: c
8. **Answer**: a
9. **Answer**: d
10. **Answer**: d
11. **Answer**: c
12. **Answer**: c
13. **Answer**: c
14. **Answer**: b
15. **Answer**: a

Very Short Answers-

1. **Ans.** Cattle, Sal, Pine and Rodent
2. **Ans.** Black Buck, crocodile, Indian Ass, Indian Rhino
3. **Ans.** Blue Sheep, Asiatic Elephant, Gangetic Dolphin.
4. **Ans.** Himalayan Brown Bear, Wild Asiatic Buffalo, desert Fox and Hornbill.
5. **Ans.** Andaman Teal, Nicobar Pigeon, Andaman Wild Pig, Mithun in Arunachal Pradesh.
6. **Ans.** . Asiatic Cheetah, Pink head Duck
7. **Ans.** . In 1988, in Odisha the program of joint forest management was first adopted.
8. **Ans.** Among the animals, the cheetah, Pink Headed Duck, Mountain Quail, Forest Spotted Owl etc. And among the plants, wild variety of Mahua (Madhuca Insignies), a wild species of grass (Hepaneuron) is on the threatened list.
9. **Ans.** . Madhya Pradesh
10. **Ans.** 8 per cent

Short Answers-

1. **Ans.**

1. Deforestation or cutting of trees affecting the eco system in many ways. It is responsible for climatic change.
2. It accelerates soil erosion and affects underground flow of water deforestation.

2. **Ans.**

1. Afforestation plays a major role in enhancing the quality of environment. They modify local climate. They influence air temperature and reduce wind forces.
2. Afforestation helps in controlling soil erosion.
3. It provides natural environment for wild life.
4. Afforestation helps in enhancing the quality of rainfall.

3. Ans.

1. A national Park is relatively a large area where several ecosystems exist freely and are not disturbed materially by human exploitation and occupation, and where plants and animal species, aesthetic sites and habitats are of special scientific, educational and recreational interest.
2. There are 89 National parks in the country. The Corbett national Park in Uttarakhand.
3. Dudwa National Park in U.P.

4. Ans.

1. A wildlife sanctuary is like a national park but the difference is that in a sanctuary certain types of activates might be permitted. Livestock grazing and collection of forest produce, for instance, may be allowed.
2. In a national park, conservation of species is mostly left to nature, with the least human activities, but in a sanctuary conservation of species is affected by manipulative management.

5. Ans.

1. Biosphere Reserves are multipurpose protected areas created to deal with the issue of conservation of bio-diversity and sustainable use.
2. In a biosphere reserves, local communities, management agencies, scientists, cultural groups and non government agencies work together to manage and substantially develop the area resources.
3. Here even agricultural activities are allowed to the local communities and bonafide employment is provided to them. Tourism is allowed to boost revenue.

6. Ans.

1. The Himalayan Yew, locally known as the Thuner is a medicinal plant. Its biological name is Texus wallachiana.
2. It is found in certain parts of Himachal Pradesh and Arunachal Pradesh.
3. This wonder plant has a chemical compound taxol which is extracted from its twigs, roots, bark and needles. This chemical is used to manufacture a drug which is used to manufacture a drug which is the largest anti-cancer drug in the world today
4. Over the past 10 years this plant has been over-exploited resulting in drying up of trees which could have survived and served their use for more years.

7. Ans.

1. In response to the conservationist's demand for national wildlife protection program in 1960s and 1970s, the Indian Wildlife Protection Act was implemented in 1972.
2. It contained many provisions for protecting habitats. The main focus was on protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species.
3. For this to be accomplished hunting was banned, legal protection was given to their habitats and trade in wildlife was restricted.
4. National parks and wildlife sanctuaries was setup.

8. Ans.

1. Reserved Forests: These are the forests which are permanently earmarked for production of either timber or other forest produce.
2. Protected Forests: As the name indicates these forests are protected from further depletion.
3. Unclassed Forests: This consists of inaccessible forests or unoccupied wastes.

9. Ans.

1. Large-scale development projects have also contributed significantly to the loss of forests.
2. Since 1951, over 5,000 sq km of forest was cleared for river valley projects.
3. Clearing of forests is still continuing with projects like the Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh, which would inundate 40,000 hectares of forests.

10. Ans.

1. Mining is important factor behind deforestation.
2. The Buxa Tiger Reserve in west Bengal is seriously threatened by the ongoing dolomite mining.
3. It has disturbed the natural habitat of many species and blocked the migration route of several others, including the great Indian Elephant.

Long Answers-

1. Ans.

1. Manu foresters and environmentalists hold the view that the greatest degrading factors behind the depletion of forests resources are grazing and fuel wood collection.
2. Though there may be some substance in their argument, yet, the fact remain that a substantial part of the fodder demand is met by lopping rather than by felling entire trees.
3. The forest ecosystems are repositories of some of the country's most valuable forest products, minerals and other resources that meet the demands of the rapidly expanding industrial-urban economy.
4. These protected areas, thus mean different things to different people, and therein lays the fertile ground for conflicts.

2. Ans.

1. In India Joint Forest Management program furnishes a good example for involving local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests.
2. The program has been in formal existence since 988 when the state of Orissa passed the first resolution for joint forest management.
3. JFM depends on the formation of local (village) institutions that undertake protection activities mostly on degraded forest land managed by the forest department.
4. In return, the members of these communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non timber forest produces and share in the timber harvested by successful protection.

3. Ans.

1. Cutting of the trees in the forests must be stopped. The government has taken adequate steps in this direction. Forest department has been created for this purpose. Laws have been implemented to punish the persons who are found guility of cutting of trees. Awareness among the people is more important. Without this awareness result cannot be satisfactory.
2. The people must cooperate to check the feeling of trees. Their active participation is most important in this regard. Many persons have must come forward for this task.
3. Necessary wood for industrial purposes and for other activities must be acquired in a well planned manner, so that industrial growth and environment protection both can be achieved.
4. Wherever the trees have been cut for any reason, new saplings of trees must be planted to maintain the ecological balance.
5. Festivals like Vanmahotsava should be celebrated everywhere. It would help in growing the awareness.

4. Ans.

1. To protect flora and fauna, the Indian wildlife protection Act was implemented in 1972, with various provisions for protecting habitats.
2. An all–India list of protected species was also published. The thrust of the program was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitats and restricting trade in wildlife.
3. Central and many stage governments established national parks and wildlife sanctuaries.
4. The central government announced several projects for protecting specific animals, which were gravely threatened, including the tiger, the one horned rhinoceros, the Kashmir stag or hangul, three types of crocodile-freshwater crocodile, saltwater crocodile and the Gharial, the Asiatic lion, and others.
5. Most recently, the Indian elephant, black buck, the great Indian bustard and the snow leopard, etc. have been full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India.

5. Ans.

1. The Mundas and the Santhals of Chhota Nagpur region worship the mahua and kadamba tree.

2. The tribals of Orissa and Bihar worship the tamarind and mango trees during auspicious accessions such as weddings.
3. The peepal and banyan tree are considered sacred all over the country.
4. Certain animals such as macaques and langurs are treated as a part of temple devotees.
5. In Rajasthan nilgai, peocock and chinkara are an important part of the community and no one can think of harming them

6. Ans.

1. Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya-Save the seed movement searches, reintroduces, collects, tests, distributes and popularizes every indigenous variety of mountain crops available.
2. It has also been able to successfully revive the free exchange of seeds within the community and has proved to be a lifeline of traditional mountain agriculture.
3. It advocates the discontinuation of the use of chemical dependent seeds and synthetic chemicals.
4. These measures, they argue, are also economically viable as diversified crop production in adequate quantities have been achieved.

7. Ans.

1. Colonial forest policies were responsible for depletion of forests, as enrichment plantation which promoted a few favoured species eliminated the others.
2. Between 1951 and 1980 large areas of forests were transformed into agricultural land. It is estimated that more than 26,200 sq. km of forest area was used for this purpose.
3. Expansion of railways, commercial and scientific forestry, mining activities and agriculture have contributed toward depletion of flora and fauna.
4. Agricultural practices such as slash and burn popular in the tribal belts have also contributed towards depletion of flora and fauna.
5. Development projects such as the Narmada Sagar Project in Madhya Pradesh have also led to the loss of forests.

8. Ans.

1. Deforestation and destruction of wildlife is not just a simple problem. It has other related issues. This biological loss correlates highly with the loss of cultural diversity.
2. These losses have had a deep and lasting impact on the forest dependent communities. These indigenous communities are directly dependent on forests for their food, medicines, spirituality and other needs. Due to deforestation these communities have become marginalized and impoverished.
3. Here again women are more affected than man. In most societies women shoulder the responsibilities of collection of basic substance needs such as fuel, fodder, water, etc.
4. Women faces sever drudgery if their resources get depleted or scare and their health deteriorates as they have to traverse long distances to collect these resources.
5. Deforestation also leads to floods and drought which hits the economically backward strata very hard. This includes more poverty.

Assertion and Reason Answers-

1. a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

Explanation: The plants, animals and micro-organisms re-create the quality of the air we breathe, the water we drink and the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive. Thus, we are very much dependent on this system for our own existence.

2. a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

Explanation: Vanishing forests are the major reason for the extinction of species of animals and plant life. Thus, neglecting our environment has led to dire consequences.

Water Resources 3

Water Resources

Water is one of the most important resources on the Earth. Although 71% of the total surface of the Earth is covered with water, only 1% of freshwater is available for direct human use. Evaporation of water from oceans and precipitation in the form of rainfall-parts of the water cycle-ensure the continuous availability of freshwater. However, water is becoming a scarce resource. India is facing an acute shortage of water supply. India receives about 4% of the global precipitation and ranks 133 in the world in terms of availability of water per person in a year.

Reasons for Scarcity of Water in India

The following reasons can be attributed to the scarcity of water in India:

- A large and **growing population** has resulted in the scarcity of water resources in the country.
- To provide food resources for such a vast population, water resources are overused to irrigate agricultural fields. Indiscriminate use of wells and tube wells has led to a considerable decline in the water table.
- The establishment of various industries has resulted in the further exploitation of water resources. The discharge of industrial effluents has also degraded the quality of water.
- In India, generation of hydroelectricity on a large scale has also put pressure on the water resources.
- Urban centres have multiplied in the country. Many houses and housing societies have their own independent boring devices. This has further depleted the water table.
- In India, many places or regions may have sufficient water resources but may still suffer from water scarcity. This may be because of the deterioration in the quality of drinking water. Disposal of household and industrial wastes and the use of insecticides and pesticides in agriculture may result in worsening of the quality of water.

Multi-purpose River Projects

Multi-purpose projects, launched after Independence with their integrated water resources management approach, were thought of as the vehicle that would lead the nation to development and progress, overcoming the handicap of its colonial past. Multi-purpose projects and large dams have been the cause of many new social movements like the Narmada Bachao Andolan and the Tehri Dam Andolan etc. Local people often had to give up their land, livelihood and their meagre access and control over resources for the greater good of the nation.



Hirakud Dam

DAMS: A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment. "Dam" refers to the reservoir rather than the structure.

Main objectives or Advantages of Multipurpose Project:

- **Generation of Power:** They produce neat, pollution free and cheapest energy which is the back bone of industry and agriculture. According to the economic survey 2005-06 these produce more than 30,000 M.W. power.
- **Flood Control:** These projects control the flood because water can be stored in them. These projects have converted many 'rivers of sorrow' into river of boon. Example River Kosi.
- **Soil Conservation:** These conserve the soil because they slow down the speed of water.
- **Irrigation:** They irrigate the fields during the dry seasons. Many canals have been dug and they irrigate dry areas.
- **Afforestation:** Trees are systematically planted in and around reservoirs. This helps in preserving "Wild life" and natural ecosystem.
- **Water Navigation:** They provide for Inland water navigation through main river or canal. It is the cheapest means of transport for heavy goods.
- **Fisheries:** These provide ideal condition for the breeding of fish. Choosen varieties of fish are allowed to grow.
- **Tourist Centres:** These projects are well cared and are scientifically developed. So these become the centre of tourist attraction.

Negative Impact of Building Big Dams

At present, many big dams are constructed in our country. These are called multipurpose dams as they help in the generation of electricity and provide water for irrigation and industrial uses. Recently, these multipurpose dams have come under attacks from environmentalists because of the following reasons:

- Damming of rivers and regulating their flow result in excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir. This may hamper aquatic life and their migration to other water bodies.
- Building of dams result in the submergence of land and vegetation. This results in the decomposition of vegetation.
- Construction of large dams results in the displacement of villagers and communities. The villagers have to give up their lands and their means of livelihood.
- Large forest areas are also submerged because of the building of dams. This threatens our biodiversity.
- As dams provide water for irrigation, intensive irrigation leads to salinity of soil.
- Frequently, the water in large dams is used for the benefit of the urban population and the rural population is often left out. This further widens the gap between the rich and the poor.
- Dams which were initially built to control floods are now causing floods because of sedimentation. In case of excessive rainfall, the release of water from dams often floods the area, causing damage to lives and property.
- Land degradation, water-borne diseases and pollution are some other effects of building large dams.
- It has been stressed that it is more beneficial to build small check dams and small reservoirs in order to deal with the problem of water scarcity. It not only provides water for irrigation at the time of need but also recharges groundwater.

NARMADA BACHAO ANDOLAN or Save Narmada Movement is a Non Governmental Organisation (NGO) that mobilised tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and human rights activists against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada river in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerged under the dam water. Recently it has re-focused the aim to enable poor citizens, especially the oustees (displaced people) to get full rehabilitation facilities from the government.

Hydraulic Structures in Ancient India



- In the first century B.C., Sringaverapura near Allahabad had sophisticated water harvesting system channeling the flood water of the river Ganga.
- During the time of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built.
- Evidences of sophisticated irrigation works have also been found in Kalinga,(Odisha), Nagarjunakonda (Andhra Pradesh), Bennur (Karnataka), Kolhapur(Maharashtra), etc.
- In the 11th Century, Bhopal Lake, one of the largest artificial lakes of its time was built.
- In the 14th Century, the tank in Hauz Khas, Delhi was constructed by Iltutmish for supplying water to Siri Fort area.

Rainwater Harvesting

Rainwater harvesting is a technique of collecting and storing rainwater for domestic use. It is done in the following ways:

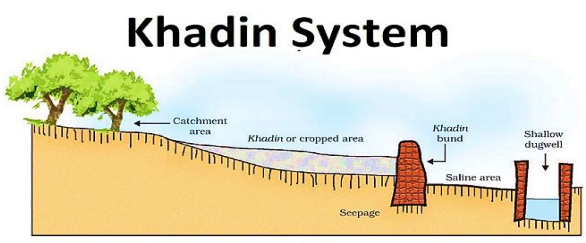


- Rainwater on the rooftop is first collected using a PVC pipe. Water is then filtered by using sand and bricks.
- Water is then taken down either to a sump (a hollow structure or a depression where liquids collect) for immediate use or to a well or any other structure which is dug in the premises of a house.
- Water from this well can be used later for domestic consumption. It also recharges the water table.

India has a long tradition of water harvesting. The technique differed from regions to regions and was also called by different names. Rain roof water harvesting was practised in Rajasthan and in Bengal. Long canals were taken out from large rivers which received water during flooding of the river (inundation canals) in dry regions of western India. Agricultural fields were converted into rain-fed storage structures. This helped the soil to gain moisture. In Rajasthan, many houses had underground storage tanks (known as 'tanka'). Rainwater from the sloping roofs of the house was collected into these underground tanks through pipes.

Rainwater harvesting is one of the most important methods to deal with the scarcity of water. It not only provides water for domestic use during the summer but also recharges the water table.

Different methods have been adopted in different areas for Rain Water Harvesting.



- In hill and mountainous regions, people have built diversion channels like the 'guls' or 'kuls' of the Western Himalayas for agriculture.
- "Rooftop rainwater harvesting" is commonly practised to store drinking water, particularly in Rajasthan.
- In the flood plains of Bengal, people developed inundation channels to irrigate their fields.

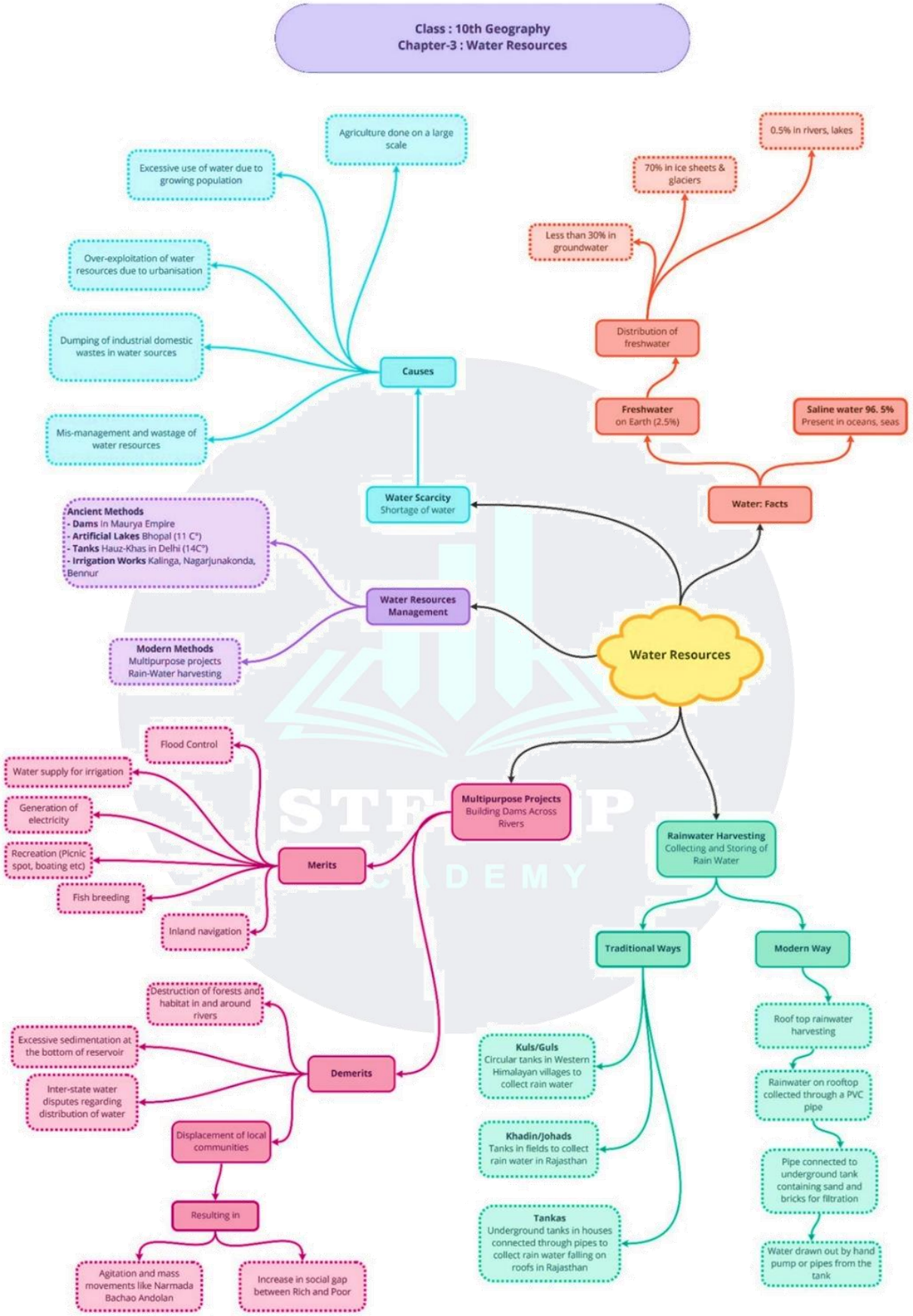
- In arid and semi-arid regions, agricultural fields were converted into rain-fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil such as 'khadins' in Jaisalmer and 'Johads' in other parts of Rajasthan.



- The tankas are part of the well-developed rooftop rainwater harvesting system and are built inside the main house or the courtyard. This is mainly practised in Rajasthan, particularly in Bikaner, Phalodi and Barmer areas for saving the rainwater. Many houses have constructed underground rooms adjoining the 'tanka' to beat the summer heat as it would keep the room cool.
- Tamil Nadu is the first state in India which has made rooftop rainwater harvesting structure compulsory to all the houses across the state. There are legal provisions to punish the defaulters.



India: Major Rivers and Dams


Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-3 : Water Resources
Water Resources
Causes
Agriculture done on a large scale
Excessive use of water due to growing population
Over-exploitation of water resources due to urbanisation
Dumping of industrial domestic wastes in water sources
Mis-management and wastage of water resources
Water Scarcity
Shortage of water
Water: Facts
Distribution of freshwater
0.5% in rivers, lakes
70% in ice sheets & glaciers
Less than 30% in groundwater
Freshwater on Earth (2.5%)
Saline water 96. 5%
Present in oceans, seas
Water Resources Management
Ancient Methods
- Dams in Maurya Empire
- Artificial Lakes Bhopal (11 C°)
- Tanks Hauz-Khas in Delhi (14C°)
- Irrigation Works Kalinga, Nagarjunakonda, Bennur
Modern Methods
Multipurpose projects
Rain-Water harvesting
Multipurpose Projects
Building Dams Across Rivers
Merits
Flood Control
Water supply for irrigation
Generation of electricity
Recreation (Picnic spot, boating etc)
Fish breeding
Inland navigation
Demerits
Destruction of forests and habitat in and around rivers
Excessive sedimentation at the bottom of reservoir
Inter-state water disputes regarding distribution of water
Displacement of local communities
Resulting in
Agitation and mass movements like Narmada Bachao Andolan
Increase in social gap between Rich and Poor
Rainwater Harvesting
Collecting and Storing of Rain Water
Traditional Ways
Modern Way
Kuls/Guls
Circular tanks in Western Himalayan villages to collect rain water
Khadin/Johads
Tanks in fields to collect rain water in Rajasthan
Tankas
Underground tanks in houses connected through pipes to collect rain water falling on roofs in Rajasthan
Roof top rainwater harvesting
Rainwater on rooftop collected through a PVC pipe
Pipe connected to underground tank containing sand and bricks for filtration
Water drawn out by hand pump or pipes from the tank

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which one of the following is not the cause of water scarcity? [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Rapid growth of population
   (b) Uneven distribution of water resources
   (c) Construction of dams and reserves
   (d) Increase in demand
2. Which state has made roof top rainwater harvesting structure compulsory to all the houses across the state? [CBSE 2011]
   (a) Kerala
   (b) Karnataka
   (c) Tamil Nadu
   (d) Andhra Pradesh
3. Which one of the following is not the example of Hydraulic structures in Ancient India?
   (a) Bhopal Lake
   (b) Lake Hauz Kauz
   (c) Construction of dams, Lakes
   (d) Damodar Valley Project
4. Oceans contain _____ volume of water.
   (a) 90 percent
   (b) 75 percent
   (c) 96.5 percent
   (d) 98 percent
5. Water is a renewable resource because
   (a) it is being recycled by human beings.
   (b) it is renewed and recharged through hydrological cycle.
   (c) it is being renewed through reduction.
   (d) it can be reused again.
6. Water scarcity occurs due to
   (i) low rainfall in a region
   (ii) large population
   (iii) over-exploitation
   (iv) unequal access
   (a) (i) and (ii)
   (b) (ii) and (iii)
   (c) (i) and (iv)
   (d) All of the above
7. In semi-arid regions of Rajasthan the traditional system of storing drinking water in underground tanks are called
   (a) Dugwells
   (b) Johads
   (c) Tankas
   (d) None of the above
8. Nagaijuna Sagar Dam is located in the state of
   (a) Orissa
   (b) Karnataka
   (c) Kerala
   (d) Andhra Pradesh
9. On which river is the Bhakra Nangal Dam located?
   (a) Jhelum
   (b) Chambal
   (c) Satluj
   (d) Chenab
10. The diversion channels of the Western Himalayas are called
    (a) Canals
    (b) Inundation channels
    (c) Kuls
    (d) Khadins
11. Which one of the following statements is not an argument in favour of multi-purpose river projects? (Textbook)
    (a) Multi-purpose projects bring water to those areas which suffer from water scarcity.
    (b) Multi-purpose projects by regulating water flow help to control floods.
    (c) Multi-purpose projects lead to large-scale displacements and loss of livelihood.
    (d) Multi-purpose projects generate electricity for our industries and our homes.

12. Which is not a source of fresh water?
    (a) Glaciers and ice sheets
    (b) Groundwater
    (c) Surface run off
    (d) Oceans
13. According to Falkan Mark, water stress occurs when:
    (a) water availability is less than 1000 cubic metre per person per day.
    (b) there is no water scarcity.
    (c) there is flood.
    (d) water availability is more than 1000 cubic metre per person per dayd
14. Which of the following are not causes of water scarcity?
    (a) Growing population
    (b) Growing of water intensive crop
    (c) Expansion of irrigation facilities
    (d) Individual wells and tubewells in farms
    (e) Water harvesting technique
    (f) Industries
    (g) Roof top harvesting system
15. Bhakra Nangal River Valley Project is made on the river:
    (a) Sutlej-Beas
    (b) Ravi-Chenab
    (c) Ganga
    (d) Son

Very Short Questions-

1. What kind of resource is water
2. How much world's water exists as oceans and fresh water?
3. Which are the sources of freshwater?
4. Which is the major source of freshwater in India?
5. Mention two causes of water scarcity.
6. How much hydroelectric power is produced in India?
7. State any one reason for conservation of water resources.
8. State any two sources from which freshwater can be obtained under the hydrological cycle.
9. In whose kingdom in ancient India, dams and lakes were built?
10. What is a dam?

Short Questions-

1. Why water is considered as What renewable resource?
2. How to revolutionise the agriculture and why?
3. What is the role of urban centers in water scarcity?
4. What is the main cause of water scarcity?
5. Why people are suffering from water scarcity when there is sufficient supply of water?
6. What is the advantages and disadvantages of MULTI-PURPOSE RIVER PROJECTS?
7. What is dams? What are types of dams?
8. What are the effects of Regulating and damming of rivers?
9. Why the Sabarmati-basin farmers in Gujrat, were agitated?
10. What is the dispute between Karnataka, Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra?

Long Questions-

1. How have intensive industrialization and urbanization posed a great pressure on existing fresh water resources in India. Explain.
2. Explain any three reasons responsible for water scarcity in India?

   OR

   Water is available in abundance in India even then scarcity of water is experienced in major parts of the country. Explain it with four examples.
3. What is rainwater harvesting? How was it used in ancient times?

   Or

   How is rainwater harvesting carried out in semi-arid regions of Rajasthan? Explain.

   Or

   What is rainwater harvesting? Explain any two different methods of rainwater harvesting in different regions of India.

Or

Why are different water harvesting systems considered a viable alternative both socio-economically and environmentally in a country like India ?

4. Describe the factors that are responsible for the poor condition of India's rivers – both smaller and big rivers.

Assertion Reason Questions-

1. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.

   (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

   (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

   (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

   (d) Assertion is false but reason is true.

   Assertion: Ground water is a highly overused resource

   Reason: Groundwater is used for domestic and drinking purposes.

2. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.

   (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

   (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

   (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

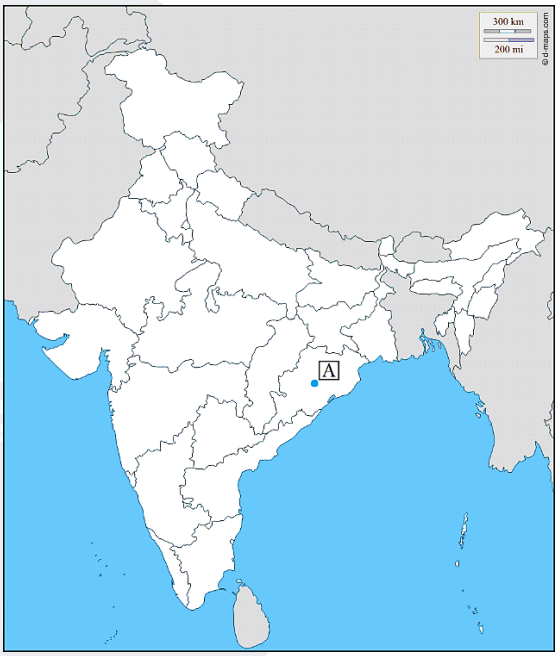
   (d) Assertion is false but reason is true.

   Assertion : The availability of water resources varies over space and time.

   Reason : Availability of water resources helps in storing water.

Map Question:

1. If you intend to visit Hirakund dam marked on the map as A, which one of the following states are you going to?



   a. Tamil Nadu.

   b. Rajasthan.

   c. Telangana.

   d. Odisha.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: c
2. **Answer**: c
3. **Answer**: d
4. **Answer**: c
5. **Answer**: b
6. **Answer**: d
7. **Answer**: c
8. **Answer**: d
9. **Answer**: c

10. **Answer**: c
11. **Answer**: c
12. **Answer**: d
13. **Answer**: a
14. **Answer**: (e) and (g)
15. **Answer**: a

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer**: Renewable resource.
2. **Answer**:
   - As oceans – 96.5 per cent.
   - As freshwater – 2.5 per cent.
3. **Answer**:
   - Precipitation
   - Surface run off
   - Groundwater.
4. **Answer**: Groundwater.
5. **Answer**:
   - Rapid growth of population.
   - Uneven distribution of water resources.
6. **Answer**: In India hydroelectric power contributes approximately 22 per cent of the total electricity produced.
7. **Answer**: To ensure food security because water is needed for production of crops.
8. **Answer**:
   - Precipitation.
   - Ground water.
9. **Answer**: During the time of Chandragupta Maurya, dams, lakes and irrigation systems were extensively built.
10. **Answer**: A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment.

Short Answers-

1. **Ans**. Freshwater is mainly obtained from surface run off and ground water that is continually being renewed and recharged through the hydrological cycle. All water moves within the hydrological cycle ensuring that water is a renewable resource.
2. **Ans**. Irrigated agriculture is the largest consumer of water. That is why,it is needed to revolutionise the agriculture through developing drought resistant crops and dry farming techniques so that requirement of water will be decreased.
3. **Ans**. The housing societies or colonies in the cities, have their own groundwater pumping devices to meet their water needs and that leads over exploitation of water and decrease the water quality also by domestic and industrial wastes, chemicals etc.
4. **Ans**. The availability of water resources varies over space and time, mainly due to the variations in seasonal and annual precipitation, but water scarcity in most cases is caused by over-exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.
5. **Ans**. Where water is sufficiently available to meet the needs of the people, but, the area still suffers from water scarcity, this is due to bad quality of water.
6. **Ans**. There are few advantages of multi-purpose river projects such as electricity generation, water supply for irrigation, domestic and industrial uses , flood control ,recreation, inland navigation and fish breeding etc. but in long terms there are lots of disadvantages of these kind projects. These projects causing poor sediment flow ,excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the reservoir, poorer habitats for the rivers aquatic life. It was also observed that the multi-purpose projects induced earthquakes, caused water-borne diseases and pests and pollution resulting from excessive use of water.
7. **Ans**. A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir, lake or impoundment. Dams are classified as timber dams, embankment dams or masonry dams, with several subtypes. According to the height, dams can be categorised as large dams and major dams or alternatively as low dams, medium height dams and high dams.
8. **Ans**. Regulating and damming of rivers affect their natural flow causing poor sediment flow and excessive sedimentation at the bottom of the

reservoir, resulting in rockier stream beds and poorer habitats for the rivers aquatic life. Dams also fragment rivers making it difficult for aquatic fauna to migrate, especially for spawning.

9. **Ans**. In Gujarat, the Sabarmati-basin farmers were agitated and almost caused a riot over the higher priority given to water supply in urban areas, particularly during droughts.

10. **Ans**. Krishna-Godavari dispute is due to the objections raised by Karnataka and It is regarding the diversion of more water at Koyna by the Maharashtra government for a multipurpose project. This would reduce downstream flow in their states with adverse consequences for agriculture and industry.

Long Answers-

1. Answer

- Large scale industrialisation and urbanisation have posed a great pressure on existing fresh water resources as many multinational companies are being set up in India who are the heavy consumers of water for processing, discharge of effluents and as an energy resource.
- Hydroelectricity produced for industrial units have not only posed a great threat to the availability of fresh water resources but also contributed to bad quality of water with large growing number of urban centres and population.
- Modern lifestyle of the urban people has created more demand for water both for domestic purposes and increased consumption of energy.
- In housing colonies to meet the needs of population, water resources are over-exploited resulting in depletion of ground water resources.
- Fresh water needs to be protected from industrial pollution and wastage of water in cities.

2. Answer

- The availability of water resources varies over space and time, mainly due to the variations in seasonal and annual precipitation.
- Over-exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.
- Water scarcity may be an outcome of large and growing population and consequent greater demands for water. A large population means more water to produce more food. Hence, to facilitate higher food-grain production, water resources are being over exploited to expand irrigated areas for dry-season agriculture.
- Most farmers have their own wells and tubewells in their farms for irrigation to increase their production. But it may lead to falling groundwater levels, adversely affecting water availability and food security of the people. Thus, inspite of abundant water there is water scarcity.

3. Answer

(1) Rainwater harvesting is a technique of increasing the recharge of groundwater by capturing and storing rainwater by constructing structures, such as dugwells, percolation pits, checkdams.

(2) Keeping into view the disadvantages and rising resistance against the multi-purpose projects, water harvesting system is considered a viable alternative both socio-economically and environmentally.

(3) **Ancient Times :**

1. In ancient India, along with the sophisticated hydraulic structures, there existed an extraordinary tradition of water-harvesting system.
2. People had in-depth knowledge of rainfall regimes and soil types.
3. They had developed wide ranging techniques to harvest rainwater, groundwater, river water and flood water in keeping with the local ecological conditions and their water needs.

4. In hilly and mountainous regions, people built diversion channels like the 'guls' or 'kuls' of the western Himalayas for agriculture. Rooftop rainwater harvesting wras commonly practised to store drinking water.
5. In the flood plains of Bengal, people developed inundation channels to irrigate their fields.
6. In arid and semi-arid regions, agricultural fields were converted into rain fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil like the 'Khadins' in Jaisalmer and 'Johads' in other parts of Rajasthan.
7. In Bikaner, Phalodi and Barmer, almost all the houses had underground tanks for storing drinking water.

4. **Answer:** The following factors are responsible for the poor condition of India's rivers :

(1) Smaller rivers :

1. The growing domestic, municipal, industrial and agricultural demand it water from rivers has affected the quality of water. The volume of rivers has been reduced as more and more water is being drained out of them.
2. A heavy load of untreated sewage and industrial effluents are emptied into the rivers. This also affects the self-cleansing capacity of the rivers leading to rising pollution of their water. As a result of above factors, the smaller rivers have all turned into toxic streams.

(2) Big rivers : These rivers have been affected by the following factors :

1. Population growth
2. Agricultural modernisation
3. Urbanisation
4. Industrialisation : Industries are heavy users of water and also require hydroelectric power to run them.

For example in Delhi, a large amount of domestic and industrial waste falls in the Yamuna river that leads to water pollution. Thus, even the big"rivers like the Ganga and Yamuna are far from being pure and efforts are being made to clean the rivers.

Map Answer:

1. (d) Odisha.

Assertion Reason Answer-

1. (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
2. (c) Assertion is true but reason is false.

Agriculture 4

India is predominantly an agricultural country. Two-thirds of its population is engaged in agricultural activities. Agriculture is a primary activity as it produces not only the food which we directly consume but also the raw materials which are used in various industries.

Types of Farming

In India, various kinds of agricultural practices are followed.

Primitive Subsistence Farming



- This type of farming is also known as 'slash and burn agriculture'. Farmers first clear a patch of forest land by burning plants and trees. Food crops are then grown on this patch of land.
- Farming is carried out on small land holdings with primitive or age-old tools such as hoe and digging sticks.
- When the fertility of the soil decreases, another patch of land is cleared for cultivation.
- Because fertilisers and modern tools of cultivation are not used in this type of farming, the production is low. This type of farming is also known as shifting cultivation and is also known by different names in different parts of the country.

JHUMMING: The 'slash and burn' agriculture is known as 'Milpa' in Mexico and Central America, 'Conuco' in Venzuela, 'Roca' in Brazil, 'Masole' in Central Africa, 'Ladang' in Indonesia, 'Ray' in Vietnam. In India, this primitive form of cultivation is called 'Bewar' or 'Dahiya' in Madhya Pradesh, 'Podu' or 'Penda' in Andhra Pradesh, 'Pama Dabi' or 'Koman' or Bringa' in Odisha, 'Kumari' in Western Ghats, 'Valre' or 'Waltre' in South-eastern Rajasthan, 'Khil' in the Himalayan belt, 'Kuruwa' in Jharkhand, and 'Jhumming' in the North-eastern region. It is jhumming in north-eastern states like Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland; Pamlou in Manipur, Dipa in Bastar district of Chhattishgarh, and in Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

Intensive Subsistence Farming

- It is labour-intensive farming and is generally carried out in areas of high population.
- Because the land holdings are not large, farmers use fertilisers and irrigate the fields to increase the productivity of land.

Commercial Farming

- In this type of farming, the land holding is comparatively large. High-yielding variety seeds, pesticides and insecticides are used in order to increase production.



Banana plantation in Southern part of India



Bamboo plantation in North-east

- Plantation is also a type of commercial farming. In plantations, a single crop is grown on a large area. Huge capital is invested, and fertilisers and irrigation methods are used to increase the productivity of land. The produce of the plantations is used as a raw material in various industries. Tea, coffee and rubber are some important plantation crops.
- The plantation fields are well connected with industries, transport and well-laid roads as plantation crops are mainly produced for the consumption by the markets.

In India, there are three main types of cropping seasons. They are rabi, kharif and zaid.

Types of Cropping Seasons	Sowing Period	Harvesting Period	Main Crops or Fruits	Seasonal Conditions
Rabi	Winter (October–December)	Summer (April– June)	Wheat, barley, peas, gram, mustard	Rainfall during the winter months in northern India because of western temperate cyclones helps in the growth of crops.
Kharif	Beginning of monsoon (July)	September– October	Rice, maize, jowar, groundnut, tur, cotton	Much needed moisture is provided by the monsoon rains in India.
Zaid	March–April	May–June	Watermelon, cucumber, vegetables, fodder crops	These crops are grown between the rabi and kharif seasons. They require warm weather to grow.

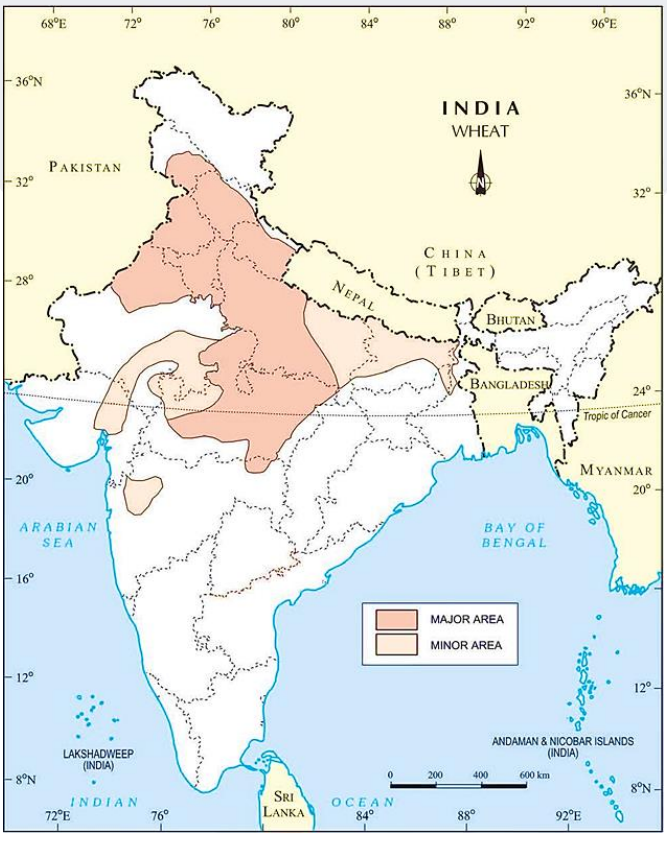
Major Crops

In India, many food and non-food crops are grown in different parts of the country.

Rice: It is a staple food crop of majority of the people of India. It is a kharif crop which is grown extensively in the northern plains, northeastern parts of the country and coastal and deltaic regions. Rice requires high temperature (above 25°C) and high rainfall (above 100 cm). India is the second largest producer of rice in the world after China.



Wheat: This is another important crop in India. It is the main food crop consumed by people living mainly in north and northwestern parts of the country. It is a rabi crop which requires cool climate. It requires about 50–75 cm of rainfall evenly distributed throughout the growing period. The Ganga Satluj plains in the northwest and the black soil region in the Deccan are the two main wheat-growing belts in the country. Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar and Rajasthan are major wheat-producing states.



Millets: Jowar, bajra and ragi are some important millets which are grown in India. These have high nutritional value. Ragi is rich in calcium and iron. It is grown in the dry regions of Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand and Sikkim. Jowar is the third most important food crop grown in India in regard to production. It is grown in the humid areas of Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka and Madhya Pradesh. Bajra grows on sandy soils. Maharashtra, Uttar Pradesh and Rajasthan are major producers of bajra.



Rice



Wheat



Millets

Maize: It is a food and a fodder crop. It is a kharif crop (it grows in the rabi season in Bihar) and requires temperatures between 21°C and 27°C. It grows well in the old alluvial soil. Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Andhra Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh are some important maize-growing states.

Pulses: Major pulses grown in India are tur, urad, moong, peas and gram. Pulses can be grown even in dry conditions. With the exception of tur, all pulses are leguminous crops which help in restoring nitrogen to the soil. Thus, they are grown in rotation with the other crops. India is the largest producer and consumer of pulses in the world. Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Karnataka are major producers of pulses in the country.

Sugarcane: It grows well in the tropical and sub-tropical regions. It requires temperatures between 21°C and 27°C and rainfall up to 100 cm annually. It is a labour-intensive crop. India is the second largest producer of sugarcane in the world after Brazil. Apart from sugar, *khandsari*, *gur* and molasses are some important products of sugarcane. Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka and Andhra Pradesh are some important sugarcane-producing states.



Maize



Pulses



Sugarcane

Oil Seeds: Groundnuts, mustard, coconut, sesame, cotton seeds and sunflower seeds are some important oil seeds which are grown in India. Most of these seeds are used in cooking. Some seeds are also used as raw materials for the manufacturing of soaps, cosmetics and ointments. Gujarat and Andhra Pradesh are two major producers of groundnuts in India.



Tea: It is plantation labour-intensive crop. It grows well on well-drained fertile soil in tropical and sub- tropical regions. It requires warm and moist-free climate throughout the year. It requires rainfall spread throughout the year. Frost is extremely harmful to plants. In India, tea is grown in Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala.

Coffee: India is known for growing the Arabica brand of coffee. In India, coffee is grown in Karnataka, Kerala and Tamil Nadu.



Tea



Coffee

Horticulture

The cultivation of fruits, flowers and vegetables is known as horticulture. India is known for producing varieties of fruits such as mango, litchi, grape and guava. India produces about 13% of the world's vegetables.

- Mangoes: Many varieties of mangoes lie Safeda, Dussehri, Langda, Sindoori, etc. are grown in Maharashtra, U.P., Andhra Pradesh and West Bengal.
- Oranges: Nagpur and Cherrapunjee are famous for orange varieties of India.
- Bananas of various qualities are grown in Kerala, Mizoram, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu.
- Lichi and Guava are famous in parts of Uttar Pradesh, Uttarakhand and Bihar.
- Pineapple in Meghalaya and Grapes are grown in Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra.
- Apples, pears, apricots and walnuts are mainly temperate fruits and are grown in J&K and Himachal Pradesh and are in great demand all over the world.
- Vegetables: India produces about 13 per cent of the world's vegetables. It is an important producer of peas, cauliflower, onion, cabbage, tomato, brinjal and potatoes. There is a potato institute in Shirnla where study is made on various qualities of potatoes grown in India.



Apricots, apple and pomegranate



Cultivation of vegetables – peas, cauliflower, tomato and brinjal

Non-Food Crops

Rubber: It requires moist and humid climate with temperatures above 25°C and more than 200 cm of rainfall. It is grown in Kerala, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and the Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

Fibre Crops: Cotton, jute, hemp and natural silk are some fibre crops. **Cotton** grows well in the black cotton soil of the Deccan Plateau. It needs high temperature, light rainfall and about 210 frost-free days. Major cotton-producing states are Maharashtra, Gujarat, Madhya Pradesh, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Uttar Pradesh.



Known as the golden fibre, **jute** grows well in the fertile soils of the floodplains. It is used in making bags, ropes, mats and carpets. West Bengal, Bihar, Assam and Odisha are some major jute-producing states.

The rearing of silkworms for the production of silk is known as **sericulture**. Karnataka and West Bengal are two important silk-producing states.

Technological and Institutional Reforms

The Government of India introduced various reforms to improve productivity and the conditions of farmers. Some of these reforms were

- Five Year Plans were passed whereby importance was given to land reforms. Green Revolution and White Revolution were started to improve agriculture and milk production. However, it benefited only few farmers.
- To provide cheap loans to the farmers, many 'Grameen banks' or cooperative credit societies have been established in various villages.
- Farmers are provided insurance for crop protection, droughts, floods, fire and diseases. Apart from these, Kisan Credit cards and Personal Accident Insurance Scheme (PAIS) have also been initiated by the Government.



Modern technological equipments used in agriculture

Contribution of agriculture to the national economy, employment and output

However, it is to be noticed that despite these reforms, the share of agriculture in the country's GDP is declining. It is also not generating enough employment opportunities. Various subsidies provided to the farmers by the Government are on the decline. This has led to increased production costs. Reduction in import duties on agricultural crops has further deteriorated the conditions of the farmers. Farmers are increasingly growing fruits, vegetables and oil seeds. This has reduced the net sown area under the cultivation of cereals and pulses. Excessive irrigation and too much use of pesticides and insecticides have deteriorated the quality of soil resulting in low food production.

- In 2010-11 about 52% of the total workforce was employed by the farm sector.
- The share of agriculture in the GDP is declining.
- Indian Council of Agricultural Research (ICAR), agricultural universities, veterinary services and animal breeding centres, horticulture development, research and development in the field of meteorology and weather forecast, etc. are a few of the initiatives introduced by the government to improve Indian agriculture.

Food Security

India is a welfare state. To ensure the availability of food to all people, the Government of India has started a food security system. Food security consists of two components:

1. Buffer stock
2. Public distribution system (PDS)

The Food Corporation of India (FCI) has the responsibility of purchasing and storing of food grains. It purchases food grains from the farmers at the minimum support price (MSP) fixed by the Government. The distribution of food grains is managed by the PDS.

As MSP subsidies of paddy and wheat are comparatively higher, these crops are grown more. This has created an imbalance in the cropping patterns.

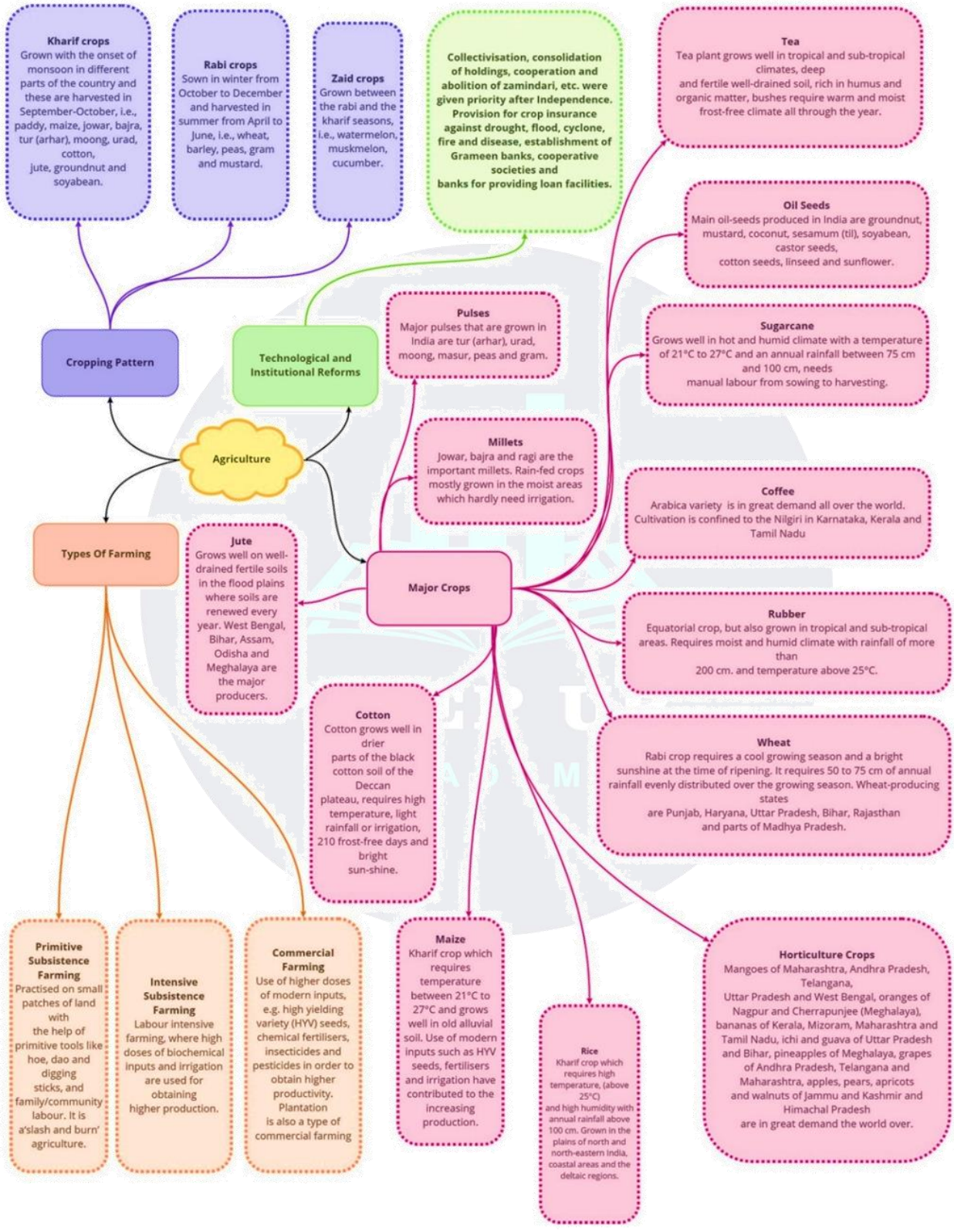
The Government has divided consumers into two categories—below poverty line (BPL) and above poverty line (APL). These two categories get food grains at prices fixed by the Government.

However, the declining crop cultivation in the country has raised questions about the food security programmed.

Impact of Globalization on Agriculture

- After 1990, under globalization, the farmers in India have faced new challenges in the international market.
- Despite being an important producer of rice, cotton, rubber, tea, coffee, jute and spices Indian agricultural products are not able to compete with the developed countries because of the highly subsidized agriculture in those countries.
- Genetic engineering is recognized as a powerful supplement in inventing new hybrid varieties of seeds that can increase production and make farming more profitable.
- In fact, organic farming is much in vogue today because it is practiced without factory-made chemicals such as fertilizers and pesticides and promotes organic farming.

Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-4 : Agriculture



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Three crops of paddy grown in a year in the states of Assam, West Bengal and Orissa are:
   (a) Aus, Aman and Boro
   (b) Aus, Aman and Poro
   (c) Bus, Bman and Boro
   (d) Aman, Poro, and Boro
2. A short season during the summer months between the rabi and the kharif season is called the:
   (a) Jaid season
   (b) Zaid season
   (c) Short season
   (d) None of the above
3. The major crops grown in India are:
   (a) Water-melon, musk-melon, cucumber etc.
   (b) Mango, jute, cotton, barley etc.
   (c) Rice, wheat, pulses, tea, coffee, sugarcane etc.
   (d) None of the above
4. The annual rainfall needed for the cultivation of rice is :
   (a) 400 cm
   (b) 300 cm
   (c) 200 cm
   (d) 100 cm
5. Bajra grows well on:
   (a) Alluvial and loamy soils
   (b) Alluvial and sandy soils
   (c) Sandy soils and shallow black soil
   (d) Alluvial and clayey soils
6. India is the largest producer as well as the consumer of in the world.
   (a) Rice
   (6) Wheat
   (c) Pulses
   (d) Sugarcane
7. The state which is the largest producer of groundnut is:
   (a) Tamil Nadu
   (b) Karnataka
   (c) Andhra Pradesh
   (d) Gujarat
8. The major tea producing states are:
   (a) Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala
   (b) Punjab, Haryana Jammu and Kashmir
   (c) Maharashtra, Gujarat and Tamil Nadu
   (d) Rajasthan, Andhra Pradesh and Gujarat
9. India produces about …….. percent of the world's coffee production:
   (a) Five
   (b) Four
   (c) Three
   (d) Two
10. India produces about …….. percent of the world's vegetables:
    (a) 13
    (b) 14
    (c) 15
    (d) 16
11. The rainfall and temperature required for the cultivation of rubber is:
    (a) 100 cm-25°C
    (6) 150cm-30°C
    (c) 200 cm-25°C
    (d) 300cm-40°C
12. Rearing of silk worms for the production of silk fibre is known as:
    (a) Pesciculture
    (b) Monoculture
    (c) Silk culture
    (d) Sericulture

13. Cotton is a kharif crop and requires ..... to ..... months to nature:
    (a) 5-6
    (b) 7-8
    (c) 6-8
    (d) 4-6
14. Jute is also known as:
    (a) White fibre
    (b) Silver fibre
    (c) Golden fibre
    (d) Diamond fibre
15. Genetic engineering is recognized as a powerful supplement in inventing new:
    (a) Agricultural tools
    (b) Modern machines
    (c) Hybrid variety of plants
    (d) Hybrid variety of seeds

Very Short Questions-

1. What is Zaid season?
2. Name the season during which watermelon, muskmelon and cucumber are produced?
3. What are Aus, Aman and Boro?
4. Name two important wheat growing zones of India?
5. Name the rain fed millet crop mostly grown in the moist areas which hardly needs irrigation?
6. Which crop is used both as food and fodder?
7. Who offered 80 acres of land to landless villagers?
8. Which is the kharif crop account for about half of the major oilseeds produced in the country?
9. How many crops of paddy are grown in a year in the states like Assam, West Bengal and Orissa and they are termed as by which names?
10. Name the crops which are known as coarse grains.

Short Questions-

1. Define agriculture? Why has cultivation methods changed significantly over years?
2. What is plantation farming? What are its main characteristics?
3. What are millets? Why are millets very important food crop in India?
4. Why are some pulses known as leguminous crop? Why are they grown in rotation with other crops?
5. Distinguish between Gramdan and Bhoodan.
6. Which type of agriculture is known as slash and burn agriculture? What is the main disadvantage of this type farming?
7. Explain the factor upon which the different farming practices depends.
8. Why there enormous pressure on agricultural land in land intensive subsistence farming?
9. The land under cultivation is being reduced day by day. Can you imagine its consequences?
10. Why is agriculture important for Indian economy?

Long Questions-

1. Explain the favourable temperature, rainfall and soil conditions required for the growth of tea. Name the leading tea producing states.
2. Explain the favourable temperature, rainfall and soil conditions required for the growth of coffee. Name the leading tea producing states.
3. Name the major Horticulture Crops of India and also write their areas of cultivation.
4. Which is the staple crop for majority of the people in India? What are the Geographical conditions required for its growth. Name the major areas of its production.
5. Which is the second most important cereal crop? What are the Geographical conditions required for its growth. Name the major areas of its production.
6. Name the crop which is used both as food and fodder? What are the Geographical conditions required for its growth. Name the major areas of its production?
7. Name the crop which is main source of Sugar and Gur? What are the Geographical conditions required for its growth. Name the major areas of its production.

8. Which crop is known as golden fiber? What are the Geographical conditions required for its growth. Name the major areas of its production.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:

a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).

b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).

c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.

d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

ASSERTION (A): In the 1980s and 1990s a comprehensive land development programme was initiated which included both institutional and technological reforms.

REASON (R): Green revolution was based on the use of package Technology.

2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:

a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).

b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).

c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.

d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

ASSERTION (A): Cotton cannot be grown in Assam.

REASON (R): The crop needs bright sunshine and 210 frost free days for its growth.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

Globalisation is not a new phenomenon. It was there at the time of colonisation. In the nineteenth century when European traders came to India, at that time too, Indian spices were exported to different countries of the world and farmers of south India were encouraged to grow these crops. Till today, it is one of the important items of export from India. During the British period cotton belts of India attracted the British and ultimately cotton was exported to Britain as a raw material for their textile industries. Under globalisation, particularly after 1990, the farmers in India have been exposed to new challenges. Despite being an important producer of rice, cotton, rubber, tea, coffee, jute and spices, our agricultural products are not able to compete with the developed countries because of the highly subsidised agriculture in those countries. Today, Indian agriculture finds itself at the crossroads. To make agriculture successful and profitable, proper thrust should be given to the improvement of the condition of marginal and small farmers. The green revolution promised much. But today it's under controversies. It is being alleged that it has caused land degradation due to overuse of chemicals, drying aquifers and vanishing biodiversity. The keyword today is "gene revolution", which includes genetic engineering. In fact, organic farming is much in vogue today because it is practised without factory made chemicals such as fertilisers and pesticides. Hence, it does not affect environment in a negative manner.

i. The given extract throws light on _____.
   a. Globalisation and the colonisation in agriculture
   b. Impact of globalisation on agriculture.
   c. New Economic policy pertaining to agriculture.
   d. None of these.

ii. Which of the following has been a direct disadvantage of globalisation to the farmer?
   a. Increase in global competition with the developed countries.
   b. Degradation of land due to the overuse of chemicals.
   c. Increased expenditure on buying HYV seeds.
   d. All the above.

iii. The method of farming done without using any type of chemical fertiliser, urea, insecticides is known as _____.

a. Mixed farming.

b. Organic farming.

c. Sustainable farming.

d. Inorganic farming.

iv. The key word today is "gene revolution" which includes genetic engineering. Which of the following is recognized as genetic engineering?

a. Powerful supplement in inventing insecticides and pesticides.

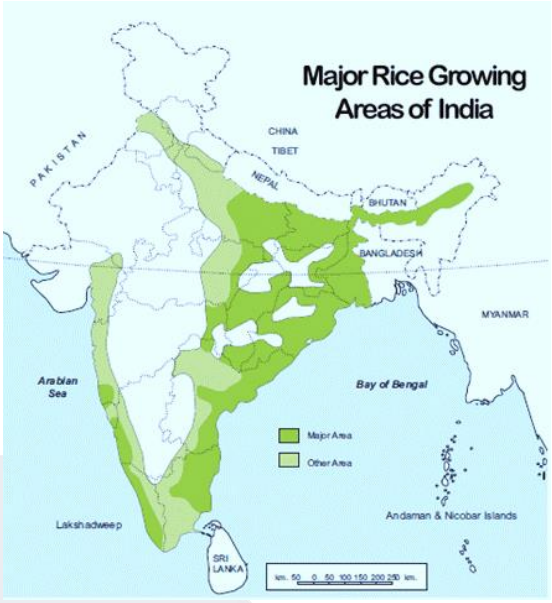
b. Powerful supplement in inventing biological inputs and fertilisers.

c. Powerful supplement in inventing new hybrid varieties of seeds.

d. Powerful supplement in inventing organic and inorganic farming.

2. Read the text given below and answer the questions that follow:

Map Question:



1. As per the map given, which among the following is a minor area of rice production?

a. Bihar.

b. Haryana.

c. West Bengal.

d. Assam.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (a) Aus, Aman and Boro
2. **Answer**: (b) Zaid season
3. **Answer**: (c) Rice, wheat, pulses, tea, coffee, sugarcane etc.
4. **Answer**: (d) 100 cm
5. **Answer**: (c) Sandy soils and shallow black soil
6. **Answer**: (c) Pulses
7. **Answer**: (c) Andhra Pradesh
8. **Answer**: (a) Assam, West Bengal, Tamil Nadu and Kerala
9. **Answer**: (b) Four
10. **Answer**: (a) 13
11. **Answer**: (c) 200 cm – 25°C
12. **Answer**: (d) Sericulture
13. **Answer**: (c) 6-8
14. **Answer**: (c) Golden fibre
15. **Answer**: (d) Hybrid variety of seeds

Very Short Answers-

1. **Ans**. In between the rabi and kharif seasons, there s a short season during the summer months known as the zaid season.
2. **Ans**. Zaid season
3. **Ans**. . In states like Assam, West Bengal and Orissa three crops of paddy are grown in a year. These are locally known as Aus, Aman and Boro.
4. **Ans**. The Ganga-Sutlej plains in the north and black soil region in the Deccan.
5. **Ans**. Jowar.
6. **Ans**. Maize

7. **Ans.** Shri Ram Chandra Reddy
8. **Ans.** Groundnut
9. **Ans.** Three- Aus, Aman and Boro
10. **Ans.** Jowar, bajra and Ragi are the important millets grown in India. These are known as coarse grains.

Short Answers-

1. A. Agriculture is the process of producing food, feed, fiber and other goods by the systematic raising of plants and animals.

B. Agriculture is an age old economic activity in our country. Over these years cultivation methods have changed significantly depending upon the characteristics of physical environment, technologically know how and socio-cultural practices.

C. Farming varies from subsistence to commercial type.

D. At present in different parts of India- primitive subsistence farming, Intensive Subsistence Farming and commercial Farming are practiced.

2. Plantation is a type of commercial farming. In This kind of farming a single crop is grown on a large area. This kind of farming is a legacy of colonialism, adapted to local conditions. Following are its characteristics:

A. Plantation has an interface of agriculture and industry.

B. Cultivation of cash for export purpose.

C. All the produce is used as raw material in respective industries.

D. Tea, coffee, rubber, sugarcane, banana etc are important plantation crops.

3. A. Jowar, Bajra and Ragi are the important millets grown in India.

B. These are known as coarse grains.

C. These are used as food crops as well as fodder crops also.

D. These have very high nutritional value.

4. A. Maximum pulses are known as leguminous crops.

B. It helps in fixation of nitrogen.

C. Pulses are grown in rotation with other crops as they help in restoring soil fertility by using nitrogen from the air.

5. A. Bhoodan: Shri Ram Chandra Reddy offered 80 acres of land to 80 landless villagers. This act was known as Bhoodan.

B. Later he travelled and introduced his ideas widely all over India.

C. Some Zamidars, owners of many villages offered to distribute some villages among landless. It was known as Gramdaan.

6. A. Shifting agriculture is known as slash and burn agriculture.

B. Such type of agriculture is harmful for environment.

C. Due to burning of plants and bushes, it causes pollution.

D. Du

7. The types of farming practiced depend on following two factors:

A. Physical factors: It includes relief, climate and location.

B. Human Factors: Human factors include the cultural background of people, availability of irrigation and agricultural practices.

8. A. The right of inheritance leading to division of land among successive generations has rendered land holding size uneconomical.

B. The farmers continue to take maximum output from the limited land in the absence of alternative source of livelihood.

C. Thus there is enormous pressure on agricultural land

9. A. Less land under cultivation would cause the lack of food grains for people.

B. Due to less production of food crops the prices of food crops will raise to its maximum extent.

C. It will also lead to more use of fertilizer and pesticides to get more and more production.

D. Use of fertilizers and pesticides leads to health problems.

10. A. Two third population of India engaged in agricultural activities.

B. Agriculture is a primitive activity, which produces most of the food that we consume.

C. It also produces raw material for carious industries like cotton, sugar and jute industry

D. It also helps in collecting foreign exchange.

Long Answers-

1.

1. **Introduction:** Tea is the main beverage crop. India is the leading producer and exporter of tea in the world.
2. **Climate:** Tea plants grow well in tropical and subtropical climate. Tea thrives well in a hot and humid climate.
3. **Soil Type:** The soil requirement is deep fertile well drained soil which is rich in humus and organic matter.
4. **Temperature**: Ideal temperature for the growth is 200 to 300 C.
5. **Rainfall:** 150 to 300 cm annual rainfall is required. High humidity and frequent showers evenly distributed throughout the year are good for rapid development of tender leaves.

2.

1. **Introduction:** It is second most important beverage crop of India. Indian coffee is known for its quality and is hence in great demand all over the world. The variety produced in India is Arabica variety which was initially brought from Yemen.
2. **Climate:** It requires hot and humid climatic conditions for growth.
3. **Soil Type:** The soil requirement is deep fertile well drained soil which is rich in humus and organic matter.
4. **Temperature:** 150C and 280 C.
5. **Rainfall:** rainfall 50 to 200 cm annually.
6. **Areas of Cultivation:** Its cultivation was initiated on Baba Buden hills and is today confined to the Nilgiri in Karnataka Kerala and Tamil Nadu.

3.

1. **Mangoes:** Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh and West Bengal.
2. **Oranges:** Nagpur and Cherapunji (Meghalaya)
3. **Bananas:** Kerala, Mizoram, Maharashtra, Tamil Nadu.
4. **Litchi and Guava:** Uttar Pradesh and Bihar.
5. **Pineapple:** Meghalaya
6. **Grapes:** Andhra Pradesh and Maharashtra.
7. **Apples, Pears, Apricots and Walnuts:** Jammu and Kashmir, and Himachal Pradesh.
8. **Cashew nut:** Kerala, Tamil Nadu and Andhra Pradesh.

4.

1. **Introduction:** Rice is the staple food crop of majority of the population.
2. **Climate:** Paddy is a tropical crop and grows well in the wet monsoon.
3. **Temperature:** Above 250 C, coupled with heavy humidity.
4. **Rainfall:** It requires an annual rainfall above 100 cm. It requires heavy rainfall in summer and irrigation in areas of less rainfall.
5. **Areas of Cultivation:** Rice is grown in the plains of north and north-eastern India, coastal areas and the deltaic region. Development of dense network of canal irrigation and tube wells have made it possible to grow rice in areas of less rainfall such as Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan.

5.

1. **Introduction:** Wheat is the second most important cereal crop. It is Rabi Crop. It is the main food crop, in north and north-western parts of the country.
2. **Soil Type:** Alluvial soil and black soil
3. **Temperature:** Cool growing season and bright sunshine at the time of ripening.
4. **Rainfall:** 50 to 75 cm of annual rainfall evenly distributed over the growing season.
5. **Areas of Cultivation:** There are two prominent wheat growing zones in the country-the Ganga-Sutlej plain in the north-

west and black soil region of Deccan. Wheat producing states are Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Rajasthan and certain parts of Madhya Pradesh.

6. 1. **Introduction:** Maize is a crop which is used both as food and fodder. It is Kharif crop.

2. **Climate:** 140 frost free days

3. **Soil Type:** It grows well in old alluvial soil.

4. **Temperature:** It requires temperature between 210 C to 270C .

5. **Rainfall:** annual rainfall between 60 to 120 cm

6. **Areas of Cultivation:** In some states like Bihar maize is grown in Rabi season also. Use of modern inputs such as HYV seeds, fertilizers and irrigation have contributed to the increasing production of maize. Major maize producing states are Karnataka, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar.

7. A. **Introduction:** Sugar cane is the main source of sugar and gur. India is the second largest producer of sugarcane in the world after Brazil. It is tropical and sub tropical crop.

B. **Climate:** It grows well in hot and humid climate.

C. **Soil Type:** it can be grown well on a variety of soils.

D. **Temperature:** Temperature requirement is 210 C to 270C .

E. **Rainfall:** Annual rainfall between 75 cm and 100 cm.

F. **Areas of Cultivation:** The major sugarcane producing states are Uttar Pradesh, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Punjab and Haryana.

8. 1. **Introduction:** Jute is known as the golden fiber. It is used to make mats, ropes, carpets, yarns, gunny bags and many other ornamental things.

2. **Soil Type:** Well drained fertile soil in the flood plains. The soil which renewed every year.

3. **Temperature:** High temperature at the time of growth.

4. **Areas of Cultivation:** West Bengal, Bihar, Assam, Orissa and Meghalaya are the major Jute producing states.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
2. (a) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).

Case Study Answer:

1. i (b) Impact of globalisation on agriculture.
   ii. (d) All the above.
   iii. (b) Organic farming.
   iv. (c) Powerful supplement in inventing new hybrid varieties of seeds.
2. i (b) Technological, institutional.
   ii. (b) White revolution.
   iii. (c) Increase in the agricultural production.
   iv. (d) Maximum support price.

Map Answer:

(b) Haryana.

Minerals and Energy Resources 5

Minerals and EnergyResources

Minerals have become an important part of our lives. From the smallest articles such as pins to the biggest products such as aeroplanes and railways are made of minerals. Most minerals are found in the Earth's crust.

Occurrence of Minerals

Minerals are naturally occurring, homogeneous substances with a definite chemical composition. A particular mineral that will be formed from a certain combination of elements depends upon the physical and chemical conditions under which the material forms. This, in turn, results in a wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lustre and density that a particular mineral possesses.

All living things need minerals

Life processes cannot occur without minerals. Although our mineral intake represents only about 0.3 per cent of our total intake of nutrients, they are so potent and so important that without them we would not be able to utilise the other 99.7 per cent of foodstuffs.

Where are these minerals found?

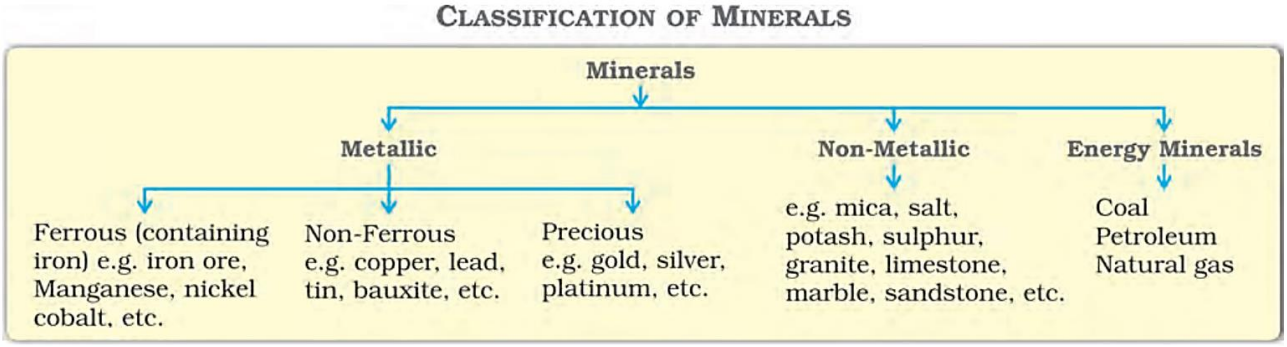
Minerals are usually found in "ores". The term ore is used to describe an accumulation of any mineral mixed with other elements.

Minerals occur in the following forms:

- In metamorphic and igneous rocks, minerals are obtained from cracks, faults and joints. The smaller cracks where minerals occur are called **veins**, while bigger fissures, crevices or joints are called **lodes**. When minerals in liquid and gaseous forms are forced upwards through cracks and fissures of the rocks, they cool and solidify. Examples: Copper, zinc, tin, lead
- Minerals occur in the layers of sedimentary rocks. They are formed as a result of deposition and concentration in horizontal layers under extreme heat and pressure. Examples: Coal and iron ore. Minerals such as sodium salt and gypsum are formed as a result of evaporation in dry regions.
- When the surface of the rocks decomposes, weathered materials are left behind resulting in the formation of minerals. Example: Bauxite
- Some minerals occur as alluvial deposits at the base of hills or on the valley floor. Examples: Gold, silver, platinum
- Many minerals are found in the oceans. Examples: Magnesium, bromine, common salt India is rich in minerals, and varieties of minerals are found here.

When the extraction of a mineral from its deposit or reserve becomes economically viable, that deposit is termed as a mine. The concentration of minerals in the ore, the ease of extraction and closeness to the market are important considerations to select a reserve to be a mine for extraction of the mineral.

Types of Minerals



There are ferrous, non-ferrous, metallic and non-metallic minerals. **Ferrous minerals** contain iron and have a tendency to corrode. **Non-ferrous minerals** do not contain iron, are not magnetic and are resistant to corrosion.

Differences between metallic and non-metallic minerals:

Metallic Minerals	Non-metallic Minerals
Metallic minerals contain metal in raw form.	Non-metallic minerals do not contain metals.
These metals are associated with igneous rocks.	These metals are associated with sedimentary rocks.
They are usually hard and have a shine of their own.	They are not usually hard and have no shine of their own.
Examples: Iron, copper, bauxite, tin	**Examples:** Salt, coal, mica, clay

Metallic minerals

Metallic minerals are composed of metals in their original form and possess a very crystalline atomic arrangement. Metallic minerals are composed of ferrous minerals and non-ferrous minerals.

Ferrous Minerals: Metallic minerals containing iron are called ferrous minerals and they are generally hard and sturdy. They are mainly found in solid form except for Hg(mercury).

Non-Ferrous Minerals: These minerals, which include copper, bauxite, lead, zinc and gold play a vital role in a number of metallurgical, engineering and electrical industries. Let us study the distribution of copper and bauxite.

Non-Metallic minerals

Nonmetallic minerals are a special group of chemical elements from which no new product can be generated if they are melted. Nonmetallic minerals are, for example, sand, gravel, limestone, clay, and marble.

Major Minerals and their Occurrence in India

Names of Minerals	Properties	Importance	Occurrence
Iron Ore	Ferrous, heavy metal	**Magnetite** is of the finest quality. It is used in electrical industries. **Hematite ore** is the most important industrial iron ore.	• Odisha–Jharkhand Belt • Durg–Bastar–Chandrapur belt in Chhattisgarh and Maharashtra • Bellary–Chitradurga–Chikmaglur–Tumkur belt in Karnataka
Manganese	Ferrous mineral	It is used in the manufacturing of steel and ferro-manganese alloy. It is also used in the manufacturing of bleaching powder, insecticides and paints.	Odisha is the largest producer of manganese ore in India.

Copper	Non-ferrous mineral, ductile and good conductor of electricity	It is used in electrical cables, electronics and chemical industries.	Balaghat mines in Madhya Pradesh, Khetri Mines in Rajasthan and Singbhum district of Jharkhand
Bauxite	Non-ferrous mineral; aluminium is obtained from it.	Aluminium obtained from bauxite is used largely in the aviation industry and automobile industry.	Odisha is the largest producer of bauxite in India. Panchpatmali deposits are the most important bauxite deposits in the state.
Mica	Non-metallic mineral; resistant to high voltage.	It is used in the electric and electronic industry.	Koderma–Gaya–Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand, Northern Chota Nagpur Plateau, areas around Ajmer, Nellore in Andhra Pradesh

Kudre in Kannada means horse. The highest peak in the western ghats of Karnataka resembles the face of a horse. The Bailadila hills look like the hump of an ox, and hence its name.

Energy Resources - Conventional and Non-Conventional

Conventional Energy Resources: Conventional sources of energy are the natural energy resources which are present in a limited quantity and are being used for a long time. They are called non-renewable sources as once they are depleted, they cannot be generated at the speed which can sustain its consumption rate. Major conventional sources of energy are:

Coal

- Coal is a major source of energy in India. It is formed as a result of compression of plant material over millions of years.
- Anthracite is the finest quality of coal. Bituminous coal is used for commercial purposes. High-quality bituminous coal is used in blast furnaces for smelting iron. Lignite is an inferior quality of coal which has high moisture content.
- In India, coal occurs in the Damodar Valley in West Bengal and Jharkhand, Jharia, Raniganj and Bokaro. Godavari, Mahanadi, Son and Wardha valleys also contain coal deposits. Because coal loses weight, heavy industries and thermal power stations are located close to coal fields.

Petroleum

- It is another major source of energy in India. It is used for heat and lighting, lubricants for machinery and as raw material for many manufacturing industries.
- Petroleum is found in the fault traps between porous and non-porous rocks. Gas occurs above the oil.
- Mumbai High, Gujarat and Assam are important petroleum-producing regions in the country. Ankleshwar in Gujarat, and Digboi and Naharkatiya are important oil fields in Assam.

Natural Gas

- It is an environment-friendly source as it emits carbon dioxide in low quantities. It may occur with or without petroleum. It is used as raw material in petrochemical industries and as a source of energy.
- The Krishna-Godavari Basin has large reserves of natural gas. Mumbai High, Gulf of Khambhat and the Andaman and Nicobar Islands also have large reserves of natural gas.

Electricity

- Electricity produced by using coal, petroleum and natural gas is known as **thermal electricity**. Electricity produced by using fast-flowing water is known as **hydroelectricity**.

Non-Conventional Energy Resources

Renewable energy sources, often known as non-conventional energy, are sources that are renewed by natural processes on a continual basis.

Nuclear Energy



- It is produced by altering the atoms in an atomic reactor.
- Uranium and thorium used for the production of nuclear energy are found in Jharkhand, Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan and Monazite sands of Kerala.
- Nuclear energy comes from splitting atoms in a reactor to heat water into steam, turn a turbine and generate electricity. 93 nuclear reactors in 28 states generate nearly 20 percent of the nation's electricity, all without carbon emissions because reactors use uranium, not fossil fuels.

Solar Energy



- Because India is a tropical country, there are immense possibilities to harness solar energy. Solar plants are being set up in various parts of the country.
- Various residential apartments have also installed solar cell panels on their roofs for generating electricity.
- Solar energy is the radiation from the Sun capable of producing heat, causing chemical reactions, or generating electricity. The total amount of solar energy received on Earth is vastly more than the world's current and anticipated energy requirements.

Wind Power



- Windmills are used for generating electricity. India has a great potential of becoming a wind power.
- Windmills are located from Nagercoil to Madurai in Tamil Nadu. Gujarat, Andhra Pradesh, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep Islands have important wind farms.
- Nagercoil and Jaisalmer have made effective use of wind energy.
- wind power, form of energy conversion in which turbines convert the kinetic energy of wind into mechanical or electrical energy that can be used for power.

Biogas

- Farm wastes, shrubs and animal wastes are used to produce biogas. Biogas is used for the production of electricity.
- Many biogas plants have been set up at municipal and village levels. Many plants use cattle dung to produce electricity.

Tidal Energy

- When energy of the oceanic tides is used for the generation of electricity, it is known as tidal energy.
- Floodgates are built across inlets. When water flows in during high tides, it gets trapped. After the gated are closed, this water goes back to the sea through pipes passing through power-generating turbines.
- Gulf of Khambhat and Gulf of Kutch in Gujarat and the Gangetic delta in the Sundarban region in West Bengal can be used for the generation of electricity.

Geo-thermal Energy

- When heat emanating from the interior of the Earth is used for the generation of electricity, it is called geo-thermal energy.
- When groundwater under the surface of the Earth becomes hot because of the existence of high temperature, hot water rises on the surface of the Earth in the form of steam. This steam is then used to generate electricity.
- Two geothermal projects have been started in India-one in Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh and the other in Puga Valley in Ladakh.

Differences between Conventional and Non-conventional Sources of energy

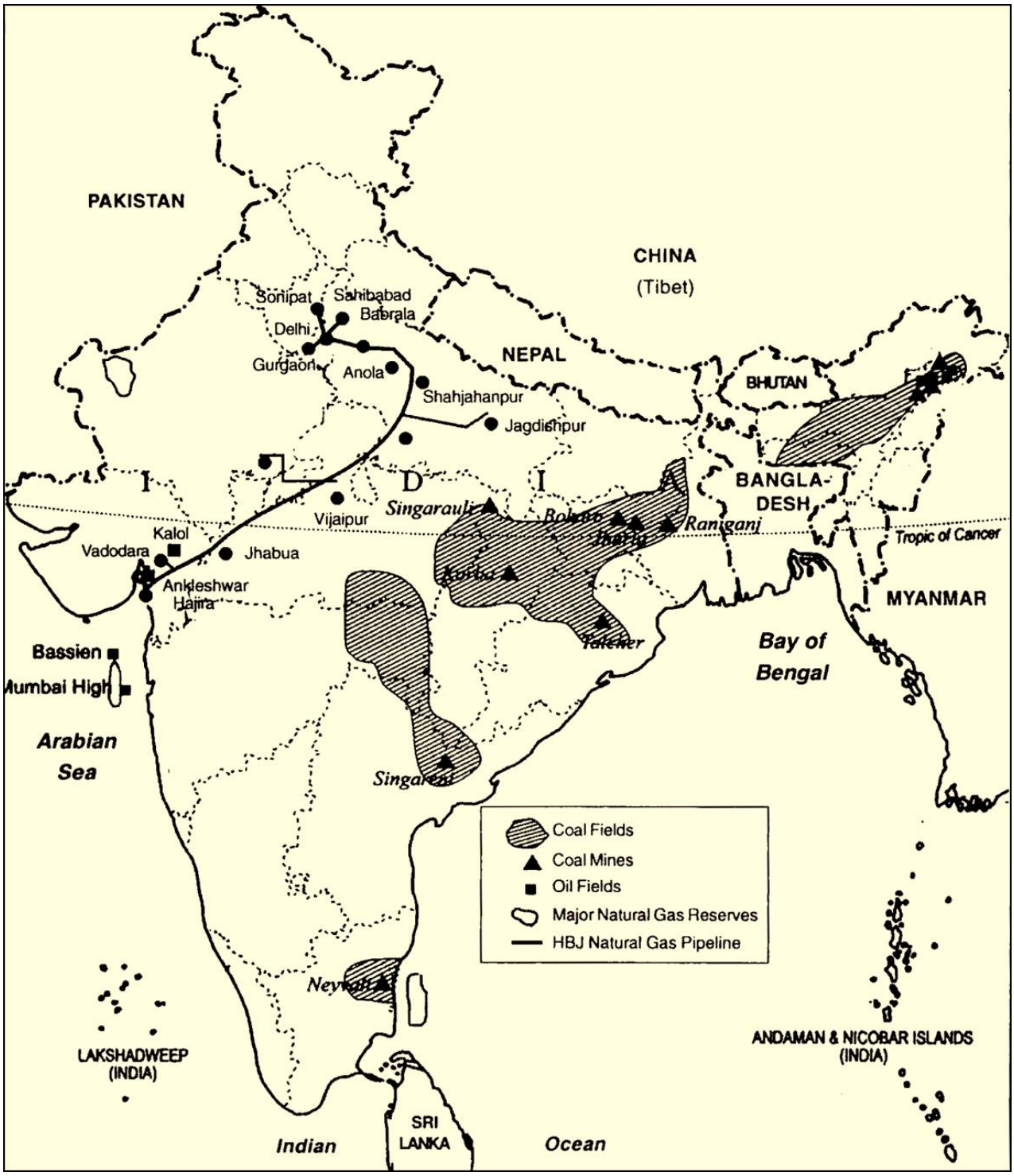
Conventional Sources	Non-Conventional Sources
Conventional sources of energy such as coal, petroleum and natural gas are non- renewable sources of energy.	Non-conventional sources of energy such as solar and wind energy are renewable sources of energy.
They have been in use since a long time. Examples: Firewood, coal	These sources have been recently developed and are still developing. Example: Technology for producing electricity from solar panels
Most of these energy sources cause pollution when used. Examples: Firewood, coal, petrol	They do not cause any pollution. Examples: Solar energy, geothermal energy
They are common and widely used sources. Example: Thermal power	They are comparatively new sources of energy and hence are not widely used. Examples: Solar panels, windmills

Conservation of Minerals

- Conservation of mineral resources is essential because they are a country's valuable possession. They are used as raw materials in many industries and help in the economic development of a nation. Some methods by which we can conserve minerals are
- Minerals should be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
- Technology should be upgraded to allow the use of low-grade ore at low costs.
- Recycling of metals also results in the conservation of mineral resources.
- Non-conventional sources of energy should be harnessed for the generation of electricity.
- Small steps should be taken by every individual such as using public transport, car pooling and switching off lights and fans when not in use. Using power-saving devices also go a long way in conserving minerals and energy resources.



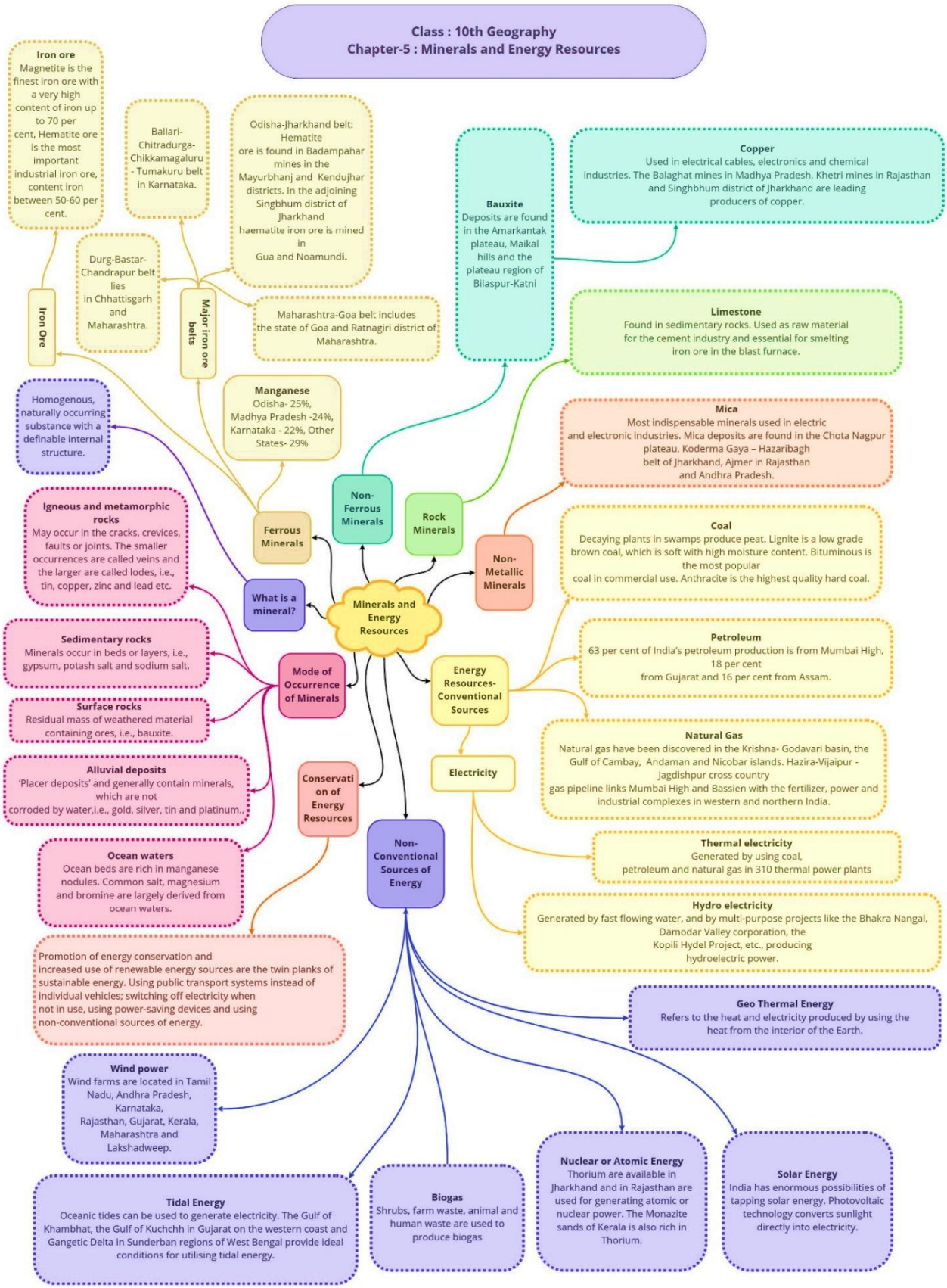
India: Major Soil Types



India: Distribution of Coal, Oil and Natural Gas



India: Distribution of Nuclear and Thermal Power Plants


Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-5 : Minerals and Energy Resources
Minerals and Energy Resources
What is a mineral?
Homogenous, naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.
Igneous and metamorphic rocks
May occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger are called lodes, i.e., tin, copper, zinc and lead etc.
Sedimentary rocks
Minerals occur in beds or layers, i.e., gypsum, potash salt and sodium salt.
Surface rocks
Residual mass of weathered material containing ores, i.e., bauxite.
Alluvial deposits
'Placer deposits' and generally contain minerals, which are not corroded by water,i.e., gold, silver, tin and platinum.
Ocean waters
Ocean beds are rich in manganese nodules. Common salt, magnesium and bromine are largely derived from ocean waters.
Mode of Occurrence of Minerals
Ferrous Minerals
Iron Ore
Iron ore
Magnetite is the finest iron ore with a very high content of iron up to 70 per cent, Hematite ore is the most important industrial iron ore, content iron between 50-60 per cent.
Major iron ore belts
Ballari-Chitradurga-Chikkamagaluru - Tumakuru belt in Karnataka.
Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt lies in Chhattisgarh and Maharashtra.
Odisha-Jharkhand belt: Hematite ore is found in Badampahar mines in the Mayurbhanj and Kendujhar districts. In the adjoining Singbhum district of Jharkhand haematite iron ore is mined in Gua and Noamundi.
Maharashtra-Goa belt includes the state of Goa and Ratnagiri district of Maharashtra.
Manganese
Odisha- 25%, Madhya Pradesh -24%, Karnataka - 22%, Other States- 29%
Non-Ferrous Minerals
Bauxite
Deposits are found in the Amarkantak plateau, Maikal hills and the plateau region of Bilaspur-Katni
Copper
Used in electrical cables, electronics and chemical industries. The Balaghat mines in Madhya Pradesh, Khetri mines in Rajasthan and Singhbhum district of Jharkhand are leading producers of copper.
Rock Minerals
Limestone
Found in sedimentary rocks. Used as raw material for the cement industry and essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace.
Non-Metallic Minerals
Mica
Most indispensable minerals used in electric and electronic industries. Mica deposits are found in the Chota Nagpur plateau, Koderma Gaya – Hazaribagh belt of Jharkhand, Ajmer in Rajasthan and Andhra Pradesh.
Coal
Decaying plants in swamps produce peat. Lignite is a low grade brown coal, which is soft with high moisture content. Bituminous is the most popular coal in commercial use. Anthracite is the highest quality hard coal.
Energy Resources-Conventional Sources
Petroleum
63 per cent of India's petroleum production is from Mumbai High, 18 per cent from Gujarat and 16 per cent from Assam.
Natural Gas
Natural gas have been discovered in the Krishna- Godavari basin, the Gulf of Cambay, Andaman and Nicobar islands. Hazira-Vijaipur - Jagdishpur cross country gas pipeline links Mumbai High and Bassien with the fertilizer, power and industrial complexes in western and northern India.
Electricity
Thermal electricity
Generated by using coal, petroleum and natural gas in 310 thermal power plants
Hydro electricity
Generated by fast flowing water, and by multi-purpose projects like the Bhakra Nangal, Damodar Valley corporation, the Kopili Hydel Project, etc., producing hydroelectric power.
Conservation of Energy Resources
Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy sources are the twin planks of sustainable energy. Using public transport systems instead of individual vehicles; switching off electricity when not in use, using power-saving devices and using non-conventional sources of energy.
Non-Conventional Sources of Energy
Geo Thermal Energy
Refers to the heat and electricity produced by using the heat from the interior of the Earth.
Wind power
Wind farms are located in Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Rajasthan, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep.
Tidal Energy
Oceanic tides can be used to generate electricity. The Gulf of Khambhat, the Gulf of Kuchchh in Gujarat on the western coast and Gangetic Delta in Sunderban regions of West Bengal provide ideal conditions for utilising tidal energy.
Biogas
Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce biogas
Nuclear or Atomic Energy
Thorium are available in Jharkhand and in Rajasthan are used for generating atomic or nuclear power. The Monazite sands of Kerala is also rich in Thorium.
Solar Energy
India has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy. Photovoltaic technology converts sunlight directly into electricity.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions

1. The mineral used in the manufacture of steel is:
   (a) Copper
   (b) Lead
   (c) Magnesium
   (d) Manganese
2. The state which is the largest producer of manganese is:
   (a) Gujarat
   (b) West Bengal
   (c) Bihar
   (d) Orissa
3. The …….. mines of Madhya Pradesh produce 52 percent of India's copper.
   (a) Kolaghat
   (b) Khetri
   (c) Balaghat
   (d) Singbhum
4. The most important bauxite deposits in the state of Orissa are in …….. district.
   (a) Singbhum
   (b) Khetri
   (c) Balaghat
   (d) Koraput
5. The mineral made up of a series of plates or leaves in:
   (a) Bauxite
   (b) Lead
   (c) Copper
   (d) Mica
6. Nellore mica belt is in the state of:
   (a) Orrisa
   (b) Bihar
   (c) Madhya Pradesh
   (d) Andhra Pradesh
7. The basic raw material for the cement industry and essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnace is:
   (a) Iron
   (b) Mica
   (c) Limestone
   (d) Sodium chloride
8. Low grade brown coal is known as:
   (a) Bituminous
   (b) Anthracite
   (c) Lignite
   (d) None of the above
9. The highest quality hard coal is:
   (a) Bituminous
   (b) Anthracite
   (c) Lignite
   (d) None of the above
10. Tertiary coals occur in which of the following:
   (a) Orissa, West Bengal and Bihar
   (b) Punjab, Haryana, Jammu and Kashmir
   (c) Meghalaya, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland
   (d) Gujarat, Kerala, Tamil Nadu and Karnataka
11. About …….. percent of India's petroleum production is from Mumbai High.
   (a) 63
   (b) 73
   (c) 83
   (d) 93
12. Large reserves of natural gas have been discovered in the:
   (a) Ganga – Godavari Basin
   (b) Ganga – Yamuna Basi
   (c) Ganga – Brahmaputra Basin
   (d) Krishna – Godavari Basin
13. The number of thermal power plants in India is:
   (a) 110
   (b) 210
   (c) 310
   (d) 410

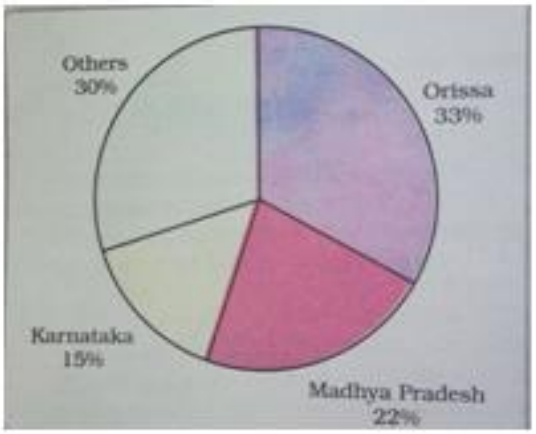
14. Nuclear energy is obtained by altering the:
    (a) Structure of atoms
    (b) Structure of electrons
    (c) Structure of protons
    (d) None of the above
15. The largest solar plant of India is located at:
    (a) Madhapur
    (b) Khetri
    (c) Kolhapur
    (d) Jaisalmer

Very Short-

1. State some products/things we use that are made of metals.
2. Name the minerals which do the cleaning work.
3. Which rock consists of single mineral only ?
4. What is a mineral ?
5. How do Geographers study minerals ?
6. What is the interest of a geologists in minerals ?
7. State some of the non-metallic minerals.
8. Give some examples of energy minerals.
9. What type of mineral is copper ?
10. Where are minerals found ?

Short Questions-

1. How minerals are formed in sedimentary rocks? Name any two mineral formed due to evaporation especially in arid region.
2. Explain with an example that aluminum was widely used by the emperors of France.
3. Name any one rock mineral. Write about its formation. Name the industry in which it is used?
4. Can you illustrate some suggestions to conserve minerals?
5. Study the given chart carefully and answer the following questions:
    A. Which state is the largest producer of manganese in India?
    B. What is the use of manganese?
    C. What is the share of Madhya Pradesh in the production of manganese ore?



6. Toothpaste is a combination of various Minerals". Support the statement with suitable examples.
7. What is the difference in approach of Geographers and Geologists in the study of mineral resources?
8. Distinguish between metallic Minerals and Non Metallic Minerals.
9. How do decomposition and weathering influence formation of minerals? Name a mineral formed due to decomposition and weathering?
10. What is the contribution of coal in the installed capacity of electricity? Why is the share of coal continuing to be highest?

Long Questions-

1. What are Non-Conventional Sources of Energy? Why do they have a bright future in India.
2. Write a short note on Bauxite, its formation, features and distribution in India.
3. Why there is a need of conservation of minerals?
4. How would you classify the types of coal depending on the degrees of compression?
5. Name the non metallic mineral, which can be easily splits into thin sheets. What are the properties of this mineral and it is found in which areas?
6. Explain the different forms of occurrence of minerals.
7. Distinguish between conventional and non conventional sources of energy.
8. Explain any five types of non-conventional sources of energy developed in India.

Assertion and Reason Questions:

1. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
   a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.
   b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.
   c) Assertion is correct statement, but reason is wrong statement.
   d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

   Assertion (A): Uses of iron brought a radical change in human life.

   Reason (R): Different kinds of tools where invented by using minerals.

2. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
   a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.
   b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.
   c) Assertion is correct statement but reason is wrong statement.
   d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

   Assertion (A): Mining activity is often called a "Killer Industry".

   Reason (R): Mining helps in agriculture.

Cash Study Questions:

1. Energy is required for all activities. It is needed to cook, to provide light and heat, to propel vehicles and to drive machinery in industries. Energy can be generated from fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium, and electricity. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources. Conventional sources include firewood, cattle dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas, and electricity (both hydel and thermal). Non-conventional sources include solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas, and atomic energy. Firewood and cattle dung cake is most common in rural India. According to one estimate, more than 70 percent of energy requirement in rural households is met by these two; continuation of these is increasingly becoming difficult due to decreasing forest area. Moreover, using dung cake too is being discouraged because it consumes most valuable manure which could be used in agriculture.

   i. **Which of the following statement is true about conventional energy resources?**
      (a) They cause minimum pollution.
      (b) They are available in limited quantity.
      (c) Cattle dung is the most used energy in the world.
      (d) There are sufficient reserves of conventional energy sources.

   ii. **Which of the following resources does not generate energy?**
      (a) Coal
      (b) Fuel
      (c) Natural gas
      (d) None of the above

   iii. **Which of the following energy is the non-conventional source of energy?**
      (a) Firewood
      (b) Tidal energy
      (c) Natural gas
      (d) Petroleum

   iv. **Firewood and cattle dung cake are most common energy in rural India because**
      (a) They are easily available
      (b) They are non-conventional
      (c) They produces high energy
      (d) None of the above

   v. **How India can reduce its dependence over countries for energy?**
      (a) Promoting non-conventional source of energy
      (b) Promoting efficient use of resources
      (c) Both (a) and (b)
      (d) None of the above

Map Question:

1. On an outline map of India, locate and label the following power plants with appropriate symbols:
   - **Thermal:** Namrup, Talcher, Singrauli, Harduaganj, Korba, Uran, Ramagundam, Vijayawada, Tuticorin.
   - **Nuclear:** Narora, Rawat Bhata, Kakrapara, Tarapur, Kaiga, Kalpakkam

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer:** (d) Manganese
2. **Answer:** (d) Orissa
3. **Answer:** (c) Balaghat
4. **Answer:** (d) Koraput
5. **Answer:** (d) Mica
6. **Answer:** (d) Andhra Pradesh
7. **Answer:** (c) Limestone
8. **Answer:** (c) Lignite
9. **Answer:** (b) Anthracite
10. **Answer:** (c) Meghalaya, Assam, Arunachal Pradesh and Nagaland
11. **Answer:** (a) 63
12. **Answer:** (d) Krishna – Godavari Basin
13. **Answer:** (c) 310
14. **Answer:** (a) Structure of atoms
15. **Answer:** (a) Madhapur

Very Short Answers-

1. **Answer:** Railway lines, a tiny pin, machinery, cars etc. are all made of metals.
2. **Answer:** Silica, oxide and phosphate minerals do the cleaning work.
3. **Answer:** Limestone.
4. **Answer:** Mineral is a "homogenous" naturally occurring substance with a definable internal structure.
5. **Answer:** Geographers study minerals as part of the earth's crust for a better understanding of landforms.
6. **Answer:** A geologist is interested in the formation of minerals, their age and physical and chemical composition.
7. **Answer:** Non-metallic minerals are mica, salt, potash, sulphur, granite, limestone, marble sand stone etc.
8. **Answer:** Coal, petroleum and natural gas are energy minerals.
9. **Answer:** Copper is a metallic mineral.
10. **Answer:** Minerals are found in ores.

Short Answers-

1. Ans.

A. In sedimentary rocks a number of minerals occur in beds and layers.

B. They have been formed as a result of deposition, accumulation and concentration in horizontal strata.

C. Coal and some forms of iron ore have been concentrated as a result of long periods under great heat and pressure.

D. Another group of sedimentary minerals include gypsum, potash salt and sodium salt. These are formed as a result of evaporation especially in arid region.

2. Ans.

A. After the discovery of aluminium Emperor Napoleon III wore buttons and hooks on his clothes made of aluminium.

B. Food was served to his more illustrious guests in aluminium utensils and the less honorable ones were served in gold and silver utensils.

C. Thirty years after this incident aluminium bowls were most common with the beggars in Paris.

3. Ans.

A. Limestone is a rock mineral.

B. It is found in association with rocks composed of calcium carbonate or calcium and magnesium carbonates.

C. It is found in sedimentary rocks of most geological formations.

D. Limestone is the basic raw material for cement industry and essential for smelting iron ore in the blast furnaces.

4. Ans.

A. A concerted effort has to be made in order to use our mineral resources in a planned and sustainable manner.

B. Improved technologies need to be constantly evolved to allow use of low grade ores at low costs.

C. Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes are steps in conserving our minerals resources for future.

5. **Ans.**
   A. Odisha is the largest producer of manganese ore in India.
   B. Manganese is mainly used in the manufacture of steel.
   C. About 22%.

6. **Ans.** Yes, toothpaste is a combination of so many minerals. Toothpaste cleans our teeth. Abrasive minerals like silica, limestone, aluminum oxide and various phosphate minerals do the cleaning. Fluoride which is used to reduce cavities, come from a mineral fluoride. Most toothpaste is made white, with titanium oxide, which comes from minerals called rutile, ilmenite and anatase. The sparkle in some toothpaste comes from mica. The toothbrush and tube containing the paste are made of plastics from petroleum.

7. **Ans.** Geographers study minerals as part of the earth's crust for a better understanding of land reforms. The Distribution of minerals resources and associated economic activities are interest to geographers.

   Geologists, however, is interested in the formation of minerals, their age and physical and chemical composition.

8. **Ans. Metallic Minerals**
   1. Minerals from which metals are extracted.
   2. They can be pressed in to wires or sheets.
   3. Iron gold silver are metallic minerals

   Non-Metallic Minerals
   1. Minerals consist of non-metals.
   2. They cannot be pressed in to wires or sheets
   3. Clay, Sulphur, coal, potash are all non metallic minerals.

9. **Ans.**
   A. This type of formation involves the decomposition of surface rocks under the effect of pressure, temperature and humidity.
   B. Due to weathering effects of wind and water the soluble constituents, leaving a residual mass of weathered material containing ores.
   C. Bauxite is formed this way.

10. **Ans.**
    A. 62% is the contribution of coal in the installed capacity of electricity.
    B. The share of coal is continuing to be highest because of the following facts.
       1. India has a huge resource of coal of different kinds, such as anthracite, bituminous, lignite and peat.
       2. The potential of India in the field of hydel power is quite high but only one sixth has been derived developed.
       3. Electricity produced by nuclear plants is only in the initial stages. This way is not properly developed.

Long Answers-

1. **Ans.** Resources which we can use again and again and which are renewable in nature are non-conventional resources of energy. Due to the following reasons they have bright future in India.

   Resources which we can use again and again and which are renewable in nature are non-conventional resources of energy. Due to the following reasons they have bright future in India.

   A. India is blessed with an abundance of sunlight, water, wind and bio mass.
   B. India is tropical country. It has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy.
   C. India now ranks a wind super power in the world. States like Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra, and Lakshadweep have important wind farms
   D. In India the Gulf of Kichchh, provides ideal conditions for utilizing tidal energy.
   E. There are several hundred hot spot springs in India, which could be uded to generate Geo Thermal Energy.

2. **Ans.** Bauxite is a clay-like substance from which alumina and later aluminium is obtained. Aluminium is an important metal because it combines the strength of metals such as iron, with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleable ability.

   Formation: Bauxite deposits are formed by the decomposition of a wide variety of rocks rich in aluminium silicates.

Distribution:

A. It is found in the Amarkantak Plateau, Maikal Hills and the plateau region of Bilaspur-Katni.

B. Odisha is the largest bauxite producing state in India.

C. Panchpatmali deposits in Koraput District are the most important bauxite deposits in the state.

D. 45% of the country's total production in 2000-01 was in Odisha.

3. Ans.

A. The total Volume of workable mineral deposits in an insignificant fraction i.e. one percent of the earth's crust.

B. We are rapidly consuming mineral resources that required millions of years to be created and concentrated.

C. The geological processes of mineral formation are so slow that the rates of replenishment are infinitely small in comparison to the present rates of consumption.

D. Mineral resources are finite and non renewable.

E. Mining of minerals causes great threat to the environment and health of the human beings.Due to the above discussed reasons it is necessary to conserve the minerals and use them in a judicious way.

4. Ans. Following are the types of coal on the degree of compression:

A. **Peat:** Decaying plants in swamps produced peat, which has a low carbon and high moisture contents. It has very heating capacity.

B. **Lignite:** Lignite is a low grade brown coal, which is soft with high moisture content. The principal lignite reserves are in Neyveli in Tamil Nadu and used for generation of electricity.

C. **Bituminous:** Coal that has been buried deep and subjected to increased temperature is bituminous coal. It is the most popular coal in commercial use. Metallurgical coal is high grade bituminous coal which has a special value foe smelting iron in blast furnace.

D. **Anthracite:** It is highest quality hard coal.

5. Ans. Mica is the mineral made up of a series of plates or leaves. It splits easily into thin sheets.

Properties:

A. Mica sheets can be so thin that a thousand can be layered in to mica sheet of a few centimeters high.

B. Mica can be clear, black, green, red, yellow or brown, Due to its excellent di-electric strength, low power loss factor, insulating properties and resistance to high voltage, mica is one of the most indispensable minerals used in electric and electronic industries.

Mica producing areas:

A. Mica is found in the northern edge of the Chota Nagpur Plateau. Koderma Gaya-Hazaribhag belt of Jharkhand is the leading producers.

B. In Rajasthan the major mica producing area is around Ajmer.

C. Nellore mica belt of Andhra Pradesh is also an important producer in the country.

6. Ans.

A. **Occurrence of Minerals in Igneous and Metamorphic rocks:** In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals may occur in cracks, crevices, faults and joints. The smaller occurrence is called veins and the larger are called lodes. Major metallic minerals like tin, copper, zinc and lead etc are obtained from veins and lodes.

B. **Occurrence of minerals in sedimentary rocks:** In sedimentary rocks a number of minerals occur in beds and layers. They have been formed as a result of deposition, accumulation and concentration in horizontal strata. Coal and some forms of iron ore have been concentrated as a result of long periods.

C. **Occurrence of minerals through Decomposition of surface rocks:** Another mode of formation involves the decomposition of surface rocks, and the removal of soluble constituents, leaving a residual mass of weathered material containing ores. Bauxite is formed this way.

D. **Alluvial deposits:** Certain minerals may occur as alluvial deposits in sands of valley floors and the base of hills. These deposits are called placer deposits.

E. **Minerals in ocean water and ocean beds:** The ocean water contains vast quantities of minerals. Common salt, magnesium and bromine are largely derived from ocean water. The ocean beds too are rich in manganese nodules

7. Ans.

Conventional	Non- Conventional
1. Conventional sources of energy are non renewable sources of energy.	1. Non-conventional sources of energy are renewable sources of energy.
2. These sources get depleted with its use.	2. These resources can be used again and again.
3. These are traditional sources of energy.	3. These are recently developed sources of energy.
4. These causes large scale pollution.	4. These are environment friendly resources.
5. For example : Coal, petroleum, diesel, etc.	5. For example: Solar energy, wind energy, tidal energy etc.

8. Ans.

A. **Solar energy:** India is a tropical country. It has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy. Photovoltaic technology converts sunlight directly into electricity. Solar energy is fast becoming popular in rural and remote areas. The largest solar plant of India is located at Madhapur, near Bhuj, where solar energy is used to sterilize milk cans.

B. **Wind power:** India now ranks as a wind super power in the world. The largest wind farm cluster is located in Tamil Nadu from Nagarcoil to Madurai.

C. **Bio Gas:** Shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste are used to produce bio gas for domestic purpose in rural area. Decomposition of organic matter yields gas, which has higher thermal efficiency in comparison to kerosene, dung cake and charcoal.

D. **Tidal energy:** Oceanic tides can be used to generate electricity. Floodgate dams are built across inlet. During high tide water flows into the inlet and gets trapped when the gate is closed. From that stored water electricity is generated.

E. **Geo thermal Energy:** Geothermal energy refers to the heat and electricity produced by using the heat from the interior of the earth

Case Study Answer:

1. i (b) They are available in limited quantity.
   ii (d) None of the above.
   iii (b) Tidal energy
   iv (a) They are easily available
   v (c) Both (a) and (b)

Map answer:

1.



Manufacturing Industries 6

Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products is called manufacturing. Industries contribute tremendously to the growth of the country. Industries are included in the secondary sector because they manufacture finished goods from raw materials.

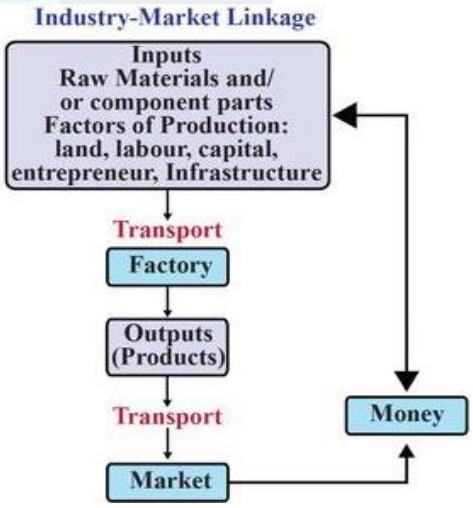
Importance of Manufacturing

Manufacturing sector is considered as the backbone of development in general and economic development because:

- It help in modernising agriculture, which forms the backbone of our economy. Also, reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- It helps in eradication of unemployment and poverty from the country.
- Export of manufactured goods brings foreign exchange.
- It helps in transforming raw materials into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value.

Contribution of Industry to National Economy

The total contribution of industry to the GDP is 27% out of which 10% comes from mining, quarrying, electricity and gas. The growth of the manufacturing sector had been 7% in the last decade. Since 2003, the growth rate has been 9 to 10% per annum.



Industrial Location

Industrial sites are inherently complex. They are affected by the availability of raw materials, labor, capital, power and market, etc. It is not often possible to find all of these available factors in the same location. As a result, manufacturing activity tends to be at the most appropriate location where all industrial location factors are available or can be arranged more cheaply. Cities provide markets and services such as banks, insurance, transportation, labour, consultants and financial advisory services, etc. to the industry. Many industries tend to join forces to take advantage of the advantages offered by urban centres called agglomeration economies. Progressively, a major industrial agglomeration is taking place. In the period prior to independence, most manufacturing units were located in places from the standpoint of foreign trade such as Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai, etc. As a result, pockets of industrially developed urban centres, surrounded by an immense agricultural rural back country, have emerged.



Classification of Industries

Industries are classified into various categories on the basis of ownership of products, capital investments and nature of raw materials

Industries	Classification on the basis of	Examples
Agro-based	Raw materials (forest and agricultural raw materials are used)	Cotton textiles, jute textiles, tea
Mineral-based	Raw materials (minerals such as iron, bauxite are used)	Iron and steel companies, petrochemicals
Small-scale industries	Capital Investments	Cottage industries
Large-scale industries	Capital Investments	TISCO
Public Sector	Ownership (owned by the Government)	BHEL, SAIL
Private Sector	Ownership (owned privately by individuals)	Reliance, TISCO
Joint Sector	Ownership (owned by the Government and private individuals)	Oil India Ltd.
Cooperative Sector	Ownership (owned and operated by producers and suppliers)	Amul
Heavy Industries	Weight and bulkiness of raw materials	Automobile industries
Light Industries	Weight and bulkiness of raw materials	Electrical industries

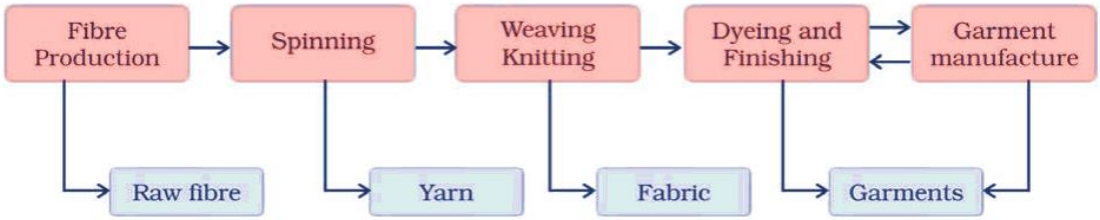
Agro-based Industries

Cotton textiles, woollen textiles, jute and sugar industries are known as agro-based industries as they use agricultural products as raw materials.

Textile Industries

It's the only industry in India that is autonomous and comprehensive in the value chain, i.e. from raw materials into higher value-added products. It contributes to industrial production, employment creation and foreign exchange income.

It contributes 14% to industrial production in India and the second largest provider of employment opportunities after agriculture. It contributes 4% towards the GDP of the country.



Cotton Textiles

- It is one of the traditional industries of India. About 80% of the industries are owned privately, while 20% are owned by the Government and cooperative societies.
- Most of the cotton industries earlier were centred in Maharashtra and Gujarat because of the existence of humid climate and the availability of cotton, markets, transport facilities and cheap labour.
- Weaving is done by handloom, power looms and in mills. Khadi industries also provide employment opportunities to a large section of society.
- USA, UK, Russia, France, Singapore, Sri Lanka and many African countries import cotton textiles from India. We also export yarn to Japan.
- Some drawbacks of the cotton industries are that spinning and weaving units of the country cannot use high-quality yarn produced in the country. Production takes place in small factories which cater to only local

markets. This is the reason that while we export cotton yarn, fabrics have to be imported. Low productivity of labour, irregular supply of electricity and tough competition from the synthetic fibre industry have hit the cotton textile industries hard.

- The first successful textile mill was established in Mumbai in 1854.
- The two world wars were fought in Europe, India was a British colony. There was a demand for cloth in U.K. hence, they gave a boost to the development of the cotton textile industry.

Jute Textiles

- India is the largest producer of raw jute and the second largest exporter of jute products in the world after Bangladesh.
- Most jute mills are located in West Bengal along the Hugli River. This is because this area has many jute-growing fields, cheap water transport, cheap labour and a good network of railways and roadways. Kolkata provides financial assistance to the jute industries.
- The jute industry in India is currently facing many problems. There is stiff competition from Bangladesh, Brazil, Egypt and Thailand. Synthetic fibres have also hit the industry hard. To improve the condition of jute industries, the Government formulated the National Jute Policy. Main countries which import jute products are USA, Canada, Australia and the United Arab Emirates.
- **The first jute mill was set up near Kolkata in 1855 at Rishra. After Partition in 1947, the jute mills remained in India but three-fourth of the jute producing area went to Bangladesh (erstwhile East Pakistan).**

Sugar Industry

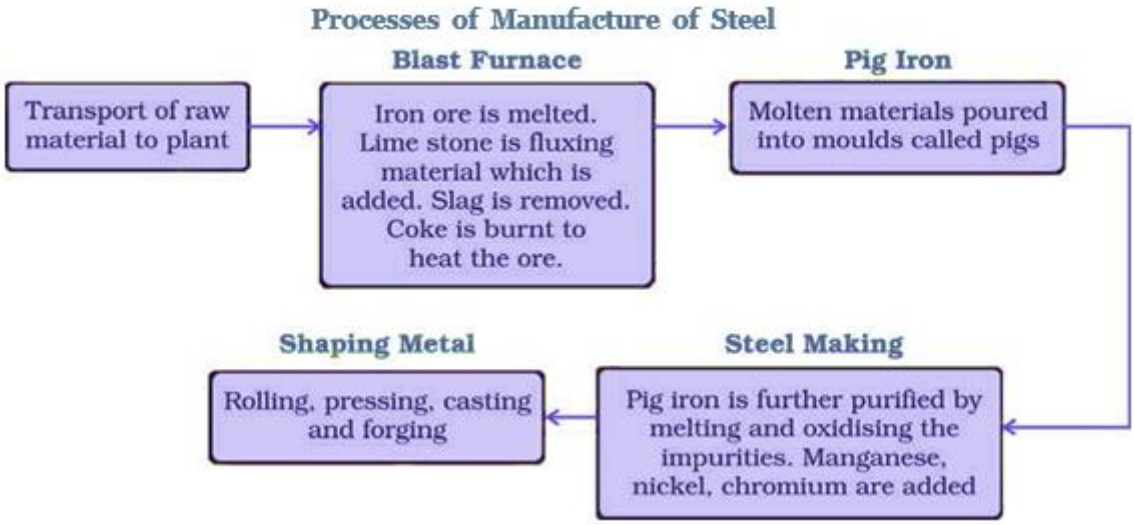
- India is the second largest producer of sugar in the world and the largest producer of *gur* and *khandsari*.
- Sugar mills are located close to the sugar fields. This is because sugar is bulky to transport and can quickly lose sucrose content.
- Most of the sugarcane mills are located in Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh and Gujarat. Old and inefficient methods of production and delay in transport of raw materials are two main causes which are hitting the sugarcane industries hard.

Mineral-based Industries

Industries which are using minerals as raw materials are known as mineral-based industries. Some important mineral-based industries are

Iron and Steel Industry

- India is the fourth largest producer of steel in the world and the largest producer of sponge iron.
- It is known as a basic industry as steel is needed for machinery of all industries whether heavy, medium or light. Steel is also required for manufacturing a variety of engineering, construction and defence goods. Day-to-day consumer goods such as containers and safety pins are made of steel. It is also a heavy industry as all its raw materials and finished goods are heavy and bulky.
- Many iron and steel industries are located in the Chotanagpur Plateau as many iron ore fields are located in the surrounding regions. Availability of cheap labour and growth potential have led to the concentration of industries in the region.
- Despite India being a major producer of iron and steel, it is not able to perform to its potential. This is due to many reasons such as high costs and limited availability of coking coal, irregular supply of electricity and poor infrastructure facilities. However, liberalisation and foreign direct investments have given the industry a much-needed boost.



Aluminium Smelting

- It is the second most important metallurgic industry in India. Because aluminium is light in weight, a good conductor of electricity, resistant to corrosion and easily malleable, it is used in the manufacturing of aircraft. It is also used in making utensils and wires.
- Bauxite is the main raw material in the industry. Aluminium smelting plants are mostly located in places where there is a regular supply of electricity and steady assurance of raw materials.
- Aluminium smelting plants are mainly located in Odisha, West Bengal, Kerala, Uttar Pradesh, Chhattisgarh, Maharashtra and Tamil Nadu.

4 to 6 tonnes of bauxite → 2 tonnes of alumina → 1 tonne of aluminium

Chemical Industries

- It is one of the fastest growing industries in India. It contributes about 3% to India's GDP. It is the third largest in Asia and twelfth largest in the world.
- Chemical industries in India produce both organic and inorganic chemicals. Inorganic chemicals are used as raw materials for manufacturing many finished goods. These include synthetic fibres, plastics,
- paints and adhesives. Sulphuric acid is used for manufacturing fertilisers, while soda ash is used for making glass, soaps and detergents.
- Organic chemicals include petrochemicals which are used for making synthetic fibres, plastics and dyes.

Fertiliser Industry

- The fertiliser industries mainly produce fertilisers which contain nitrogen, potash and ammonium phosphate. India is the third largest producer of nitrogenous fertilisers.
- The fertiliser industry expanded after the Green Revolution. Some main plants are located in Gujarat, Tamil Nadu, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab, Odisha and Rajasthan.

Cement Industry

- The cement industry is an important industry as it is important for the construction of houses, buildings, offices, bridges and dams.
- The industry uses bulky raw materials such as silica, limestone, alumina and gypsum. Coal, regular electric supply and good infrastructure facilities are other important requirements of the industry.

- The first cement plant was established in Chennai in 1904. Since then, it is continuously expanding because of many reasons. Decontrol of prices; promulgation of many reform movements related to the industry; the requirement of cement in building of roads, houses, railways and bridges; and the availability of international markets are some factors which have led to the development of cement industries in India.
- Indian cement is exported to the Middle East, East Asia, South Asia and Africa.

Automobile Industry

- Many vehicles such as cars, trucks, motor cycles and three wheelers are manufactured in India. The demand for cars has drastically increased in the country.
- Foreign direct investments have brought new technology into the country.
- Automobile industries are located in Gurgaon, Delhi, Pune, Chennai, Mumbai, Indore, Jamshedpur and Bengaluru.

Electronics Industry and Information Technology

- In India, there is a great demand for electronic products such as televisions, phones, pagers, radars and computers. The electronics industry is critical for the defence of the country.
- India has become a major hub of the information industry. Important technology parks are present in Bengaluru, Pune and Hyderabad.
- About 30% of this industry's workforce consists of women. The IT industry has been a major earner of foreign exchange for the country.

Industrial Pollution

Four types of pollution are caused by industries. These are:

Type of Pollution	Sources	Impact
Air Pollution	Release of gases such as sulphur dioxide and carbon monoxide by industries and vehicles.	Hazardous to human health, animals and plants. Can cause irritation and respiratory problems
Water Pollution	Release of chemical discharges into rivers or lakes mainly by paper, chemical and heavy industries and refineries.	Dangerous for human, aquatic organisms and plants.
Land Pollution	Dumping of industrial wastes causes the degradation of soil. Rainwater seeps into the soil carrying these pollutants underground.	Loss of soil fertility which further reduces agricultural production and deterioration of the quality of underground water.
Thermal and Noise Pollution	Thermal plants cause thermal pollution when they discharge hot water into water bodies. Noise pollution is caused by construction activities, heavy industries and generators.	Thermal pollution affects marine and plant life. Noise pollution can cause hearing impairment, increase in heart rate and blood pressure.

Steps to Control Environment Degradation

- Minimising use water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages.
- Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements.
- Treating hot water before releasing it into water bodies
- Overdrawing of ground water reserves by industry where there is a threat to ground water resources also needs to be regulated legally.

- Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators. Smoke can be reduced by using oil or gas instead of coal in factories.
- Machinery and generators should be fitted with silencers to reduce noise pollution.

Efforts Made by NTPC towards Cleaning the Environment

National Thermal Power Corporation is a major power-providing corporation in India. The corporation has taken many steps to preserve the natural environment and resources in India.

- NTPC has been using the latest techniques and has upgraded its existing equipment. This has helped in reducing wastage of resources.
- It has been able to minimise the generation of waste materials by maximising the use of ash.
- It has been making efforts to reduce environmental pollution by liquid waste management and ash water recycling systems.
- NTPC also supervises and reviews ecological parameters of the surrounding areas where its power stations are located.
- It has laid down green belts to maintain ecological balance in regions surrounding its power stations.



India: Distribution of cotton, woollen and silk industries

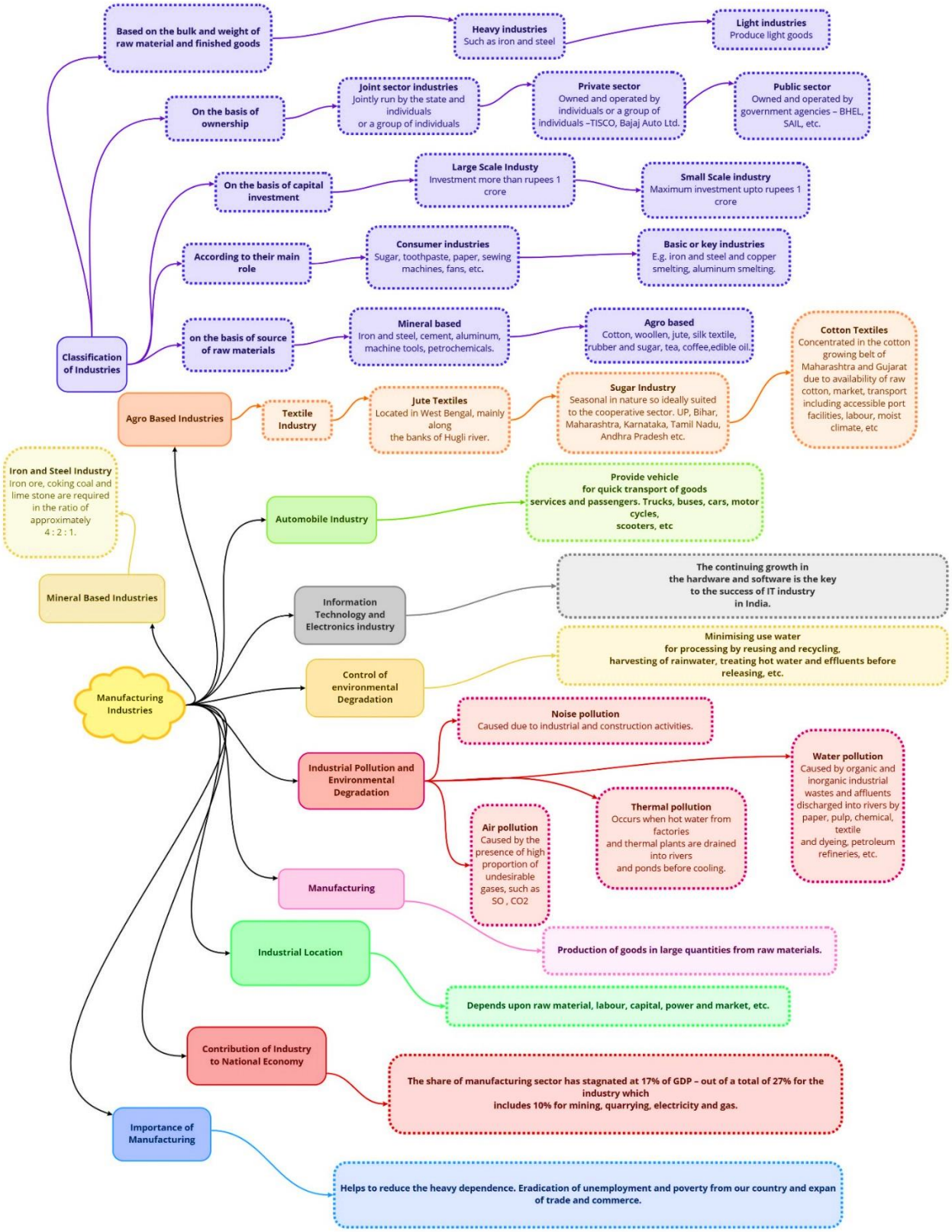


India: Iron and Steel Plants



India: Some Software Technology Parks

Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-6 : Manufacturing Industries



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions

1. India occupies the first place in the production of:
   (a) Sugar
   (b) Jute
   (c) Gur and khandsari
   (d) All the above
2. The number of sugar mills in the country are:
   (a) 400
   (b) 420
   (c) 440
   (d) 460
3. Industries that use minerals and metals as raw materials are called:
   (a) Agro based industries
   (b) Metal based industries
   (c) Mineral based industries
   (d) None of the above
4. Which of the following is basic industry:
   (a) Sugar
   (b) Cotton
   (c) Jute
   (d) Iron and steel
5. Iron ore, coking coal and limestone are required to make steel in the ratio of approximately:
   (a) 1 : 2 : 4
   (b) 2 : 1 : 4
   (c) 4 : 2 : 1
   (d) 4:1:2
6. India ranks …….. among the world crude steel producers.
   (a) First
   (b) Second
   (c) Ninth
   (d) Tenth
7. Inspite of large quantity of production of steel, per capita consumption per annum is only:
   (a) 20 kg
   (b) 32 kg
   (c) 40 kg
   (d) 52 kg
8. In the 1950s China and India produced almost the same quantity of:
   (a) Iron
   (b) Manganese
   (c) Copper
   (d) Steel
9. The number of aluminium smelting plants in India are:
   (a) 8
   (b) 10
   (c) 12
   (d) 14
10. In 2004, India produced over 600 million tonnes of:
    (a) Steel
    (b) Aluminium
    (c) Copper
    (d) All the above
11. The chemical industry in India contributes approximately:
    (a) 3 percent of the GDP
    (b) 4 percent of the GDP
    (c) 5 percent of the GDP
    (d) 6 percent of the GDP
12. The fertilizer industry is centred around the production of:
    (a) organic fertilizers
    (b) inorganic fertilizers
    (c) nitrogenous fertilizers
    (d) phosphate fertilizers
13. The industry which requires bulky and heavy raw materials like limestone, silica, alumina and gypsum is:
    (a) Iron and steel industry
    (b) Aluminium industry
    (c) Cement industry
    (d) All the above
14. The first cement plant was set up in Chennai in:
    (a) 1804
    (b) 1904
    (c) 1814
    (d) 1914

15. At present the number of manufactures of passenger cars and multi-utility vehicles are:
    (a) 5
    (b) 10
    (c) 15
    (d) 20

Very Short Questions

1. Name the any two public sector industries.
2. What are small scale industries?
3. Oil India Ltd is which type of Industry on the basis of ownership?
4. What are heavy industries?
5. What is Cryolite?
6. When and where, the first cement plant was set up?
7. Write down the basic inputs of Iron and steel industry.
8. What is NTPC?
9. Name any two pre independence industrial cities of India.
10. In which year national jute policy was formulated.

Short Questions

1. Which factors are responsible for the decentralization of cotton textile mills in India?
2. Cotton textile industry has close links with agriculture. Explain.
3. What are the major problems of cotton textile industry?
4. What were the major objectives of National Jute Policy 2005? Why is the internal demand for juteincreasing?
5. India is an important iron and steel producing country in the world yet , we are not able to perform to our full potential. Give any four reasons.
6. Why is iron and steel industry called a basic industry?
7. What is importance of the manufacturing industries?
8. What is the importance of Jute Industry?
9. The sugar industry is now shifting from north to south. Mention main reasons.
10. How would you classify industries on the bases of their main role?

Long Questions-

1. Why are industries located in or near the cities? What were its results in preindependence period?
2. Analyze the advantages of the decentralization of industries in India.
3. How will you elaborate the importance of manufacturing? Explain.
4. Explain the different stages in the process of manufacturing of steel.
5. How is Integrated Steel Plants different from Mini steel plants? What problems doesthis industry face?
6. What ideas justify that agriculture and industry are not exclusive of each other?
7. Why are cotton and textile Industry spread all over the India? Explain five reasonswith suitable examples.
8. What is the contribution of industry to national economy in India? Compare it with the East Asian Countries. What is the desired growth and present position of industry in GDP?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    a. Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of assertion
    b. Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the not correct explanation of assertion
    c. Assertion is true, but Reason is false
    d. Both Assertion and Reason are False

    Assertion (A): Aluminium smelting is the second most important metallurgical industry in India.

    Reason (R): It is light, resistant to corrosion, a good conductor of heat.

2. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    a. Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of assertion

b. Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the not correct explanation of assertion

c. Assertion is true, but Reason is false

d. Both Assertion and Reason are False

Assertion (A): Almost all machinery can be redesigned, and generators should be fitted with silencers.

Reason (R): Old machinery produced noise and consumes high energy

Case study Questions:

1. Read the text given below and answer the following questions.

Chotanagpur plateau region has the maximum concentration of iron and steel industries. It is largely, because of the relative advantages this region has for the development of this industry. These include, low cost of iron ore, high grade raw materials in proximity, cheap labour and vast growth potential in the home market. Though, India is an important iron and steel producing country in the world yet, we are not able to perform to our full potential largely due to: (a) High costs and limited availability of coking coal (b) Lower productivity of labour (c) Irregular supply of energy and (d) Poor infrastructure.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. In which region maximum iron and steel industries concentrated?
   a. Chotanagpur plateau.
   b. Punjab.
   c. Haryana.
   d. Uttarakhand.

ii. Why cheap labour is available in this region?
   a. Large population and poverty in this area.
   b. Big infrastructure.
   c. Rich people.
   d. Availability of natural resources.

iii. Why are we not able to perform our full potential largely?
   a. High costs and limited availability of coking coal.
   b. Lower productivity of labour.
   c. Irregular supply of energy and poor infrastructure.
   d. All of these.

iv. Why most of iron and steel industries are located in this region?
   a. Maximum resources.
   b. Minimum wages.
   c. More transportation.
   d. Maximum concentration of iron and steel.

2. Read the text given below and answer the following questions.

Industrial locations are complex in nature. These are influenced by availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc. It is rarely possible to find all these factors available at one place. Consequently, manufacturing activity tends to locate at the most appropriate place where all the factors of industrial location are either available or can be arranged at lower cost. After an industrial activity starts, urbanisation follows. Sometimes, industries are located in or near the cities. Thus, industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand. Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies. Gradually, a large industrial agglomeration takes place. In the pre-Independence period, most manufacturing units were located in places from the point of view of overseas trade such as Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai, etc. Consequently, there emerged certain pockets of industrially developed urban centres surrounded by a huge agricultural rural hinterland.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. What do you understand by agglomeration economies?
   a. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies.
   b. Making of a cooperative.
   c. Small and cottage industries.
   d. Setting up of industries by an individual.

ii. Which facilities are provided by the cities?
   a. Banking.
   b. Insurance.
   c. Transport.
   d. All of these.

iii. Name the places where most of the manufacturing units were located from the point of view of overseas trade.
   a. Kanpur and Gorakhpur.
   b. Mumbai, Kolkata and Chennai.
   c. Trivandrum.
   d. Kochi.

iv. Which factors influence the setting up of industrial locations?
   a. Infrastructure.
   b. Technological Park.
   c. Shopping complexes and malls.
   d. Availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc.

Map Question:

1. On an outline political map of India, show the major areas having concentration of iron and steel plants in India:

   Durgapur, Bhilodi, Rourkela, Bokaro, Jamshedpur, Vijayanagar, Bhadravati, Vishakhapatnam, and Salem.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers-

1. **Answer:** (c) Gur and khandsari
2. **Answer:** (d) 460
3. **Answer:** (c) Mineral based industries
4. **Answer:** (d) Iron and steel
5. **Answer:** (c) 4 : 2 : 1
6. **Answer:** (c) Ninth
7. **Answer:** (b) 32 kg
8. **Answer:** (d) Steel
9. **Answer:** (a) 8
10. **Answer:** (b) Aluminium
11. **Answer:** (a) 3 percent of the GDP
12. **Answer:** (c) Nitrogenous fertilizers
13. **Answer:** (c) Cement industry
14. **Answer:** (b) 1904
15. **Answer:** (c) 15

Very Short Answers-

1. Ans.

- National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC)
- Oil and Natural Gas Corporation (ONGC)
- Steel Authority of India Limited (SAIL)
- Bharat Heavy Electricals Limited (BHEL)

2. **Ans.** An industry where the investment on the assets of a unit is less than one crore is known as small scale industries.
3. **Ans.** Joint sector Industry
4. **Ans.** Industries in where bulky and heavy weight of raw material is used and heavy finished goods are produced. Example: Iron and steel industry.
5. **Ans.** A molten metal acts as an electrolyte.
6. **Ans.** 1904, Chennai
7. **Ans.** Coking coal, limestone and manganese
8. **Ans.** National Thermal Power Corporation
9. **Ans.** Bombay and Kolkata
10. **Ans.** 2005

Short Answers-

1. Ans.

(i) Cotton textile have a very high demand throughout the country.

(ii) Major inputs like banking, electricity, transportation are available in almost every part of the country.

(iii) Textile industry is labour intensive industry and labour is easily available in India.

(iv) Textile industry requires less technological inputs and can be carried out using simple tools andmachines.

2. Ans.

(i) The industry has close links with agriculture and provides a living to farmers, cotton bull pluckers and workers engaged in ginning, spinning, weaving, dyeing, designing, packaging, tailoring and sewing.

(ii) Agriculture provides raw material to the industry i.e. raw cotton.

3. Ans. :

(i) Lack of good quality long staple cotton

(ii) Erratic power supply

(iii) Out dated machinery and technology

(iv) Low output of workers

(v) Stiff international competition.

4. Ans.

(i) To increase the productivity

(ii) To improve the quality

(iii) Ensuring good prices to the jute farmers

(iv) Enhancing the yield per hectare

The internal demand for jute has been on the increase because –

(i) Government policy of mandatory use of jute packaging

(ii) The growing global concern for environment friendly biodegradable materials.

5. Ans.

(i) High Costs and Limited availability of coking coal.

(ii) Lower productivity of labour

(iii) Shortage of power

(iv) Poor infrastructure.

(v) Low Investment in Research and Development.

6. Ans. Iron and steel industry is called the basic industry because:

(i) It is the industry which lays the foundation of rapid development of other industries such as heavy Engineering, defence equipment, automobiles, aeroplanes etc.

(ii) It is also helpful in providing employment.

(iii) It also helps in the development of agriculture.

7. Ans.

1. **Employment generation:** Manufacturing industry is the main source of employment for large number of skilled as well as unskilled workers.
2. **Foreign exchange:** Export of manufactured goods bring foreign exchange to India.
3. **Reduction of pressure on land:** Manufacturing industry produces products of daily needs and helps the common people to fulfill their basic needs. It reduces pressure on agricultural sector for employment.
4. **Removal of economic problems:** Industrial development is a precondition for the removal ofeconomic problems like poverty, unemployment and economic inequality. It also helps in bringing down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas.

8. Ans. :

1. **Employment:** The jute industry supports 2 61 Lakh workers directly another 40 lakh small and marginal farmers who are engaged in cultivation of jute and Mesta.
2. **Products:** Jute industry provides products of daily use like jute bags, ropes, mats etc.
3. **Foreign Exchange:** Exports of raw jute and manufactured goods bring foreign exchange
4. **Promotion of Small Scale Industry:** Many products of the jute industry are manufactured by cottage and small scale industry. So it promotes decentralization of industry.

9. Ans. North India is regarded as the main centre of the sugar industry and Uttar Pradesh is the leading producer.

Over the time the sugar industry is shifting towards south India. The main reasons behind shifting of the sugar industry towards south India are:

(i) The sugar contents in the cane is higher i.e. 10.5% in Maharashtra and other southern states.

(ii) Climate is suitable for the cultivation of sugarcane.

(iii) South has better export facilities as compared to North.

(iv) Cooperative sugar mills are more successful in management in south India.

(v) The Peninsular climate helps to extend the crushing season by two months in the south India than north India.

10. Ans. Industries can be classified under the following categories on the basis of their main role:

1. **Basic and Key Industries:** Basic and key industries which supply their products or raw materials to manufacture other products. Example: Iron and steel industry, copper smelting and aluminum smelting.
2. **Consumer Industries:** Consumer Industries that produce goods for direct use by consumers. Example: Sugar, Toothpaste, paper, sewing machines and fans etc.

Long Answers-

1. Ans.

1. As an industrial activity starts, urbanization follows.
2. Industries need different types of services such as banking, transport, insurance labour, hotels and educational institute.
3. Such types of services are available in cities only.
4. Cites are markets for many finished industrial products.
5. Many industries leads to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centers known as agglomeration economies.

In the pre independence period, most manufacturing units were located in places from point o view of overseas trade such as Mumbai, Kolkata, Chennai, etc. Consequently, there emerged certain pockets of industrially developed urban centers surrounded by a huge agricultural rural hinterland.

2. Ans. Decentralization of industries reduces the regional disparities of development. Citizens of a nation living in different parts of a country should get the equal opportunities of development.

1. Decentralization of industries solves the problem of unemployment. People are able to get employment.
2. Decentralization of industries assures an uninterrupted flow of goods and services in the market.
3. Decentralization solves the problem of centralization of population. Due to industrialization some cities are densely populated, but due to decentralization of industries the problems of over crowded cities that are solved. It makes people to get work at their homelands.
4. Decentralization of industries is helpful for the fair use of resources of underdeveloped areas.

3. Ans.

1. Manufacturing industry not only help in modernizing agriculture , which forms the backbone of our economy, they also reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sector.
2. Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from the country. This was the main philosophy behind public sector industries and joint sector ventures in India.
3. Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce, and brings in much needed foreign exchange.
4. Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of furnished goods of higher value are prosperous.

4. Ans.

1. **Iron Ore:** Transport of raw material to plant.
2. **Blast Furnace:** Iron ore is melted. Lime stone is fluxing material which is added. Slag is removed. Coke is burnt to heat the ore.
3. **Pig Iron:** Molten materials poured into moulds called pigs.
4. **Shaping Metal:** Rolling, pressing, casting and forging.
5. **Steel making:** Pig iron is further purified by melting and oxidizing the impurities. Manganese, nickel, chromium are added.

5. Ans. Difference between Integrated Steel plants and Mini steel plants:

1. The Integrated Steel plants are larger in size as compared to the Mini steel plants.

2. The Integrated Steel plants handles everything in one single complex-from putting together raw material to steel making, rolling and shaping while the Mini steel plants use steel scrap, sponge iron and sometimes steel ingots supplied by Integrated steel plants.
3. Integrated steel plants manufacture all types of steel but mini steel plants only produce mild and alloy steel of given specification.

Problems faced by the steel Industry:

1. It has to face the tough competition of different steel producing countries especially China.
2. It faces high costs and limited supply of coking coal and irregular supply of electricity.
3. Poor infrastructure.
4. Lower productivity of labour.

6. Ans.

1. Agriculture and industry move hand and hand.
2. The agro industries in India have given a major boost to agriculture by raising its productivity.
3. They depend on the latter for raw materials and sell their products such as irrigation pumps, fertilizers, insecticides, pesticides, plastic and PVC pipes, machines and tools etc. to the farmers.
4. Thus development and competitiveness of manufacturing industry has not only assisted agriculture in increasing their production but also made the production processes very efficient.
5. Industrial labour and employers are dependent on agriculture for the food and other products.

7. Ans.

1. The textile industry is the oldest industry in India. It spread over both the rural and urban areas all over the country during colonial rule.
2. Now a day, in rural areas the hand loom industry is doing its work while in urban areas the textile mills and factories work day and night.
3. Wide market and the availability of raw material, transport, banking and electricity facilities in almost all parts of the country have led to decentralization of cotton mills in different parts of the country.
4. Weaving is highly decentralized to provide scope for incorporating traditional skills and designs of weaving in cotton, silk, zari, embroidery etc.
5. Textile Industry is a labour intensive industry so a large number of people are required in different stages of its working such as weeding, spinning, dyeing, weaving, designing, printing and packing. As labour is easily and cheaply available in all parts of the country so textile mills spread all over India.

8. Ans.

1. The contribution of industry to national economy has not been satisfactory for the last two decades. It has stagnated at 17 percent for mining quarrying, electricity and gas.
2. In comparison to India's 17 percent share in GDP, the East Asian countries have contributed 25 to 35 per cent to their GDP.
3. The desired growth over the next decade is 12 percent.
4. At present growth rate is about 9 to 10 percent and it is expected that we can achieve the growth rate of 12 per cent by some efforts like setting up of the National Manufacturing Competitiveness Council (NMCC).

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of assertion
2. (a) Assertion and Reason both are true, and Reason is the correct explanation of assertion

Case Study Answer:

1.

(i)	(a)	Chotanagpur plateau.
(ii)	(a)	Large population and poverty in this area.
(ii)	(d)	All of these
(iv)	(d)	Maximum concentration of iron and steel.

2.

(i)	(a)	Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies.
(ii)	(d)	All of these
(ii)	(b)	Kochi
(iv)	(d)	Availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc.

Map Answer:

1.



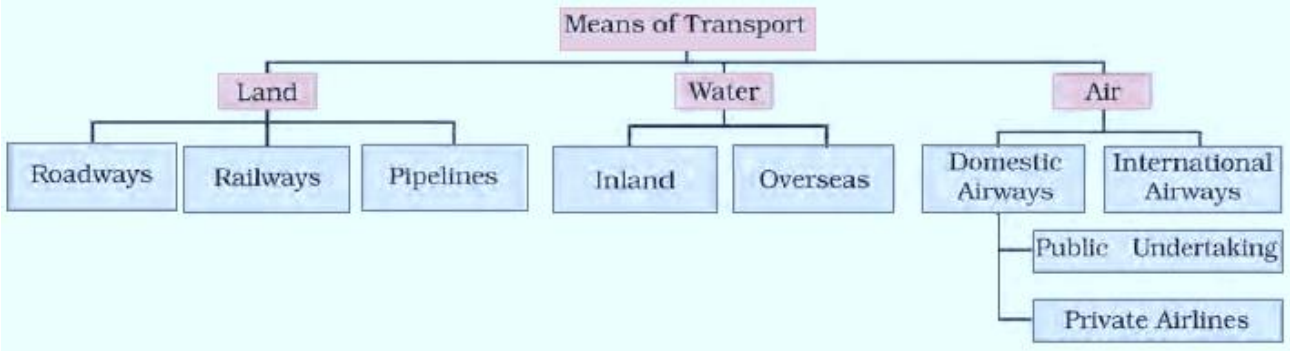
Lifelines of National Economy 7

The movement of these goods and services from their supply locations to demand locations necessitates the need for transport. Some people are engaged in facilitating these movements. These are known to be traders who make the products come to the consumers by transportation. Thus, the pace of development of a country depends upon the production of goods and services as well as their movement over space. Therefore, efficient means of transport are prerequisites for fast development.

Transport plays a crucial role in the development of any economy. Modern means of transport have become the lifelines of our nation.

Transport

Transport or transportation is the movement of people, animals and goods from one location to another.



Roadways



India has one of the largest networks of roadways in the world. The length of road per 100 sq km. of area is known as the density of roads. Kerala has the highest density of roads.

The network of roads in India is denser than the railways because of the following reasons:

- construction cost of roads is much lower than that of railway lines,
- roads can traverse comparatively more dissected and undulating topography,
- roads can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and as such can traverse mountains such as the Himalayas,
- road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances,
- it also provides door-to-door service, thus the cost of loading and unloading is much lower,
- road transport is also used as a feeder to other modes of transport such as they provide a link between railway stations, air and sea ports.

Classification of Roads in India

In India, roads are classified into six major categories.

Types of Roads	Names/Projects	Significance	Maintenance Authority
Golden Quadrilateral Superhighways	The north–south corridors linking Srinagar and Kanyakumari, and the east–west corridors linking Silchar in Assam to Porbandar in Gujarat. A project is on to link Delhi, Kolkata, Chennai and Mumbai by six-lane superhighways.	Link various important cities and reduce the time of travel and distance between mega cities.	National Authority of India (NAI)
National Highways	National highways connect cities and states to one another. Sher Shah Suri Marg is called National Highway No. 1 and runs between Delhi and Amritsar.	Connect various cities across one or more states.	Central Public Works Department (CPWD)
State Highways	The state highways connect capital cities with district headquarters in a state.	Connect various cities within a state.	State Public Works Department (PWD)
District Roads	They connect district headquarters with other places in a district.	Link various towns and cities in a district.	Zilla Parishad
Other Roads	They connect various villages and towns.	Connect villages to one and other and to towns. Crucial to the transport of agricultural products to markets.	Local bodies and funds are also allocated by the Central and State Governments.
Border Roads	They are built along the borders of our country.	Strengthen defences of the country.	Border Road Organisation (works under the Central Government)

Roads can also be classified on the basis of the type of material used for their construction such as metalled and unmetalled roads. Metalled roads may be made of cement, concrete or even bitumen of coal, therefore, and narrow. Unmetalled roads go out of use in the rainy season.

Problems faced by Roads in India:

- Road network is inadequate in India.
- About half of the roads are unmetalled and this limits their usage during the rainy season.
- The roadways are highly congested in cities.
- Most of the bridges are old and narrow.
- Disrespect to the traffic rules is the major problem. Citizen have casual attitude towards traffic rules, which leads to accidents causing traffic jams.

Railways



Railways are an important means of transport for carrying passengers and goods over a long distance. They bind the entire country together. They have contributed to the growth of the national economy by transporting agricultural and industrial products all over the country. The Indian Railways is organised into 16 zones.

Some problems faced by the railways in India are

- It is difficult to lay railway lines over rivers. It can be done by building bridges which is costly.
- It is extremely difficult to lay railway lines in hilly regions because of rugged terrains and steep slopes of the mountains.
- It is not easy to construct railway lines on the sandy plains of Rajasthan, swampy areas of Gujarat and forested regions of Madhya Pradesh, Bihar and Jharkhand.
- Many people travel without tickets causing loss to the Indian Railways. Damage and theft of railway property has also harmed the Indian Railways.

The Indian Railway network runs on multiple gauge operations extending over 68,442 km.

Gauge in metres	Route (Km)	Running Track (Km)	Total Track (Km.)
Broad Gauge (1.676)	63,491	89,521	1,17,560
Metre Gauge (1.000)	3,200	3,462	3,775
Narrow Gauge (0.762 and 0.610)	1,751	1,752	1,901
Total	**68,442**	**94,735**	**1,23,236**

However, despite all the above problems, the railways have immensely contributed to the growth of our economy. More railway lines are being laid to link inaccessible parts of the country. For example, the development of Konkan Railway along the west coast has made the movement of people and goods easier in the region.

Waterways

Waterways are the most important means of transporting bulky and heavy goods. It is a fuel-efficient and environmental friendly means of transport. Inland waterways connect rivers, canals, backwater and creeks within the country. The following waterways have been declared as national waterways by the Government:



Inland waterways widely used in north-eastern states

- **N.W. No.1**: The Ganga river between Allahabad and Haldia (1620 km).
- **N.W. No.2**: The Brahmaputra river between Sadiya and Dhubri (891 km).
- **N.W. No.3**: The West-Coast Canal in Kerala (Kottapurma-Kollam, Udyogamandal and Champakkara canals-205 km).
- **N.W. No.4**: Specified stretches of Godavari and Krishna rivers along with Kakinada Puducherry stretch of canals (1078 km).
- **N.W. No.5**: Specified stretches of river Brahmani along with Matai river, delta channels of Mahanadi and Brahmani rivers and East Coast Canal (588 km)..

Sea Ports

India is a peninsular country and has a long coast line. There are 12 major and 187 minor sea ports in the country. Some famous sea ports are



Trucks being driven into the vessel at Mumbai port

- Mumbai is the biggest port. Jawaharlal Nehru Port was built in order to decongest the Mumbai port.
- Mormugao Port in Goa is an important iron ore-exporting port in the country.
- New Mangalore Port exports iron ore which is concentrated in the Kudremukh mines.
- Kochi Port is located in the extreme southwestern part of the country. It has been developed alongside a natural harbour.
- Tuticorin Port in Tamil Nadu has a natural harbour and exports cargos to our neighbouring countries.
- Chennai is one of the oldest artificial ports of our country. It is next to Mumbai in terms of trading activities.
- Vishakhapatnam is the deepest landlocked port.
- Kolkata is an inland riverine port. Haldia Port was developed to reduce pressure of the Kolkata Port.

Airways

The airways is a fast-developing means of transport in India. Government-owned Indian Airlines and other private airlines provide domestic air services. Pawan Hans Helicopters Ltd. provides helicopter services to Oil and Natural Gas Corporation for its off shore operations.



Advantages of Airways

- It is the fastest means of communication. It has greatly reduced travelling time.
- It can easily travel across mountainous regions, deserts, dense forests and great oceanic stretches.
- During natural calamities such as floods or landslides, it helps in providing relief to affected people who inhabit difficult terrains.

The greatest disadvantage of air travel is that it is an expensive means of transport and is not within the reach of common people. Only in the northeastern parts of the country, special provisions are provided to the people.

Pipelines

Pipeline network uses pipes, usually underground, to transport and distribute fluids. These are used to transport water, crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas, fertilizer factories and big thermal power plants. Solids can also be transported through a pipeline when converted into slurry.



There are 3 important networks of pipeline transportation in the country.

- From oil field in upper Assam to Kanpur (Uttar Pradesh)
- From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab
- From Hazira in Gujarat to Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh

Communication

- Some important means of communication are television, radio, press, newspapers and telecom. The Indian postal network is the largest in the world. It handles parcels and written communications.
- First class mail includes cards and envelopes and second class mail includes books and newspapers. Six mail channels have been opened to ensure quick transport of mails. They are Rajdhani channel, Metro channel, Green channel, Business channel, Bulk mail channel and Periodical channel.
- India has one of the largest telecom networks in Asia. Subscriber Trunk Dialing—STD facilities have now been provided to even far-off villages.

- Mass communication such as radio, TV and newspapers creates awareness among people about various policies of the state and country. Many programmes in local languages are broadcasted across various regions of the country.
- Doordarshan is the national television channel of India and is one of the largest terrestrial networks in the world.
- Several newspapers, magazines and periodicals are published in several local languages across the country.



Emergency call box on NH-8

Digital India is an umbrella programme to prepare India for a knowledge based transformation. The focus of Digital India Programme is on being transformative to realise – IT (Indian Talent) + IT (Information Technology)=IT (India Tomorrow) and is on making technology central to enabling change.

International Trade

- The exchange of goods across states and countries is known as trade. Trade between two countries is known as international trade.
- International trade determines the economic prosperity of the country.
- Balance of trade is the difference between the exports and imports of a country. When exports are more than imports, it is known as favourable balance of trade. When imports are more than exports, it is known as unfavourable balance of trade.
- Major exports of India include agriculture and allied products, minerals and ores, gems and jewellery and coal. India mainly imports petroleum and petroleum products, pearls and precious stones, coal, coke and machinery. The IT industry of India earns a large amount of foreign exchange for the country.
- Tourism is also an important industry. More than 5.78 million foreign tourists visited India in 2010. The tourism industry employs more than 15 million people in the country.
- It also provides support to the handicrafts sector and promotes our culture.
- Some important tourist states of India are Jammu and Kashmir, Himachal Pradesh, Uttaranchal, Rajasthan and the temple towns of south India.

Tourism as a Trade

- Foreign tourist's arrivals in the country witnessed an increase of 11.8 per cent during the year 2010 as against the year 2009, contributing Rs 64,889 crore of foreign exchange in 2010.
- More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry.

Importance of Tourism

- Tourism promotes national integration, provides support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- It also helps in the development of international understanding about our culture and heritage.

Tourism in India

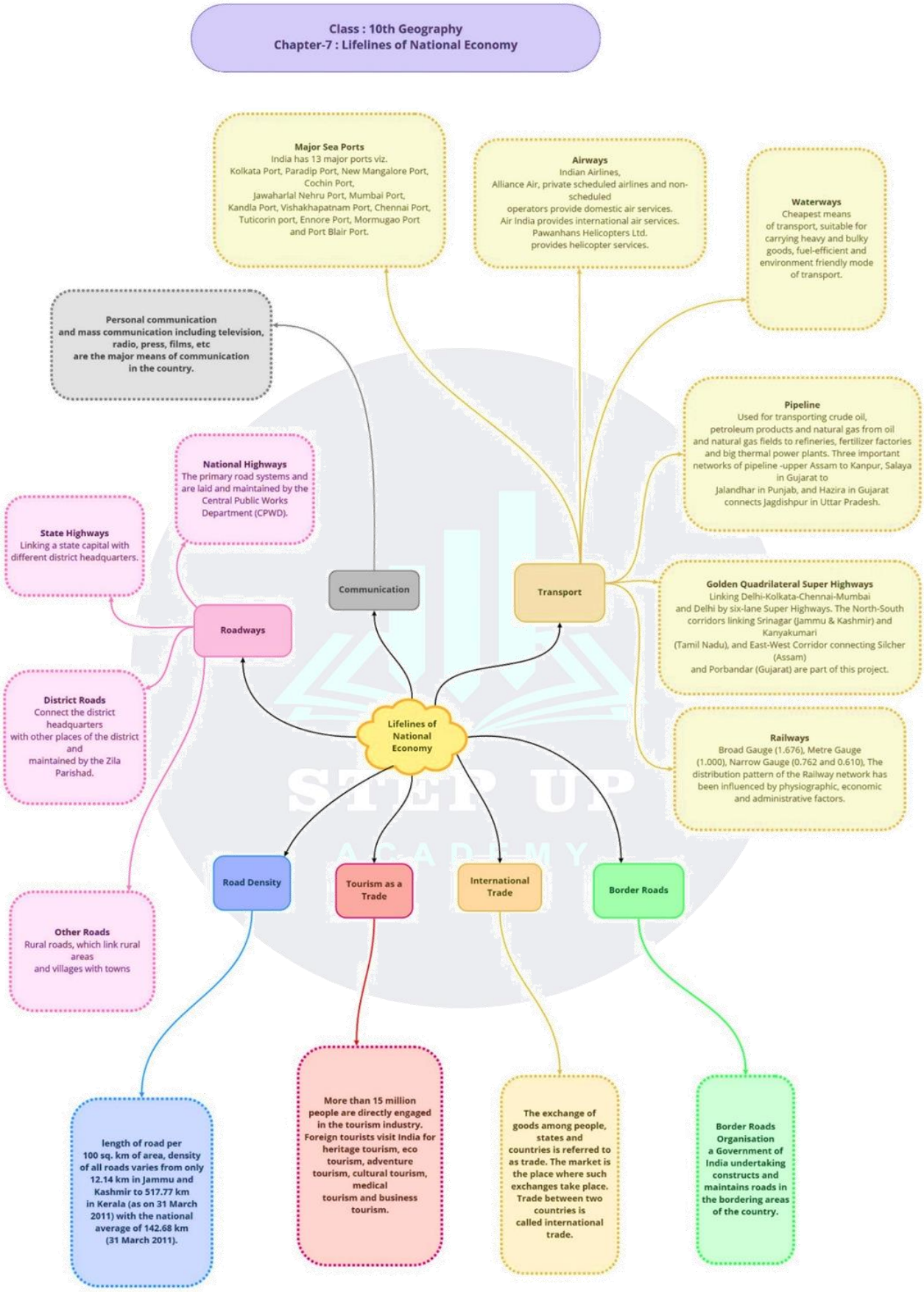
- Indian is ranked worlds 4th best holiday haven.
- More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry.
- Tourism also promotes national integration, provides support to local handicrafts and cultural pursuits.
- It also helps in the development of international understanding about our culture and heritage.
- Foreign tourists visit India for heritage tourism, eco tourism, adventure tourism, cultural tourism, medical tourism and business tourism.
- Rajasthan, Goa, Jammu and Kashmir and temple towns of south India are important destinations of foreign tourists in India. There is vast potential of tourism development in the north-eastern states and the interior parts of Himalayas, but due to strategic reasons these have not been encouraged so far.



India: National Highways



India: Major Ports and Some International Airport


Class : 10th Geography
Chapter-7 : Lifelines of National Economy
Major Sea Ports
India has 13 major ports viz.
Kolkata Port, Paradip Port, New Mangalore Port, Cochin Port,
Jawaharlal Nehru Port, Mumbai Port,
Kandla Port, Vishakhapatnam Port, Chennai Port,
Tuticorin port, Ennore Port, Mormugao Port
and Port Blair Port.
Airways
Indian Airlines,
Alliance Air, private scheduled airlines and non-scheduled
operators provide domestic air services.
Air India provides international air services.
Pawanhans Helicopters Ltd.
provides helicopter services.
Waterways
Cheapest means
of transport, suitable for carrying heavy and bulky goods, fuel-efficient and environment friendly mode of transport.
Personal communication
and mass communication including television, radio, press, films, etc
are the major means of communication
in the country.
Pipeline
Used for transporting crude oil,
petroleum products and natural gas from oil and natural gas fields to refineries, fertilizer factories and big thermal power plants. Three important networks of pipeline -upper Assam to Kanpur, Salaya in Gujarat to
Jalandhar in Punjab, and Hazira in Gujarat
connects Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh.
National Highways
The primary road systems and are laid and maintained by the Central Public Works Department (CPWD).
State Highways
Linking a state capital with different district headquarters.
Communication
Transport
Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways
Linking Delhi-Kolkata-Chennai-Mumbai
and Delhi by six-lane Super Highways. The North-South corridors linking Srinagar (Jammu & Kashmir) and Kanyakumari
(Tamil Nadu), and East-West Corridor connecting Silcher (Assam)
and Porbandar (Gujarat) are part of this project.
Roadways
Lifelines of National Economy
District Roads
Connect the district headquarters
with other places of the district and
maintained by the Zila Parishad.
Railways
Broad Gauge (1.676), Metre Gauge
(1.000), Narrow Gauge (0.762 and 0.610), The distribution pattern of the Railway network has been influenced by physiographic, economic and administrative factors.
Road Density
Tourism as a Trade
International Trade
Border Roads
Other Roads
Rural roads, which link rural areas
and villages with towns
length of road per
100 sq. km of area, density of all roads varies from only 12.14 km in Jammu and Kashmir to 517.77 km
in Kerala (as on 31 March 2011) with the national average of 142.68 km
(31 March 2011).
More than 15 million people are directly engaged in the tourism industry. Foreign tourists visit India for heritage tourism, eco tourism, adventure tourism, cultural tourism, medical
tourism and business tourism.
The exchange of goods among people, states and countries is referred to as trade. The market is the place where such exchanges take place. Trade between two countries is called international trade.
Border Roads Organisation a Government of India undertaking constructs and maintains roads in the bordering areas of the country.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Which one of the following groups of cities is connected by the National Highway No. 1?
   (a) Kolkata-Amritsar
   (b) Ranchi-Kolkata
   (c) Delhi-Punjab
   (d) Varanasi-Kanyakumari
2. National Waterway No. 1 is navigable between which of the following places?
   (a) Sadiya and Dhubri
   (b) Allahabad and Haldia
   (c) Udyogamandal and Champakkara
   (d) Kottapuram and Komman
3. Which one of the following ports is the biggest with a spacious natural and well-sheltered harbour?
   (a) Kolkata
   (b) Chennai
   (c) Mumbai
   (d) Vishakhapatnam
4. Port was developed as a subsidiary port in order to relieve growing pressure on the Kolkata port.
   (a) Haldia
   (b) Kochi
   (c) Kandla
   (d) Vishakhapatnam
5. Which one of the following is considered as the first-class mail by the Indian postal network?
   (a) Cards and envelopes
   (b) Registered periodicals
   (c) Book packets
   (d) Registered newspapers
6. Which one of the following is the southernmost international airport in India?
   (a) Nedimbacherry
   (b) Chhatrapati Shivaji
   (c) Raja Sansi
   (d) Meenam Bakkam
7. Which one of the following is the oldest port of the eastern coast of India?
   (a) Kolkata (Haldia)
   (b) Vishakhapatnam
   (c) Tuticorin
   (d) Chennai (Madras)
8. Narrow Gauge railway line is found in
   (a) the Northern Plains
   (b) the hilly areas of Darjeeling, Shillong and Ooty
   (c) deserts of Rajasthan
   (d) the Central Highlands
9. Which one of the following is not an advantage of pipeline transportation?
   (a) Pipelines are used for transporting crude oil and gas from fields to refineries.
   (b) Solids can be transported in slurry form through pipelines.
   (c) Pipelines rule out trans-shipment losses or delays.
   (d) Initial cost of laying a pipeline is high.
10. Which organisation constructs and maintains roads in the border areas?
    (a) NHAI
    (b) BRO
    (c) Pradhan Mantri Grameen Sadak Yojana
    (d) BSF
11. Which one of the following ports is a tidal port?
    (a) Mumbai
    (b) New Mangalore port
    (c) Kandla
    (d) Vishakhapatnam
12. Which one of the following ports was developed in order to relieve the pressure of Kolkata port?
    (a) Paradip port
    (b) Tuticorin port
    (c) Haldia port
    (d) Chennai port

13. Which two extreme locations are connected by the North-South Corridor?
    (a) Amritsar and Tuticorin
    (b) Srinagar and Tiruvananthapuram
    (c) Srinagar and Tuticorin
    (d) Srinagar and Kanyakumari
14. National Waterway No. 1 is navigable between which of the following places?
    (a) Between Sadiya and Dhubri
    (b) Between Allahabad and Haldia
    (c) Between Kottapuram and Komman
    (d) Between Udyogamandal and Champakkara
15. Which one of the following is the oldest artificial port of the country?
    (a) Tuticorin
    (b) Vishakhapatnam
    (c) Chennai
    (d) Mumbai

Very Short Questions-

1. Name the language in which the largest numbers of newspapers are published in India?
2. Which is first port to be developed just after independence?
3. What is India's position among the best tourist destinations of the world?
4. Name any two airlines that provide domestic air services.
5. Name the oldest artificial port and second most important port of the country?
6. Which mean of transportation carried 95 percent of India's trade volume?
7. Which mean of transport is a new arrival on the map of India?
8. Which is the longest National Highway of India?
9. Name the extreme cities which are connected by East-west Corridors?
10. Which department is responsible for the construction and maintenance of the District Roads?

Short Questions-

1. What is international trade? What do you mean by Balance of trade'? What is the importance of trade?
2. Mention the different means of transport in India.
3. What are the means of mass communication? Explain features of any two media.
4. What are the different types of roads in India?
5. What do you mean by pipeline transport?
6. Rich agriculture resources and Great Industrial activities in the Great Plains as compared with Himalayan Mountains, further provides favourable conditions for the development of Railway
7. India has one of the largest telecom networks in Asia. Explain?
8. Explain the important pipeline networks in India.
9. What is the work of NHAI, CPWD and SPWD? Explain.
10. Describe the main features of the Indian postal network.

Long Questions-

1. No countries can survive without international trade. Explain.
2. "Railways are the principal mode of transportation in India" Explain.
3. How do physiographic and economic factors influence the distribution pattern of Indian railway network? Explain with example.
4. Explain the major sea ports of India situated on Western coastline.
5. Name any two navigational Rivers of India? In which part of India Inland Water ways are widely used? Write two Merits and Demerits of Inland water Transport.
6. Efficient network of transport and communication is a pre-requisite for local, national and global trade of today? Explain.
7. Explain the different reason for the growing importance of road transport vis-à-vis rail transport.
8. Explain the features of any five western ports of India.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** - In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
b. If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
c. If assertion is true but reason is false.
d. If both assertion and reason are false.

Assertion (A): Mass communication promotes national integration and provides entertainment

Reason (R): It strengthens democracy in the country by providing news to the masses. they feel attached to the country and a feeling of nationalism arises in them.

2. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

a. If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
b. If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.
c. If assertion is true but reason is false.
d. If both assertion and reason are false.

Assertion (A): Road transportation in India faces a number of problems.

Reason (R): Roads are unmetalled and their network is inadequate.

Case Study Questions:

1. Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India. Railways also make it possible for people to conduct multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances. Apart from being an important means of transport, the Indian Railways have been a great integrating force for more than 150 years. Railways in India bind the economic life of the country as well as accelerate the development of industry and agriculture. The Indian Railway is now reorganised into 16 zones. The distribution pattern of the Railway network in the country has been largely influenced by physiographic, economic, and administrative factors. The Northern plains with their vast level, high population density, and rich agricultural resources provided the most favorable condition for their growth. However, a large number of rivers requiring the construction of bridges across their wide beds posed some obstacles. In the hilly terrains of the peninsular region, railway tracts are laid through low hills, gaps or tunnels

i. Which of the following factors are responsible for distribution pattern of railways network in the country? Identify the correct option:
(a) Topographical factors
(b) Economic and administrative factors
(c) Social factors
(d) Both (a) and (b)

ii. When was the first railway line opened in India?
(a) 1803
(b) 1823
(c) 1853
(d) 1854

iii. Why Indian railway network is mostly concentrated in Ganga Plains?
(a) Due to concentration of Industries.
(b) Due to topographical uniformity and high density of population.
(c) Due to high agricultural production.
(d) Due to lack of economic opportunities.

iv. Why are the Indian Railways called the lifeline of the country?
(a) Railways in India bind the economic life of the country.
(b) It is the largest public undertaking in the country.
(c) Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.
(d) All of the above

v. Why is it essential to develop a unigauge system of railways in our country?
(a) It will lead to a reduction in trans-shipment.
(b) Because it has a larger capacity.
(c) Both (a) and (b)
(d) It will bring administrative convenience.

Map Question:

1. Identify the national highways shown on an outline map of India and write their names on the lines marked in the map.

Answer Key

MCQ Answers

1. **Answer**: (c) Delhi-Punjab
2. **Answer**: (b) Allahabad and Haldia
3. **Answer**: (c) Mumbai
4. **Answer**: (a) Haldia
5. **Answer**: (a) Cards and envelopes
6. **Answer**: (a) Nedimbacherry
7. **Answer**: (d) Chennai (Madras)
8. **Answer**: (b) the hilly areas of Darjeeling, Shillong and Ooty
9. **Answer**: (d) Initial cost of laying a pipeline is high.
10. **Answer**: (b) BRO
11. **Answer**: (c) Kandla
12. **Answer**: (c) Haldia port
13. **Answer**: (d) Srinagar and Kanyakumari
14. **Answer**: (b) Between Allahabad and Haldia
15. **Answer**: (c) Chennai

Very Short Answers -

1. **Ans.** Hindi
2. **Ans.** Kandla Port
3. **Ans.** Forth
4. **Ans.** Indian Airlines and Alliance Air
5. **Ans.** Chennai port
6. **Ans.** Water ways
7. **Ans.** Pipeline
8. **Ans.** National Highway-1
9. **Ans.** Silcher (Assam) and Porbander (Gujarat).
10. **Ans.** Zila Parishad

Short Answers-

1. **Ans.** Trade between two countries is called international trade. It includes exchange of commodities, services, information and knowledge.

Relation or difference between nation's exports and imports is called balance of trade. It is of two types:

(i) **Surplus trade:** when the value of exported goods and services is more than the value of imported goods and services. It is called favorable trade balance.

(ii) **Trade Deficit:** when the value of exported goods and services is less than the value of imported goods and services. It is called unfavorable trade balance.

The importance of trade is:

1. No country can survive without international trade because resources are space bound.
2. Advancement of international trade of a country leads to its economic prosperity because such a trade providesso many jobs to workers as well as business to traders.
3. It is through international trade that we earn much of our foreign exchange which is required for importing many essential goods.
4. Foreign trade helps in transfer of technology.

2. **Ans.** Means of transport in India are:-

(i) Roadways

(ii) Waterways

(iii) Airways

(iv) Pipelines

(v) Railways

3. **Ans.** These are those means of communication through which one can communicate with several people at the same time. For example- Radio, newspaper and **T.V.(Television):**

(i) It is one of the largest and essential networks in the world.

(ii) It provides entertainment and keeps the viewers well informed about the world.

Radio:-

(i) It is the cheapest and the most effective means of communication.

(ii) Besides entertainment, it also provides information and promotes social education.

4. **Ans.** There are six types of roads:-

1. Golden Quadrilateral Super Highways or Expressway National Highways

2. National Highways
3. State Highways
4. District Roads
5. Other Roads or Rural Roads or Village Roads
6. Border Roads

5. **Ans.** Transportation of liquid, gases or slurries through pipes made of durable metal or a plastic tube is called pipeline transport. It is the most convenient mode of transport for crude oil, petroleum products and natural gas even solids like iron ore in slurry form to refineries, fertilizer factories, industries and big thermal power plants.

For example:. From oil field in From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab, via Viramgam, Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat. It has branches to connect Koyali (near Vadodara, Gujarat) Chakshu and other places.

Gas pipeline from Hazira in Gujarat connects Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh, via Vijaipur in Madhya Pradesh. It has branches to Kota in Rajasthan, Shahajahanpur, Babrala and other places in Uttar Pradesh (HVJ).

6. **Ans.** The northern plains with their vast level land, high population density and rich agriculture resource provide the most favorable conditions for their growth. Level land provides the favourable condition for the construction of railway tracks. Due to dense population, people prefer railways for journey. It brings huge capital for the railway department. Railways in plain are very helpful for the development and industries.

The Himalayan region like Jammu and Kashmir, Assam, Uttaranchal and other hilly states too are unfavorable for the construction of railway lines due to high relief, less density of population and lack of economic opportunities.

7. **Ans.** India has one of the largest telecom networks in Asia. Excluding urban places more than two thirds of the villages in India have already been covered with subscriber Trunk Dialing telephone facility. By the end of 2004-2005, India was the 10th largest telecom network in the world measured in terms of number of phones. Our Government has made the special provision to extend twenty-four hour STD facility to every village in the country. There is uniform rate of STD facility all over India. In India more than 45 million cellular subscribers and cellular customer care bases are growing at very fast rate.

8. **Ans.**

1. From Oil field in upper Assam to Kanpur, via Guwati, Barauni and Allahabaad. It has branches Baruni to Haldia via Rajbabdh, Rajbabdh to Maurigram and Guwati to Silguri.
2. From Salaya in Gujarat to Jalandhar in Punjab, via Viramgam, Mathura, Delhi and Sonipat. It has branches to connect Koyali (near Vadodra, Gujarat) Chakshu and other places.
3. Gas pipeline fron Hazira in Gujarat connects Jagdishpur in Uttar Pradesh, via Vijaypur in Madhya Pradesh. It has branches to Kota in Rajasthan, Shahajahanpur, Babrala and other places in Uttar Paradesh.

9. **Ans.**

1. **NHAI:** National Highway Authority of India laid and maintained the major roads of India like Golden Quadrilateral and Super Highways.
2. **CPWD:** Central Public Works Department laid and maintained the primary road system of India like National Highways.
3. **SPWD:** State Public Works Department laid and maintained the state highways of Indian states and Union Territories.

10. **Ans.**

1. Indian postal network is the largest network of the in the world.
2. There are two types of mail-First class mail and Second class mail.
3. First class mail includes cards and envelop.
4. Second class mail includes book packets, registered newspapers and periodicals.
5. For quick delivery of mails, six channels have been introduced. These are Rajdhani, Channels, Metro Channel, Green Channel, Business Channel, Bulk Mail Channel and Periodical channel.

Long Answers-

1. **Ans.** Yes, no countries in the world are self-sufficient in all its needs. Goods produced by one nation are required in the other nation and vice versa. The difference in needs, resources requirements and development among nations create conditions for international trade.

International trade helps in exchange of surplus goods with those of deficit countries through foreign trade. India has adopted the policy of Liberalization in 1991, because the economic development growth rate was very slow and India lacks behind in the terms of technology. International trade helps India to improve advanced technology of other countries to improve its own production process. Foreign trade has helped India to improve its productivity of manufactured goods. International trade contributes to India's economic growth and raised the income level of people. It also increases the foreign exchange reserve.

2. Ans.

1. Railways are the principal mode of transportation for freight and passengers in India.
2. Railways also make it possible to conduct multifarious activities like business, sightseeing, and pilgrimage along with transportation of goods over longer distances.
3. Apart from an important means of transport the Indian Railway has been great integrating force for more than 150 years.
4. Railways in India bind the economic life of the country as well as accelerate the development of the industry and agriculture.
5. The Indian Railways have a network of 7,031 stations spread over a rout length of 63,221 km. with a fleet of 7817 locomotives, 5321 passenger services vehicles, 4904 other coach vehicles and 228,170 wagons as on 31 March 2004.

3. Ans.

1. The level and extensive northern plains with high density of population, high density of population, high industrial activity and rich agriculture, favour development of railways. However the wide rivers that flow here cannot be crossed without bridges which become an additional cost for railways.
2. The high relief, sparse population and lack of economic opportunities in the Himalayan region create unfavorable conditions for laying the railway lines. Frequent landslides and rock fall are additional problem.
3. The peninsular regions with their hilly terrains also make it different to lay railway tracks. In such areas, railway tracks have to be laid through low hills or gaps or tunnels.
4. The low flood plains of Assam and Bihar, where floods are common, have difficulty in maintaining railway lines.
5. Deserts of Rajasthan and the hilly tracks of the Sahayadris were unfavorable for development of railways.

4. Ans.

1. Kandla Port: Kandla in Kuchchh was the first port developed soon after independence to ease the volume of trade on Mumbai port in the wake of loss of Karachi port to Pakistan after the Partition. Kandla is a tidal port.
2. Mumbai Port: Mumbai is the biggest port with a spacious natural and well sheltered harbour.
3. Jawaharlal Nehru Port: Jawaharlal Nehru port was planned with a view to decongest the Mumbai port and serve as a hub port for this region.
4. Marmagao Port (Goa): It is the premier iron exporting port of the country. This port account for about fifty percent of India's iron ore export.
5. New Mangalore Port: New Mangalore port located in Karnataka caters to the export iron ore concentrates from kudermukh mines.
6. Kochi Port: Kochi is the extreme south-western port, located at the entrance of a lagoon with a natural harbour.

5. Ans. Ganga and Brahmaputra are two navigational Rivers of India.

Inland waterways are widely used in North-Eastern States of India.

Merits:

1. It is cheapest mean of transport.
2. It is very beneficial for our internal trade and carrying of passengers is concerned.

Demerits:

1. Such a mean of transport is very limited in scope.
2. Very few rivers and too for short distance are navigable

6. **Ans.** We use different materials and services in our daily life. Some of these are available in our immediate surroundings, while other requirements are met by bringing things from other places. Goods and services do not move from supply locales to demand locals on their own. The movement of these goods and services from their supply locations to demand locations necessitates the need for transport. Some people engaged in facilitating these movements. These are known to be traders who make the products come to the consumers by transportation. Thus, the place of development of a country depends upon the production of goods and services as well as their movement over space. Transport promotes internal as well as international trade. It helps to maintain the defense of country, transport and communication contributes to the promotion of tourism and it brings foreign exchange. Therefore, efficient means of transport are pre-requisites for fast development.

7. **Ans.**
   1. Construction of roads is much lower than that of railway lines.
   2. Roads can traverse comparatively more dissected and undulating topography.
   3. Roads can negotiate higher gradients of slopes and as such can traverse mountains such as the Himalayas.
   4. Road transport is economical in transportation of few persons and relatively smaller amount of goods over short distances.
   5. It also provides door to door service, thus the cost of loading and unloading is much lower.
   6. Road transport is also used as a feeder to other modes transport such as they provide a link between railway station, air and sea ports.

8. **Ans. Tuticorin Port:** Tuticorin in Tamil Nadu, located at the south eastern extremely of the country has a natural harbour and a rich hinterland and handles cargoes to Sri Lanka and Maldives.
   1. **Chennai Port:** Chennai is the one of the oldest ports of Tamil Nadu and has an artificial harbour. It ranks next to Mumbai, in terms of volume of trade and cargo.
   2. **Vishakhapatnam Port:** Vishakhapatnam is the deepest; land locked and protected port on the east coast.
   3. **Paradip Port:** Pradip Port in Odisha, in mainly developed for export of iron Ore.
   4. **Kolkata Port:** Kolkata, a major riverine port and a tidal port. It has a vast and rich hunter land of Ganga and Brahmaputra basin.

Assertion Reason Answer:

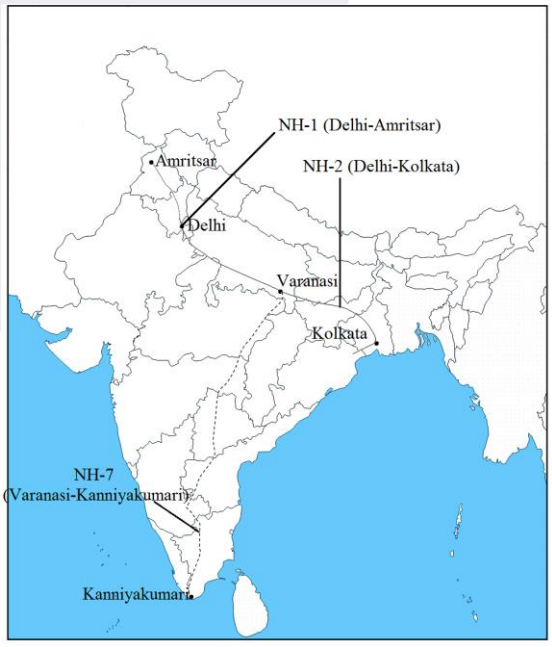
1. (a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.
2. (a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (d) Both (a) and (b)
   ii. (c) 1853
   iii. (b) Due to topographical uniformity and high density of population.
   iv. (d) All of the above
   v. (c) Both (a) and (b)

Map Answer:

1.



HISTORY

Rise of Nationalism in Europe 1

The French Revolution and the Idea of the Nation

Frederic Sorrieu was a French artist who in 1848 prepared a series of four prints visualising his dream of a world made up of 'Democratic and Social Republics'.



The Dream of Worldwide Democratic and Social Republics – The Pact Between Nations, a print prepared by Frédéric Sorrieu, 1848

The features of Frédéric Sorrieu's paintings were:

- The people of Europe and America marching in a long line are paying homage to the Statue of Liberty. This shows that they wanted and appreciated the principles of liberty, equality and fraternity.
- On the foreground of the image lie the shattered symbols of monarchial regimes signifying the downfall of the monarchial and absolutists regimes.
- In this image, people are grouped as distinct nations identified by their flags and national costumes. This depict the rise of **nation states** in Europe and America.

A Nation State refers to a country with well-defined delineated boundaries, resided by people with a similar culture, ethnic shared history and character. It is also supposed to have a government of its choice. The people in a Nation State are supposed to have unity, strength and cooperation.

The French Revolution and the Idea of Nation

The French Revolution is regarded as one of the most important events in history. It not only gave a huge setback to monarchy but also gave the first clear expression to the idea of 'nationalism'. The French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from monarchy to the French citizens. The Constitution in France came into existence and citizens were awarded with the rights of liberty and equality.

The French revolutionaries introduced various measures and practices to create a sense of collective identity amongst the French people. These were:

- The ideas of *la patrie* (the fatherland) and *le citoyen* (the citizen) was introduced.
- The Estates General was renamed the 'National Assembly'. Its members were elected by active citizens (citizens who paid taxes to the government).
- The new French flag replaced the former royal standard.
- Nation now became supreme. Hymns were composed and oaths were taken on the name of the nation. It was regarded as a 'fatherland'.
- The administrative system was centralised, and uniform laws were formulated for all citizens.
- A uniform system of weights and measures was adopted, and internal custom duties and dues were abolished.
- The French language was made the common language of the people residing in France.
- The revolutionaries declared that their next motive is to help other people of Europe to become nations.

The French Revolution impacted the middle class including professionals and students in several countries such as Switzerland, Holland, Italy and Belgium. They also wanted to throw off the monarchies in their countries and become nations.

Napoleon – Child of the French Revolution

The rise of Napoleon marked the rise of monarchy in France. However, Napoleon implemented some revolutionary ideas and principles in France. He did this by taking the following steps:



- He introduced the Civil Code of 1804, also known as the Napoleonic Code. This Code instituted the principle of equality of all people before the law, right to property was established and all privileges enjoyed by the people of high birth and class were abolished.
- This Code was also promulgated to other parts of Europe which were controlled by France.
- In many European countries such as Switzerland, Germany, Dutch Republic and Italy, he simplified the administrative machinery ended the feudal system and liberated the peasants from serfdom.
- In towns, restrictions imposed on guilds were removed, and transport and communication systems were improved. Businessmen, small industrialist and traders began to realise the importance and advantages of a uniform system of laws.
- People of other European countries initially welcomed the French armies but later began to oppose them because of increased taxation and censorship imposed on them.

The Beginning of Nationalism in Europe

During the mid-eighteenth century, there were no nation states in Europe. Italy, Germany and Switzerland were not one nation but were divided into various kingdoms. Central and eastern Europe was under absolute monarchies. Several factors led to the emergence of the idea of nationalism in the later half the eighteenth century. Some of these were the rise of the middle class, liberalism and the rise of a new conservatism after 1815 and its opposition by the people.

Rise of the new middle class: The aristocratic class in Europe was a dominant class, but it was comprised of only few people. Most of the people in Europe were peasants. The Industrial Revolution resulted in the emergence of the labour or working class. Many small industrialists, businessmen and professionals who formed the middle class gained prominence. These classes supported the abolition of aristocratic privileges, demanded equality and advocated the idea of nationalism.

Liberalism: The middle class stood for 'liberalism'. Liberalism in political terms stood for equality, freedom, formation and working of government by consent. In the economic field, liberalism advocated the freedom of markets and the abolition of unjust duties on the movement of goods from one territory to the other. This led to the beginning of economic nationalism in Europe which contributed to the rise of nationalism. The new commercial class argued for the creation of a unified economic territory allowing the unhindered movement of goods, people and capital. Later, several measures were introduced. Some of these were

- In 1834, a customs union called 'zollverein' was formed at the initiative of Prussia. Several German states joined this union
- The union abolished tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from over thirty to two.
- The introduction of railways created mobility leading to the national unification.
- The creation of a network of railways further stimulated mobility harnessing economic interests to national unification.
- We find that a wave of economic nationalism strengthened the wider nationalist sentiments growing at the time.

Rise of New Conservatism and its opposition by the people

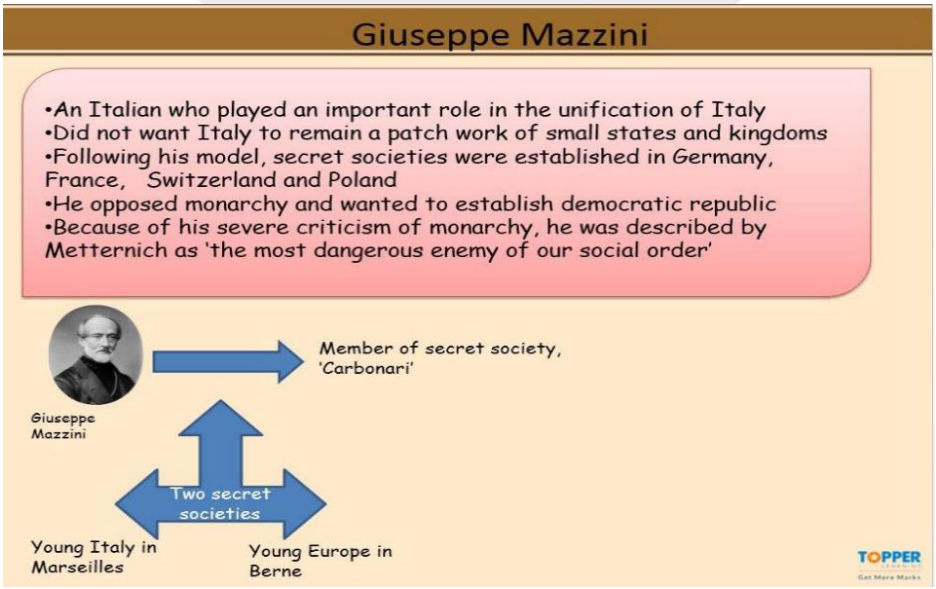
After the defeat of Napoleon, there was a rise of new conservatism.

The Congress of Vienna was held in 1815 in which Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria participated to draw up settlement for Europe. The Congress was hosted by the Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich. Some results of the Congress of Vienna were:

- Monarchy was restored in France and strengthened in Prussia, Belgium and Austria. Autocratic governments were set up in these countries.
- A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent French expansion in future.

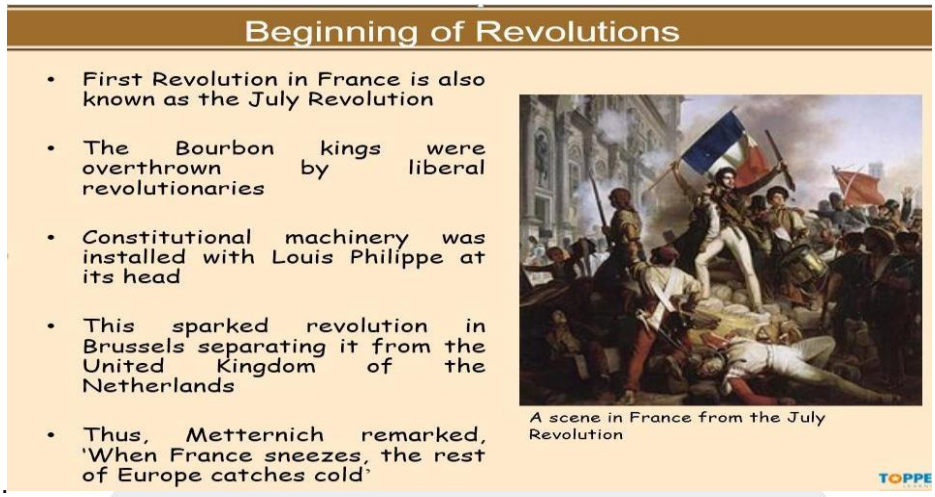
  Conservative regimes set up in 1815 were autocratic. They did not tolerate dissent and imposed censorship on those materials and articles in newspapers, books, plays and songs that reflected the ideas of liberty and freedom.

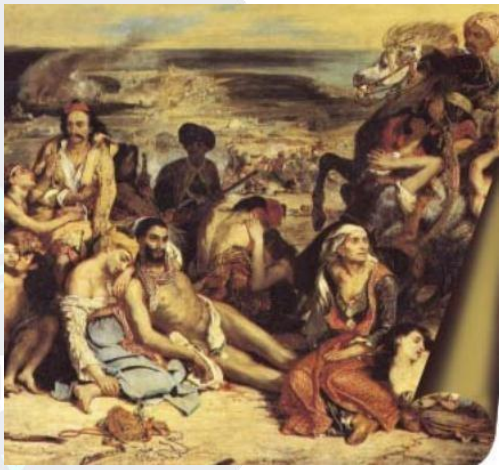
  These conservative ideas gave rise to liberal nationalists and revolutionaries. Liberals were opposed to monarchical governments. They advocated liberty and freedom and the creation of nation states. After 1815, many liberal nationalists went underground and established several secret societies.



The Age of Revolutions (1830-48)

Nationalism emerged not only as a result of wars and battles. Culture played an important role in creating the idea of the nation. Art, painting, poetry, stories and music played an important role in strengthening the feeling of nationalism





Romanticism was a cultural movement in which the artists romanticised human feelings and emotions. This was done to create a common cultural past as the basis of a nation. Stress was laid on vernacular languages and folklore. This gave communities who were living under the control of other powerful nations a cultural identity. For example, the people of Poland who were under Russian control defied the ban on speaking Polish. This was a kind of struggle to overthrow the Russian rule from their territory and to become an independent nation. Similarly, German philosopher Johann Gottfried Herder claimed that true German culture was to be discovered among the common people – 'das volk'.

The emphasis was laid on using vernacular language and the collection of local folklore not only to discover an ancient national sprit, but also to carry the message of modern nationalists to illiterate people.

Hunger, Hardships and Revolts

The 1830s were years of great economic hardship in Europe. It was because:

- During the 1830s, there was a large-scale unemployment in Europe. In most of the European countries, employment opportunities were less whereas job seekers were many.
- Cities had come to be extremely overcrowded. As a result, slums had started coming up as more people migrated from the rural to urban areas.
- Small producers in towns were often faced with stiff competition from the imports of cheap machine-made goods from England where industrialisation was more advanced, especially in textile production.
- Peasants struggled under the burden of feudal dues and obligations. The rise of food prices or a year of bad harvest led to widespread poverty in town and country.

The Revolutions of the Liberals

The year 1848 was a year of revolts. These revolts were led by the educated middle class.

- In the revolution of February 1848, the French monarch was dethroned and the country became a republic based on universal male suffrage (right to vote was given to all men).

- In other parts of Europe nation-states did not yet exist such as Germany, Italy and Poland. The men and women of the liberal middle classes demanded constitutionalism with national unification

  In Germany, people of educated middle class came together and decided to vote for an all- German National Assembly.
- On 18May 1848, 831 elected representatives marched to take their places in the Frankfurt Parliament. They drafted a constitution for a German nation to be headed by a monarchy subjected to Parliamentary control.
- The Prussian monarch Friedrich Wilhelm IV rejected the constitution. The German Parliament which resisted the demands of the workers and artisans lost their support. Later, the parliament led by the educated middle class was forced to disband.
- At this time, women all over Europe campaigned for securing voting rights.

Unification of Germany and Italy

Germany and Italy were European nations which were divided into various kingdoms. The unification of Germany and Italy were important events in world history.

Unification of Germany



The newly emerged middle class in Germany in 1848 tried to unite several German kingdoms which were suppressed by monarchies and large landowners into one nation state governed by an elected body.

- Prussia, a German kingdom, took the leadership in uniting various German states. Otto von Bismarck, the Chief Minister of Prussia, aimed to achieve the goal of unification with the help of the Prussian army and the bureaucracy.
- Spread over seven years, the Prussian army with the help of the Austrian, French and Danish armies fought three wars and successfully incorporated all the small German kingdoms. This marked the process of completion of German unification.
- In 1871, William I was declared as the emperor of Germany at the Palace of Versailles. The process of the unification of Gernamy exhibited the power of the Purssian state. Many new reforms were initiated in banking, currency, administration and judiciary in Gernamy.



Unification of Italy



- Italy was also politically fragmented into various small states which were ruled by monarchies.
- During the mid-nineteenth century, only the state of Sardinia-Piedmont was ruled by the Italian monarchy. The northern states were under the Austrian monarchy, Central Italy was under the control of the Pope and the states in the south were under the control of the Bourbon kings of Spain.
- Giuseppe Mazzini was a revolutionary who actively supported the unification of the Italian states. For achieving this aim, he formed a secret society called 'Young Italy'.
- The state of Sardinia-Piedmont took the responsibility of fulfilling this task after the failed uprisings in 1831 and 1848. The king of Sardinia-Piedmont, Victor Emmanuel II, was actively helped by his Chief Minister Cavour. Cavour led the process of the unification of Italy.
- In 1859, the state of Sardinia-Piedmont defeated the Austrians. In 1860, the Italian forces helped by Giuseppe Garibaldi and his volunteers marched into southern Italy and unified it with Italy.
- King Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed as the king of united Italy. The complete unification of Italy was achieved in 1871.

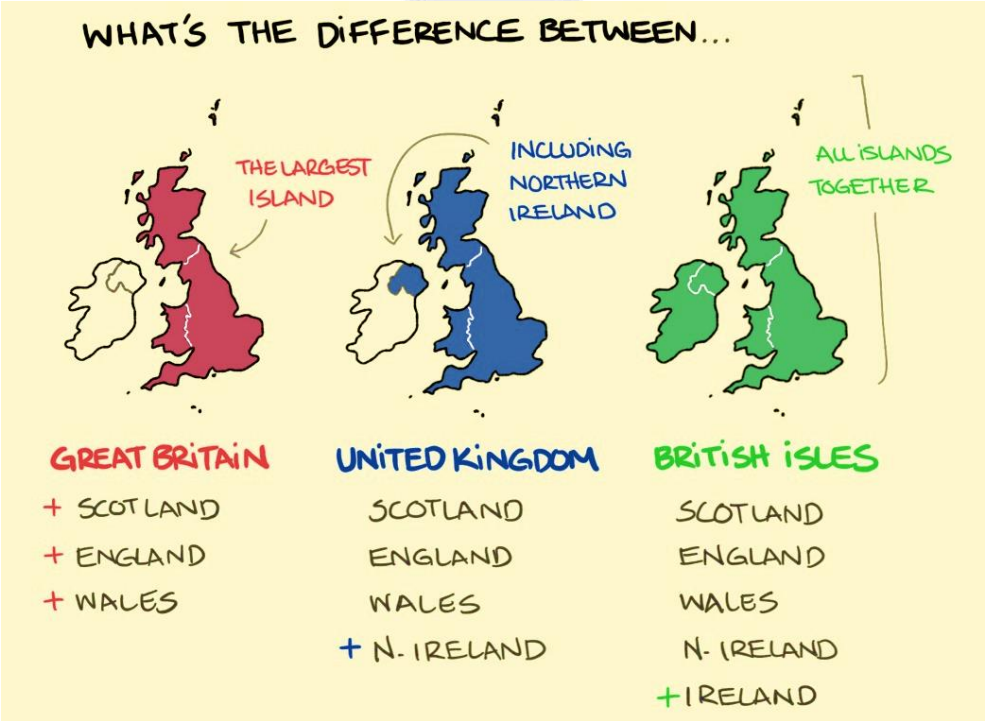


Italian states before unification, 1858.

Great Britain – A Nation State

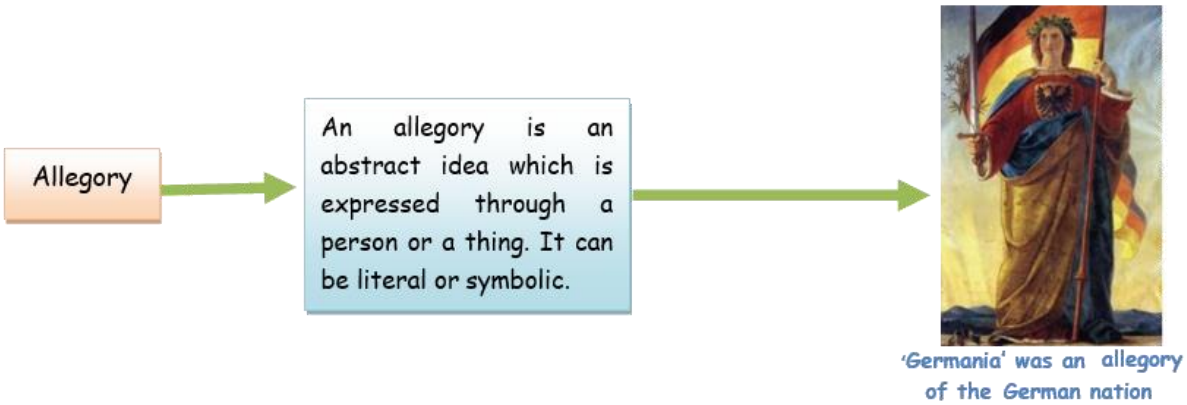
- The transformation of Great Britain into a nation state was not a sudden process. There was no one British nation before the eighteenth century.
- People residing in the British Isles were mainly English, Welsh, Scots and Irish. These ethnic groups had distinct political and social traditions.

- As the English nation grew in wealth and power, it began to dominate the other islands.
- In 1688, the English Parliament seized power from the monarchy. The Parliament passed the Act of Union, 1707, by which England and Scotland were unified resulting in the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain'.
- The Parliament was dominated by the English, and the political and cultural identities of the Scots were systematically suppressed. The Catholics in Scotland were brutally suppressed whenever they wanted to regain their independence.
- Ireland was inhabited by the Protestants and the Catholics. The English supported the Protestants and established their rule with their help and support. Catholics, who constituted a majority in Ireland, revolted against the British on numerous occasions but were suppressed.
- Ireland forcibly became a part of Britain in 1801. The English language dominated. Both Scotland and Ireland were subordinate to England.



Visualising the Nation

- The idea of a nation was expressed in various forms by artists and painters. Most of the nations were portrayed as female figures. The female figure became an allegory of the nation. 'Marianne' in France and 'Germania' in Germany became allegories of a nation.



'Germania' was an allegory of the German nation

Meanings of the symbols

Attribute	Significance
Broken chains	Being freed
Breastplate with eagle	Symbol of the German empire – strength
Crown of oak leaves	Heroism
Sword	Readiness to fight
Olive branch around the sword	Willingness to make peace
Black, red and gold tricolour	Flag of the liberal-nationalists in 1848, banned by the Dukes of the German states
Rays of the rising sun	Beginning of a new era

Nationalism and Imperialism

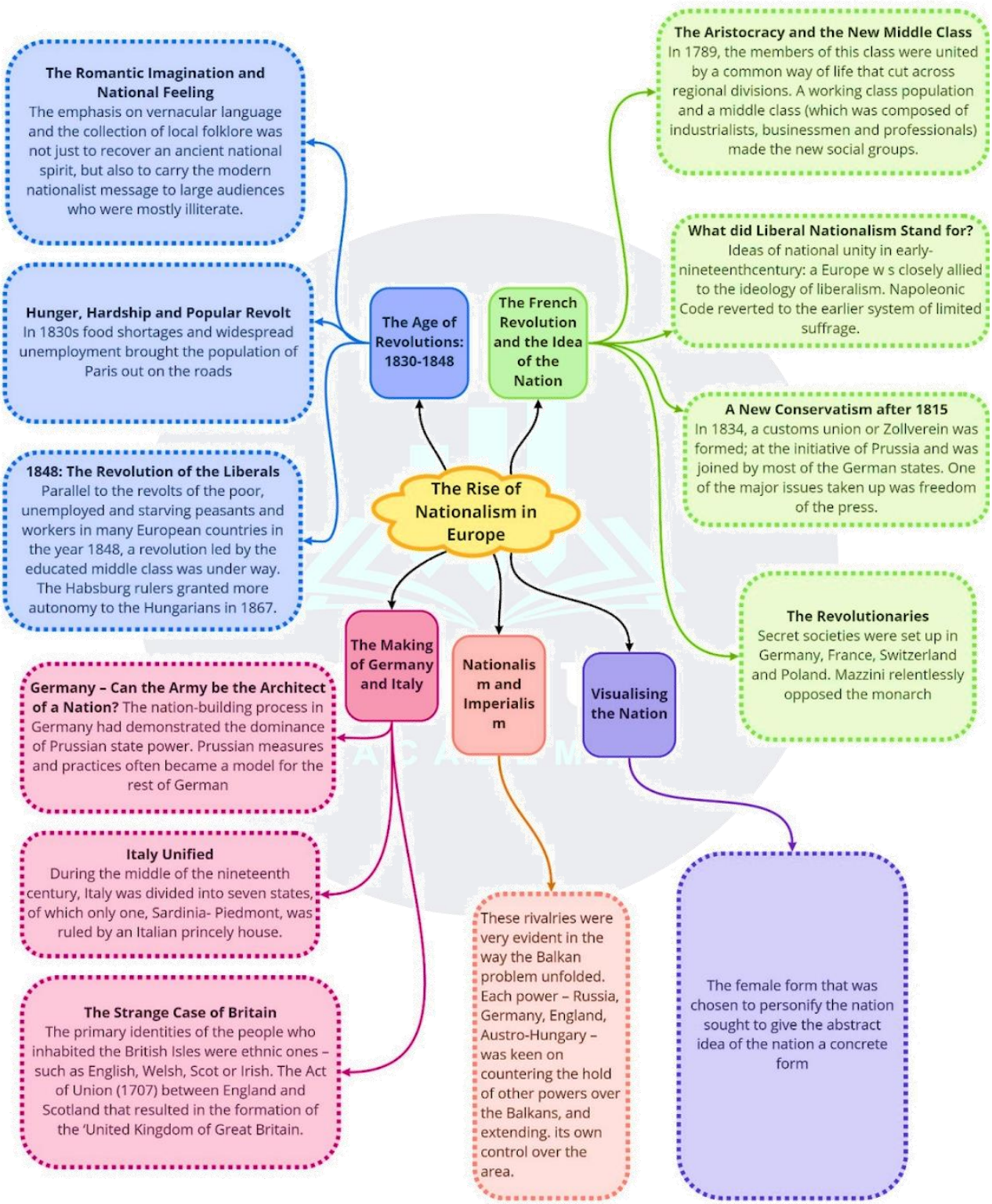
- Nationalism which is the feeling of love for one's own nation became intense and narrow minded in the mid-nineteenth century. Many nations became intolerant of each other and competed with one another for the control of territories.
- Imperialism is territorial control of a region or a country by another country by using military control.
- This feeling of nationalism became intense in the Balkan region. The Balkan region formerly comprised the present-day territories of Romania, Bulgaria, Macedonia, Croatia, Greece, Bosnia- Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro. The people in these countries were called Slavs.
- The disintegration of the Ottoman Empire in the region made the situation very explosive in the region as every state was jealous of one another and hoped to gain independence at the cost of the other.





- One by one, the European nationalities in the Balkan broke away from the control of the Ottoman Empire and declared independence.
- As the different Slavic nationalities struggled to define their identity and independence, the Balkan area became an area of intense conflict.
- During this time, many powerful European nations such as England, France, Russia and Germany competed to gain control in the Balkan region. This competition for gaining prominence in the region finally led to the First World War in 1914.
- Later, several Asian and African countries which were colonised by the European nations began to oppose imperial domination. Anti- imperial movements that began in colonies were nationalist in nature as people were fighting to form independent nation states.

Class : 10th History
Chapter-1 : The Rise of Nationalism in Europe



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Elle, the measuring unit in Germany was used to measure:
   (a) cloth
   (b) thread
   (c) land
   (d) height
2. Zollevrein started in 1834 in Prussia refers to a:
   (a) Trade Union
   (b) Customs Union
   (c) Labour Union
   (d) Farmer's Union
3. What do the saints, angels and Christ symbolise in the Utopian vision?
   (a) Equality among people
   (b) Fraternity among nations
   (c) Freedom of nations
   (d) Resentment against nations
4. Who were the 'Junkers'?
   (a) Soldiers
   (b) Large landowners
   (c) Aristocracy
   (d) Weavers
5. Which treaty recognised Greece as an independent nation?
   (a) Treaty of Constantinople, 1832
   (b) Treaty of Vienna, 1815
   (c) Treaty of Versailles, 1871
   (d) None of these
6. Which treaty recognised Greece as an independent nation?
   (a) Treaty of Constantinople, 1832
   (b) Treaty of Vienna, 1815
   (c) Treaty of Versailles, 1871
   (d) None of these
7. Which of the following group of powers collectively defeated Napoleon?
   (a) England, France, Italy, Russia
   (b) England, Austria, Spain, Russia
   (c) Austria, Prussia, Russia, Britain
   (d) Britain, Prussia, Russia, Italy
8. Romanticism refers to a:
   (a) cultural movement
   (b) religious movement
   (c) political movement
   (d) literary movement
9. Which one of the following types of government was functioning in France before the revolution of 1789?
   (a) Dictatorship
   (b) Military
   (c) Body of French Citizen
   (d) Monarchy
10. Which of the following countries is considered as the 'cradle of European civilization'?
    (a) England
    (b) France
    (c) Greece
    (d) Russia
11. Choose the correct nationality of the artist Frederic Sorrieu who visualised in his painting a society made up of Democratic and Social Republic.
    (a) German
    (b) Swiss
    (c) French
    (d) American
12. 'Nationalism', which emerged as a force in the late 19th century, means
    (a) strong devotion for one's own country and its history and culture.
    (b) strong devotion for one's own country without appreciation for other nations.
    (c) strong love for one's own country and hatred for others.
    (d) equally strong devotion for all the countries of the world.
13. Match the term with the statements given below:
    A 'Utopian Society' is
    (i) a society under a benevolent monarchy
    (ii) a society that is unlikely to ever exist

(iii) a society under the control of achosen few wise men

(iv) a society under Parliamentary Democracy

(a) (i) and (ii)

(b) (ii) and (iii)

(c) (ii) only

(d) (iii) only

14. Pick out the correct definition to define the term 'Plebiscite'.
    1. Plebiscite is a direct vote by which only the female members of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
    2. Plebiscite is a direct vote by the female members of a matriarchal system to accept or reject a proposal.
    3. Plebiscite is a direct vote by only a chosen few from the total population of a parti-cular region to accept or reject a proposal.
    4. Plebiscite is a direct vote by which all the citizens of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.
15. Ernst Renan believed that the existence of nations is a necessity because
    (a) it ensures protection to all inhabitants.
    (b) it ensures liberty to all inhabitant citizens.
    (c) it ensures Parliamentary form of govern-ment to its inhabitants.
    (d) it ensures jobs and good health to all its inhabitants.

Very Short Questions:

1. Which French artist prepared a series of four prints visualising his dream of a world ?
2. What do you understand by 'absolutist' ?
3. What is a Utopian ?
4. What are advantages of a nation ? State one advantage.
5. What is Plebiscite ?
6. What political and constitutional changes did take place in the wake of the French Revolution in 1789 ?
7. State any one step that could create a sense of collective identity among the French people.
8. Which clubs were set up after the French Revolution and by whom ?
9. How the Napoleon code was implemented in the regions under French control ?
10. Why did the people in the conquered territories become hostile to Napoleon's rule ?

Short Questions:

1. What was said about Mazzini by Metternich ?
2. What Metternich remarked about events in France ?
3. Who was Lord Byron ? What was his contribution in the Greek war of independence?
4. What was Romanticism ?
5. What was contribution of Karol Kurpinski in the freedom struggle of Poland ?
6. Give one reason for the great economic hardship in Europe in the 1830s.
7. Who were Grimm brothers ? Why did they collect folktales ?
8. What happened in 1848 revolution in France ?
9. Define feminist.
10. What is ideology ?

Long Questions:

1. Describe the political condition of Europe in the mid-eighteenth century.
2. Describe the condition of the aristocracy and peasantry in Europe in the mid-eighteenth century.
3. When did industrialisation begin in Europe ? What were its consequences ?
4. What do you understand by Liberalism ? Describe their ideas in the political, social and economic spheres.
5. Who were granted the right to vote in France during the period of revolution?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
    a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
    b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
    c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
    d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

Assertion (A): There was no British nation prior to the eighteenth century.

Reason (R): The primary identities of the people who inhabited the British Isles were ethnic ones – such as English, Welsh, Scot or Irish. All of these ethnic groups had their own cultural and political traditions.

2. **DIRECTION:** Mark the option which is most suitable:
   a. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   b. If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true, but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).
   c. Assertion (A) is true, but reason (R) is false.
   d. Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are false.

   Assertion (A): The most serious source of nationalist tension in Europe after 1871 was the area called the Balkans.

   Reason (R): A large part of the Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman Empire.

Case study Questions:

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

   Socially and politically, a landed aristocracy was the dominant class on the continent. The members of this class were united by a common way of life that cut across regional divisions. They owned estates in the countryside and also townhouses. They spoke French for purposes of diplomacy and in high society. Their families were often connected by ties of marriage. This powerful aristocracy was, however, numerically a small group. The majority of the population was made up of the peasantry. To the west, the bulk of the land was farmed by tenants and small owners, while in Eastern and Central Europe the pattern of landholding was characterised by vast estates which were cultivated by serfs.

   Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

   i. Which was the dominant class on the continent of Europe?
      a. Landed aristocracy.
      b. Tenants.
      c. Small owners.
      d. High class society.

   ii. What did the majority of population comprise of?
      a. Tenants.
      b. Small owners.
      c. Land holders.
      d. Peasantry.

   iii. The given passage describes the social and political life of this class.
      a. Serfs and peasants.
      b. Big landowners.
      c. Aristocracy and middle class.
      d. Peasants and small owners.

   iv. Aristocratic class used to speak French for the purpose of:
      a. Diplomacy and high society.
      b. Farming on a big land.
      c. Unity among the members.
      d. Educing regional divisions.

2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

   Artists in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries found a way out by personifying a nation. In other words, they represented a country as if it were a person. Nations were then portrayed as female figures. The female form that was chosen to personify the nation did not stand for any particular woman in real life; rather it sought to give the abstract idea of the nation a concrete form. That is, the female figure became an allegory of the nation. During the French Revolution artists used the female allegory to portray ideas such as Liberty, Justice, and the Republic. These ideals were represented through specific objects or symbols. The attributes of Liberty are the red cap, or the broken chain, while Justice is generally a blindfolded woman carrying a pair of weighing scales. Female allegories were invented by artists in the nineteenth century to represent the nation. In France, she has christened Marianne, a popular Christian name, which underlined the idea of a people's nation. Her characteristics were drawn from those of Liberty and the Republic – the red cap, the tricolour, the cockade. Statues of Marianne were erected in public squares to remind the public of the national symbol of unity and to persuade them to identify with it. Marianne images were marked on coins and stamps. Similarly, Germania

became the allegory of the German nation. In visual representations, Germania wears a crown of oak leaves, as the German oak stands for heroism.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. Why were Female allegories invented by artists?
   a. Representation of heroism.
   b. Representation of Imperialism.
   c. Representation of the modern state.
   d. Representation of the nation.

ii. Which of the following is an allegory for 'liberty'?
   a. Red Cap.
   b. Crown of Oak.
   c. Olive Branch.
   d. Sword.

iii. What does a blindfolded woman carrying a pair of weighing scales symbolise?
   a. Peace.
   b. Equality.
   c. Justice.
   d. Liberty.

iv. Which of the following is not true with respect to "Allegory"?
   a. It is a symbol representing an abstract idea.
   b. Artist became an allegory of a nation.
   c. It is an idea expressed through a person or a thing.
   d. An allegorical story has two meanings, one literal and one symbolic.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ:

1. **Answer**: a
2. **Answer**: a
3. **Answer**: b
4. **Answer**: b
5. **Answer**: a
6. **Answer**: b
7. **Answer**: c
8. **Answer**: c
9. **Answer**: d
10. **Answer**: c
11. **Answer**: b
12. **Answer**: a
13. **Answer**: b
14. **Answer**: d
15. **Answer**: b

Very Short Answer:

1. Answer:

Frederic Sorrieu.

2. Answer:

Absolutist, literally a government or system of rule that has no restraints on the power exercised. In history, the term refers to a form of monarchical government that was centralised, militarised and repressive.

3. Answer:

Utopian is a vision of society that is so ideal that it is unlikely to actually exist.

4. Answer:

The existence of nations is a guarantee of liberty, which would be lost if the world had only one law and only one master.

5. Answer:

Plebiscite is a direct vote by which all the people of a region are asked to accept or reject a proposal.

6. Answer:

The French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens.

The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.

7. **Answer:**

The French Revolution led to the transfer of sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of French citizens.

The revolution proclaimed that it was the people who would henceforth constitute the nation and shape its destiny.

8. **Answer:**

As the news of events in France reached the different cities of Europe, students and other members of educated middle classes began setting up Jacobin clubs.

9. **Answer:**

In the Dutch Republic, in Switzerland, in Italy and Germany, Napoleon simplified administrative divisions, abolished the feudal system and freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues.

10. **Answer:**

The people became hostile due to increased taxation, censorship, forced conscription into the French armies required to conquer ihe rest of Europe. All these seemed to outweigh the advantages of the administrative changes.

Short Answer:

1. **Answer:**

Metternich described him as "the most dangerous enemy of our social order".

2. **Answer:**

Metternich once remarked, "When France sneezes, the rest of the Europe catches cold."

3. **Answer:**

Lord Byron was an English poet.

He organised funds and later went to fight in the war, where he died of fever in 1824.

4. **Answer:** Romanticism was a cultural movement which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment. Romantic artists and poets generally criticised the glorification of reason and science and focused instead on emotions, intuition and mystical feelings.

5. **Answer:** Karol Kurpinski celebrated the national struggle through his operas and music, turning folk dances like the polonaise and mazurka into nationalist symbols.

6. **Answer:**

i. There was enormous increase in population all over Europe.

ii. In most countries there were more seekers of jobs than employment.

7. **Answer:**

i. The Grimm brothers were born in the German city of Hanau in 1785 and 1786 respectively.

ii. They collected folktales and considered their projects of collecting folk-tales and developing the German language as part of the wider effort to oppose French domination and create a German national identity.

8. **Answer:**

i. Louis Philippe was forced to flee and

ii. National Assembly proclaimed a Republic.

iii. Suffrage was granted to all adult males above 21.

iv. Right to work was guaranteed. National workshops to provide employment were set up.

9. **Answer:** Feminist means awareness of women's rights and interests based on the belief of the social, economic and political equality of the genders.

10. **Answer:** Ideology is a system of ideas reflecting a particular social and political vision.

Long Answer:

1. **Answer:**

The political condition of Europe in the mid-eighteenth century was as mentioned below :

(1) There were no nation states

(2) Gerany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous territories.

(3) There were autocratic monarchies in Eastern and Central Europe.

(4) People spoke different languages and belonged to different ethnic groups,

i. For example, Habsburg Empire consisted of different regions and peoples.

ii. They did not share a collective identity or a common culture,

iii. It included German-speaking people of Bohemia as well as Italian-speaking people of Lombardy and Venetia.

iv. Half of the population of Hungary was Magyar,

v. Such differences did not promote a sense of political unity. The only tie binding diverse groups together was a common allegiance to the emperor.

2. Answer:

The condition of aristocracy and peasantry was as mentioned below:

(1) Landed aristocracy:

i. Socially and politically, a landed aristocracy was the dominant class on the continent.

ii. They were united by a common way of life, such as owning large estates and town houses, use of French language for diplomacy and in high society.

iii. They were also united with ties of marriage with each other. Thus, aristocracy was powerful but they were in minority.

(2) Peasantry:

i. The majority of the population was peasants.

ii. To the west, most of the land was farmed by tenants and small owners.

iii. In the Eastern and Central Europe, there were large estates which were cultivated by serfs.

3. Answer:

(1) Industrialisation: Industrialisation had begun in England in the second-half of the eighteenth century. However, it took place in France and parts of the German states during the nineteenth century.

(2) Its consequences were as mentioned below:

Growth of towns: Emergence of commercial classes – there was growth of towns and the emergence of commercial classes in Western and some parts of Eastern Europe. This was due to the growth of industrial production and trade. The existence of commercial classes was based on production for the market.

A new working class and middle classes consisting of industrialists, businessmen, professionals came into existence. It was among the educated, liberal middle classes that ideas of national unity following the abolition of aristocratic privileges gained popularity.

4. Answer:

(1) The term 'liberalism' is derived from the Latin word liber, meaning free. Thus, for the new middle classes, liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before "law.

(2) Political and economic ideas supported by the liberals were as given below :

(1) Political ideas :

i. It emphasised the concept of government by consent.

ii. Since the French Revolution, liberalism stood for the end of autocracy and clerical privileges, a constitution and representative government through parliament.

iii. They did not necessarily stand for universal suffrage.

iv. In revolutionary France, which was the first example of liberal democracy, the right to vote and election was exclusively granted to property-owning men. Men without property and women were not granted political rights. Thus in the 19th and 20th centuries there were movements demanding equal political rights.

(2) Economic ideas : They supported freedom of markets and the abolition of state- imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital. During the 19th century this was a strong demand of the emerging middle classes. Also see Textbook Question 4.

5. **Answer:**

   i. In France, the right to vote and election was granted only to property-owning men.

   ii. Men without property and all women were excluded from political rights.

   iii. During the period of Jacobins, all adult males were granted right to vote.

   iv. The Napoleonic Code again granted limited right to vote. Women were reduced to the status of a minor, subject to the authority of fathers and husbands.

   v. Women and non-propertied men organised opposition movements demanding equal political rights during the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries.

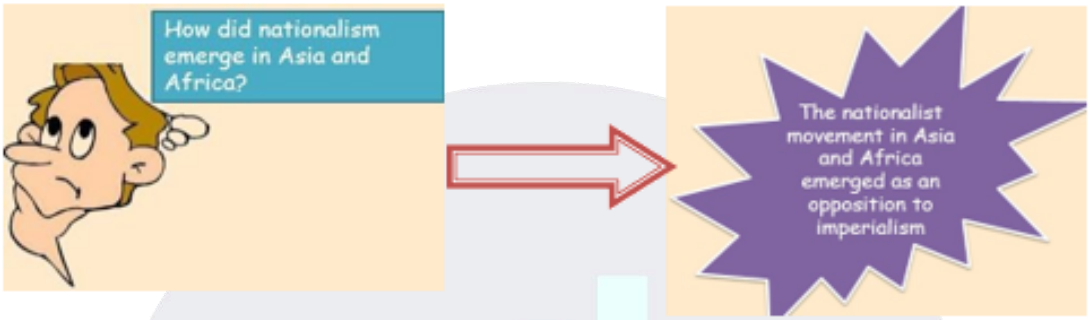
Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).
2. (b) If both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (a) Landed aristocracy
   ii. (d) Peasantry.
   iii. (c) Aristocracy and middle class.
   iv. (a) Diplomacy and high society.
2. i. (d) Representation of the nation.
   ii. (a) Red Cap.
   iii. (c) Justice.
   iv. (b) Artist became an allegory of a nation.

Nationalism in India 2



People of India began to discover their unity in the process of their struggle against the British

The sense of oppression under the colonial power gave Indians a shared bond that tied many different groups together leading to the emergence of nationalism

Problems Created by the First World War

- The crops failed in 1918-19 and 1920-21 resulting in acute shortage of food. This was accompanied by an influenza epidemic
- The government introduced income tax and increased custom duties to meet war expenses
- Inflation doubled during the war resulting into extreme hardships for the common people
- Huge increase in defense expenditures
- Villages were called upon to supply soldiers, and the forced recruitment in rural areas caused widespread anger

Growth of nationalism in India is associated with the anti-colonial movement. The Congress under the leadership of Mahatma Gandhi made the Indian National Movement a mass movement. In the second decade of the twentieth century, India was facing several problems due to the First World War (1914-18). The war created a new economic and political situation.

Problems Created by the First World War

Gandhi and his Idea of Satyagraha

While people were facing these hardships, Gandhi emerged on the Indian political scene with his unique tool of 'Satyagraha'.



Gandhi

Satyagraha according to Gandhi was a unique weapon to fight injustice. It was a novel method of mass agitation. It stressed on the principle of truth, non- violence, tolerance and peaceful protests. Gandhi had already organised a successful satyagraha movement in South Africa. He also organised it successfully at Champaran in Bihar (1916), Kheda in Gujarat (1917) and Ahmedabad in Gujarat (1918).

The Rowlatt Act

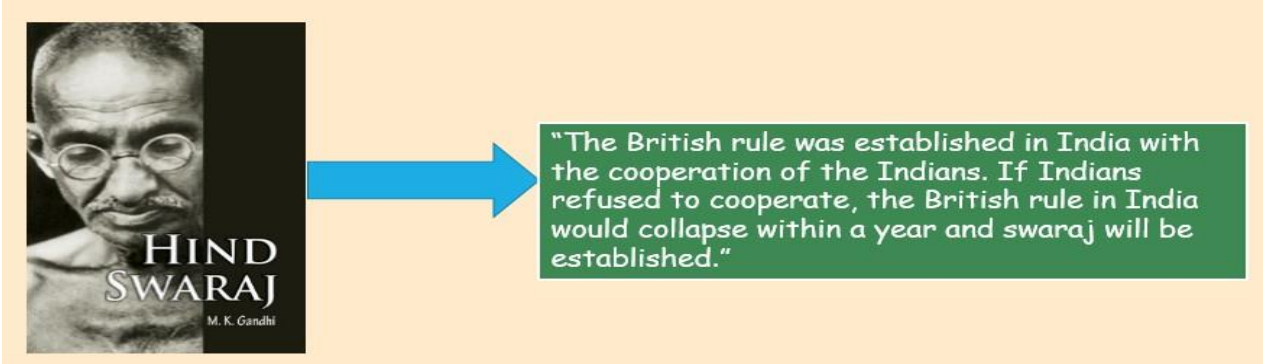
The Rowlatt Act was passed in 1919 in the Imperial Legislative Council. **This Act empowered the British Government to arrest nationalists and imprisoned them for two years without any trial.** Gandhi launched a movement against this unjust Act. Shops were closed and workers of the railway workshop went on strike. Rallies protesting against this Act were organised in various cities.



A pictorial representation of the Jallianwala Bagh Massacre

Alarmed by the large participation of people in the movement, the Government arrested prominent leaders from Amritsar. Gandhi was barred from entering Delhi. On 10 April 1919, the police fired on a peaceful procession. People retaliated by attacking banks and railway stations. On 13 April, a large crowd assembled at Jallianwala Bagh protesting against the arrest of some of their leaders who criticised the Government for passing the Rowlatt Act. General Dyer blocked the exit of the Bagh and fired on the unarmed crowd. This resulted in the deaths of hundreds ofpeople.

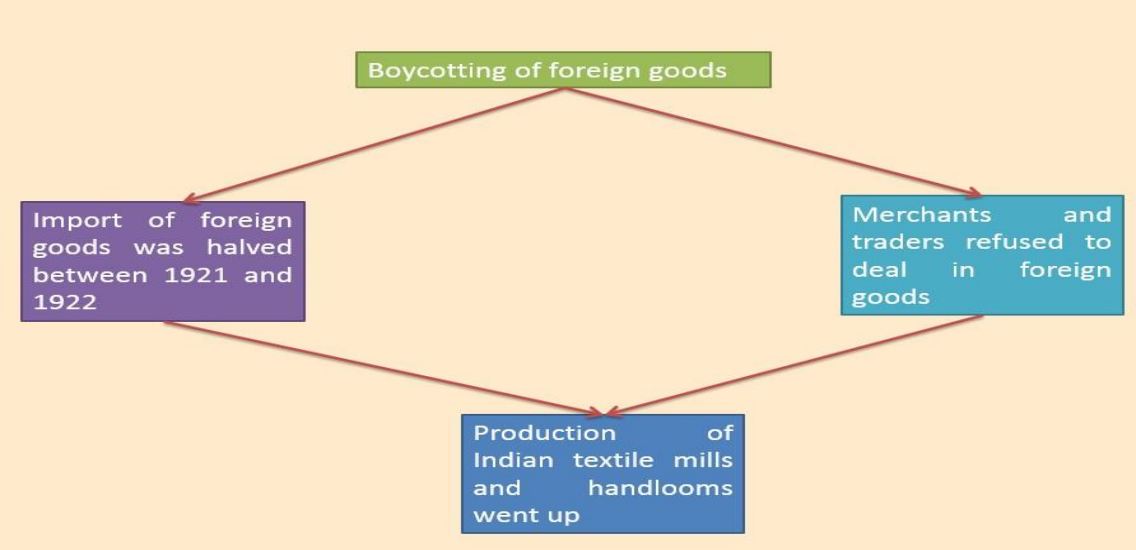
People in many north Indian towns protested against the killings at Jallianwala. The Government brutally suppressed these protests. It humiliated and terrorised the people. People who protested were forced to rub their noses on the ground, crawl on the streets and salute all British officers. As villages around Gujranwala in Punjab began to be bombed and the violence began to spread, Gandhi decided to call off the movement.



Non-Cooperation Movement

- Gandhi believed that if Indians do not cooperate with the British, the latter will have to leave India. He proposed to the people that government titles should be surrendered and people should resign from civil services, government-run educational institutions and legislative councils. It also included the boycott of foreign goods.
- The resolution on Non-Cooperation Movement was passed in Nagpur in December 1920.
- After the movement was launched, thousands of students left government schools and colleges in many cities. Teachers from these schools resigned, and lawyers gave up their practices.
- The council elections were boycotted in most provinces except in Madras where the Justice Party participated in the elections.
- As a part of the movement, foreign goods were boycotted and stress was laid on the use of swadeshi products. This led to decline in the import of foreign cloth and gave a boost to the Indian textile industry.

The movement however slowed down in the cities as khadi cloth was more expensive than mill cloth and people could not afford to buy it. Many students and teachers again joined government schools and colleges as there were only a handful of Indian educational institutions.



Economic Impact of the Movement

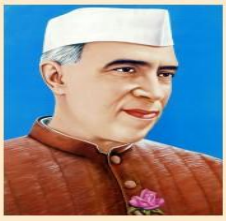
The Non-Cooperation Movement among the tribal Population

- The movement soon spread among the tribal regions of India. Various tribes protested against the Government because the British denied their traditional rights in the forests and they were also forced into the 'begar' (forced) labour.

  The colonial government had closed large forest areas, preventing people from entering the forests to graze their cattle, or to collect fuelwood and fruits. This infuriated the tribals.


Alluri Sitaram Raju

- Alluri Sitaram Raju inspired the tribals to participate in the movement and wear khadi clothes. However, he believed that India can be liberated only by using violence.
- The Gudem rebels attacked police stations and vowed to carry guerilla warfare for attempting swaraj. However, Alluri Sitaraman Raju was captured and executed in 1924.



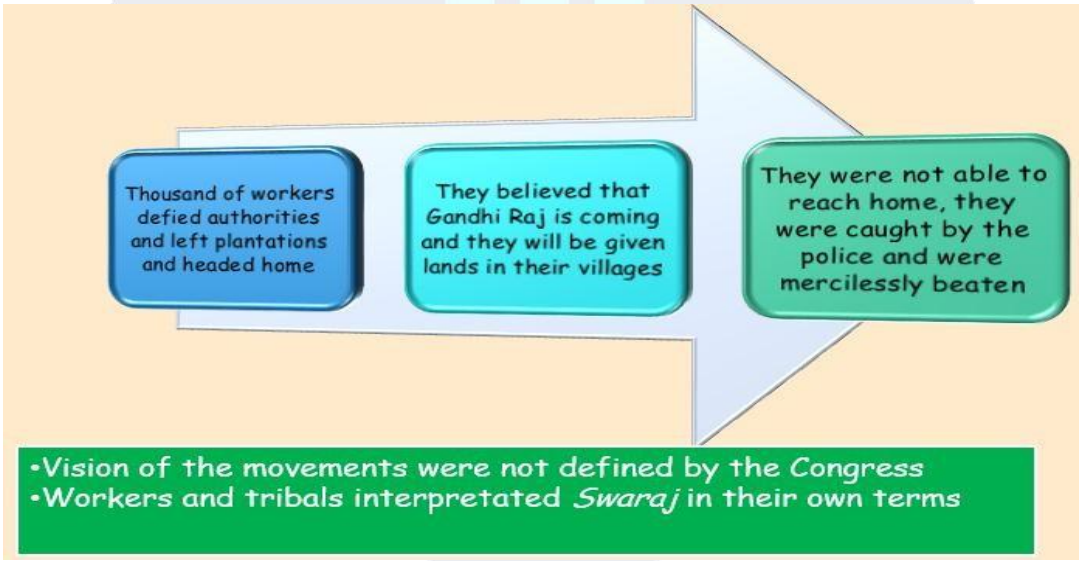


- In June 1920, Jawaharlal Nehru went around the village trying to understand the grievances and issues of the peasants
- Within a month, 300 branches of *Kisan Sabha* were set up around the area
- The movement in Awadh became the part of the Indian national movement
- 1921, the house of talukdars and merchants was attacked, bazaars were looted and grain hoards were taken over
- Many local leaders declared that Gandhi wanted non payment of taxes and that the land had to be redistributed equally among the poor

Rebellions in the Countryside

Meaning of 'Swaraj' for the Plantation Workers

Plantation workers equated the concept of 'swaraj' with their basic rights which were denied by plantation owners.



Withdrawal of the Non-Cooperation Movement

Towards Civil Disobedience

In February 1922, the Non-Cooperation Movement was withdrawn because Mahatma Gandhi felt that it was turning violent. Some of the leaders wanted to participate in elections to the provincial councils. Swaraj Party was formed by CR Das and Motilal Nehru. In the late 1920s Indian politics again shaped because of two factors. The first effect was the worldwide economic depression and the second effect was



Gandhi withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement in 1922 when a group of protestors became violent and killed 23 Indian policemen at Chauri Choura in Uttar Pradesh.

the falling agricultural prices. The Statutory Commission was set up to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. In 1928, Simon Commission arrived in India and it was greeted by the slogan 'Go back Simon'. In December 1929, under the presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalised the demand of 'Purna Swaraj' or full independence for India. It was declared that 26 January 1930 would be celebrated as Independence Day.

Factors shaping the Indian politics in late 1920s

Two factors shaped the Indian politics towards late 1920s.



- The first was the impact of worldwide economic depression, Peasants were the worst suffers as the prices of their agricultural goods reduced drastically.
- The second factor was that at this time, Tory government in Britain appointed a committee under Sir John Simon to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. Political parties opposed the Commission because it did not have any Indian as a member.

In this background, the Congress under the president ship of Nehru declared 'Purna Swaraj' or an independent India as an ultimate aim of the Congress.

The Civil Disobedience Movement



Gandhi on 31 January, 1930, sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands. While some of these demands were of general interests, some were specific. The most stirring of all demands was the demand to abolish 'Salt Laws'. Gandhi chose salt as it was used by people of all sections of the society and was an essential food item. When demands were not fulfilled, Gandhi started his famous 'salt march'. On April 11, 1930, he reached Dandi, a coastal village of Gujarat and violated the law by manufacturing salt marking the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement. During this movement people were asked not only to refuse cooperation with the British but also to break colonial laws.

People participated in the Movement in the following ways:

- People across the nation broke the salt law, manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government salt factories
- Foreign cloth was boycotted and liquor shops were picketed
- Peasants refused to to pay revenue and chaukidari tax
- Village officials resigned and people living in countryside violated forest laws

Repression of the Government

- The government began arresting Congress leaders. This in turn led to violent clashes at many places
- When Gandhi was arrested during the course of the movement, industrial workers in Sholapur attacked police posts, municipal buildings and structures that symbolised the British rule
- The government responded with brutal repression. Peaceful satyagrahis were attacked, women and children were beaten and around 100,000 people were arrested.

Under such situation Gandhi signed the Irwin pact and decided to call off the movement. While Gandhi agreed to participate in the Second round Table Conference, the government agreed to release the political prisoners. However, the talks during the Second Round Table Conference did not succeed. When Gandhi returned and came to know about the arrest of prominent Indian leaders- Nehru and Khan Abdul Ghaffar Khan, he re-launched the Civil Disobedience Movement.

Participation of Various Communities in the Civil Disobedience Movement

Rich peasant communities

- The rich peasant communities like the Patidars of Gujarat and the Jats of Uttar Pradesh – were active in the movement
- They were hit hard by the Great Depression and found it extremely difficult to pay the government's revenue demands.

For the rich peasants the fight for swaraj was a struggle against high revenues. But they were disappointed after the Movement was withdrawn without revising any revenue rates.

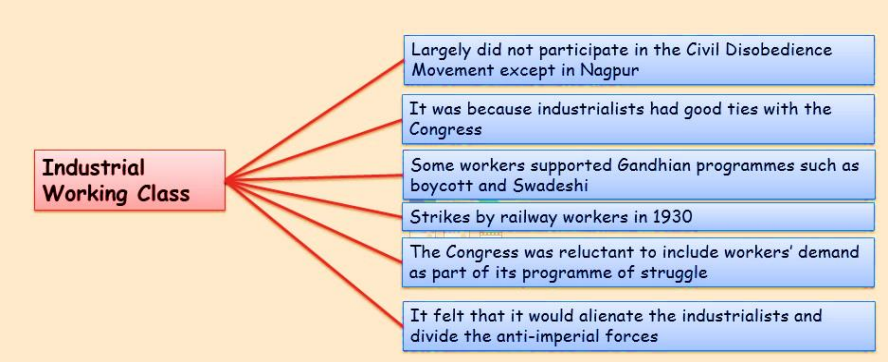
Poor Peasants

- The poor peasants not only wanted the revenues to decrease but also wanted the unpaid rent to the landlord to be remitted
- The radical movements pertaining to poor peasants were often led by the Socialists and the Communists.
- However, the Congress was not willing to support 'no rent' campaigns in most places and hence the relationship between the poor peasants and the Congress remained uncertain

Business Class

- During the First World War, the business class had made huge profits and had become powerful. The industrialist class led by known industrialists such as Purshottamdas Thakurdas and G. D. Birla supported the Movement and criticised the colonial control over the Indian economy.
- They gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported goods.
- For most industrialists, Swaraj was a time when the government's restrictions on business would end.

Industrial Class



Women

Women actively participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement. Women came out in large numbers and participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed shops selling liquor and foreign goods. However, for a long time, Congress was reluctant to allow women to hold any position of authority within the Congress as most Congressmen along with Gandhi were of the views that primary duty of a woman was to look after home and children.



Women actively participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement

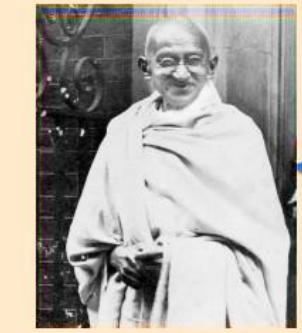
Limits of the Civil Disobedience Movement

- The 'untouchables' or the 'dalits' remained aloof from the Congress during the Civil Disobedience Movement. The Congress had ignored them for the fear of offending the higher caste Hindus.

- Dr. B.R. Ambedkar organized the dalits into the Depressed Classes Association in 1930. He demanded separate electorates for the dalits in the Second Round table Conference. The British accepted the demands but Gandhi was against this concession as he believed that separate electorates for dalits would slow down the process of their assimilation intosociety.
- Ambedkar accepted Gandhi's position and signed the Poona Pact in September 1932. The dalits were given reserved seats in provincial and central legislative councils, but they were to be voted in by the general electorate. The dalits however, apprehensive of the Congress led national movement.
- Various Muslim associations in the country did not completely support the Civil Disobedience Movement. After the Khilafat Movement, they felt alienated from the Congress. The Muslims demanded a separate electorate for themselves. They believed that the Congress had same interests as the Hindu Mahasabha and thus did not support it. They demanded reserved seats in the Central Assembly which was opposed by the Hindu Mahasabha.

Gandhi as a Social Reformer

Gandhi was not only an exceptional political leader but was also a social reformer. He worked for the upliftment of the people belonging to the lower classes.

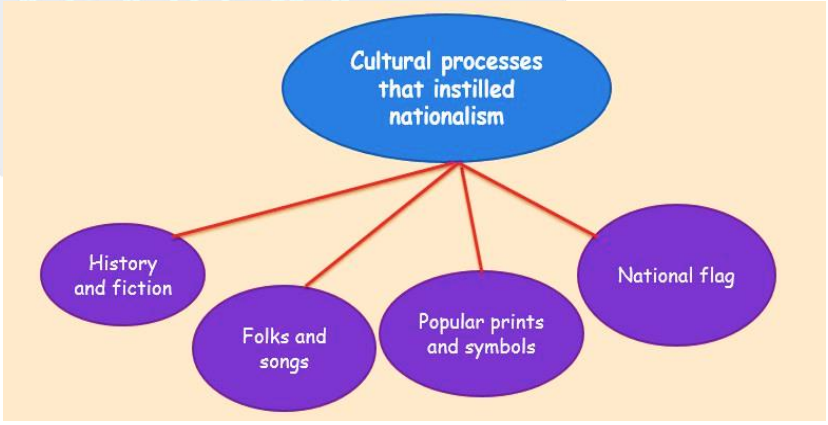


- Regarded dalits as the children of the God
- Organised satyagrah to secure their entry into temples and access to public wells, tanks, roads and schools.
- He himself cleaned the toilets to dignify the work of the lower caste

The Sense of Collective Belonging

The feeling of nationalism and the idea of collective belonging to the nation emerged in India because of the several factors:

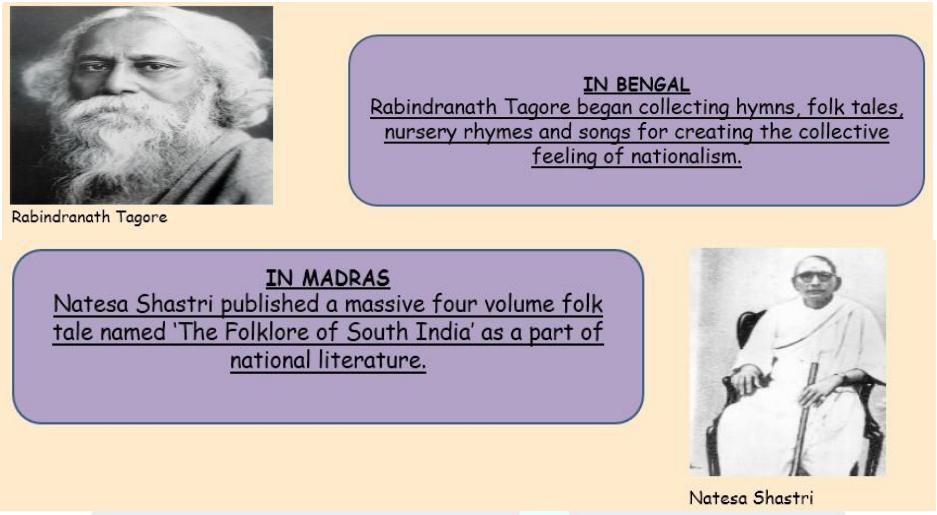
- When people fought collectively to oppose the British in various movements and struggles, the feeling of nationalism was born.
- Nationalism also grew as a result of various literary and artistic activities. The idea of India came to be associated with the image of 'Bharat Mata'.



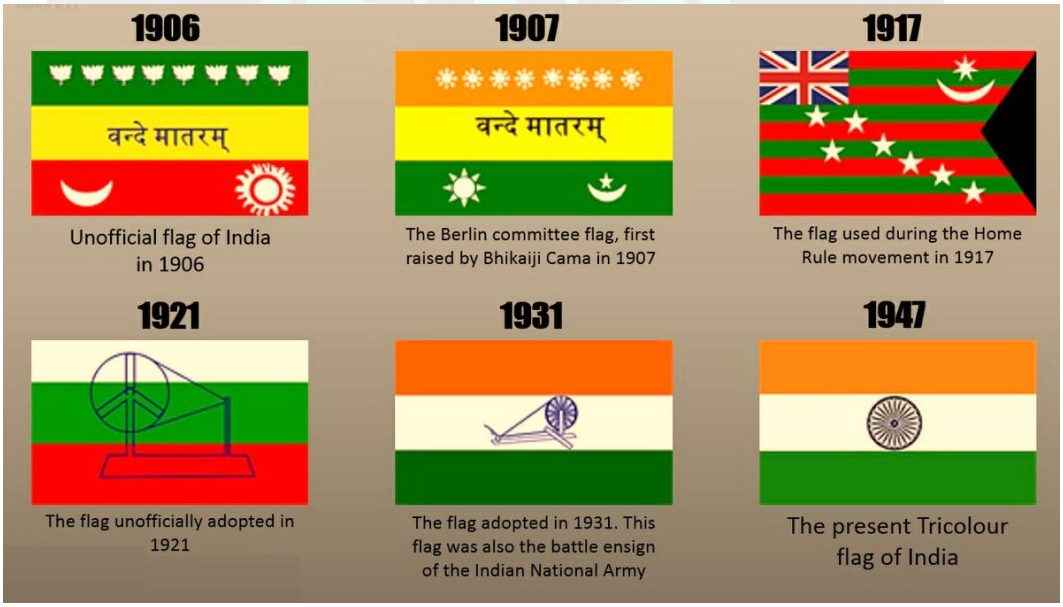


Moved by the Swadeshi Movement, Abindranath Tagore painted Bharat Mata as an ascetic figure who is calm, composed, divine and spiritual. The image of the 'Bharat Mata' aroused nationalist feelings amongst the Indians.

- The Novel 'Anadmath' written by Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay included the famous song 'Vande Matram' which instilled the feeling of nationalism amongst the hearts of thepeople.
- Ideas of nationalism also developed through a movement to revive the Indian folklore. Nationalists in the country toured several villages and collected folklores and folk tales to discover national identity.



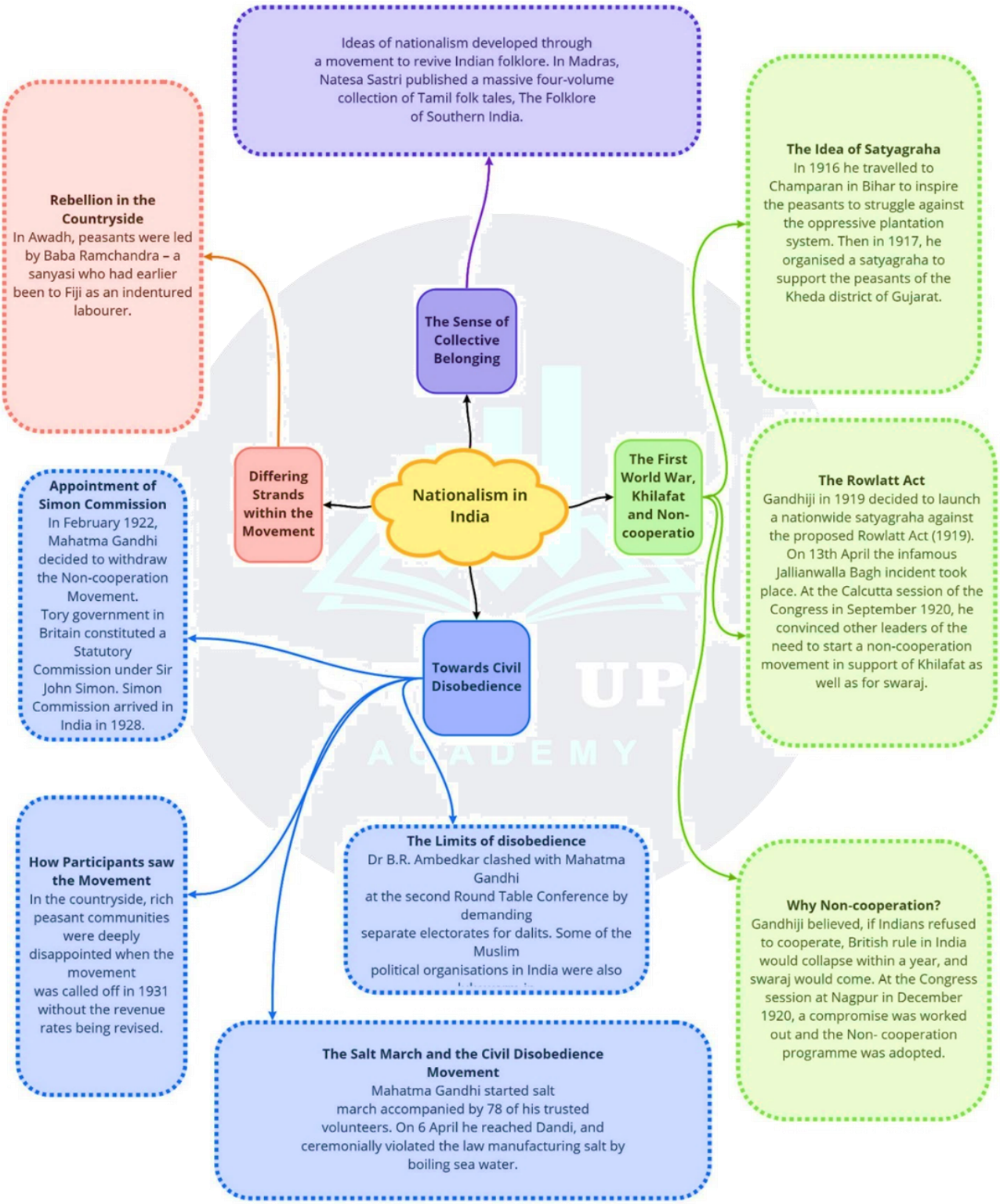
- Various symbols were also used by the national leaders to inspire people. During the Swadeshi movement in Bengal, a tricolour flag (red, green and yellow) was designed. It had eight lotuses representing eight provinces of British India, and a crescent moon, representing Hindus and Muslims.
- In 1921, Gandhi designed the 'Swaraj Flag'. It was a tricolour flag and had a spinning wheel in the centre. It represented the Gandhian ideal of self-help.



- Reinterpretation of history played an important role in creating a feeling of nationalism. The British historians described Indians as backward, primitive and incapable of governing themselves. In response, the Indian historians wrote about the glorious Indian past. They asserted that before the colonial rule, India made advancements in the fields of art, architecture, science, mathematics, religion and culture. Her economy began to decline only after the establishment of the colonial rule in India.

All the above factors instilled a sense of nationalism among the Indians. However, the efforts to unify people were not without problems. When the Hindu rule of ancient India began to be glorified and images were drawn from Hindu iconography, the people of other communities began to feel alienated.

Class : 10th History
Chapter-2 : Nationalism in India



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Why did Gandhiji organise Satyagraha in 1917 in Kheda district of Gujarat?
   (a) To support the plantation workers
   (b) To protest against high revenue demand
   (c) To support the mill workers to fulfil their demand
   (d) To demand loans for the farmers
2. Why was Satyagraha organised in Champaran in 1916?
   (a) To oppose the British laws
   (b) To oppose the plantation system
   (c) To oppose high land revenue
   (d) To protest against the oppression of the mill workers
3. Why was the Simon Commission sent to India?
   (a) To look into the Indian constitutional matter and suggest reform
   (b) To choose members of Indian Council
   (c) To settle disputes between the government and the Congress leaders
   (d) To set up a government organization
4. Why was Alluri Sitarama Raju well known?
   (a) He led the militant movement of tribal peasants in Andhra Pradesh.
   (b) He led a peasant movement in Avadh.
   (c) He led a satyagraha movement in Bardoli.
   (d) He set up an organisation for the uplifment of the dalits.
5. Why did General Dyer open fire on peaceful crowd in Jallianwalla Bagh? Mark the most important factor.
   (a) To punish the Indians
   (b) To take revenge for breaking martial laws
   (c) To create a feeling of terror and awe in the mind of Indians
   (d) To disperse the crowd
6. What kind of movement was launched by the tribal peasants of Gudem Hills in Andhra Pradesh?
   (a) Satyagraha Movement
   (b) Militant Guerrilla Movement
   (c) Non-Violent Movement
   (d) None of the above
7. Who among the following two leaders led the Khilafat Movement?
   (a) Shaukat Ali and Muhammad Ali
   (b) Gandhiji and Sardar Patel
   (c) Muhammad Ali Jinnah and Abul Kalam Azad
   (d) Abul Kalam Azad and Jawaharlal Nehru
8. Why did Gandhiji withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement?
   (a) Gandhiji realised that people were losing interest in the movement.
   (b) Gandhiji felt that the movement was turning violent in many places.
   (c) Some Congress leaders wanted to participate in elections to Provincial Councils.
   (d) Some Congress leaders wanted more radical mass agitations.
9. Who were the 'Sanatanis'?
   (a) Saints
   (b) Dalits
   (c) Labours
   (d) High-caste Hindus
10. The main problem with the Simon Commission was that:
    (a) It was an all British commission.
    (b) It was formed in Britain.
    (c) It was set up in response to the nationalist movement.
    (d) It supported the Muslim League.
11. 'Hind Swaraj ' was written by:
    (a) Abul Kalam Azad
    (b) Mahatma Gandhi
    (c) Sardar Patel
    (d) Subhas Chandra Bose

12. Why did the Indians oppose the Rowlatt Act?

(a) It introduced the Salt Law.

(b) It increased taxes on land.

(c) It gave the British the power to arrest and detain a person without a trial.

(d) It put a ban on the Congress party.

13. Due to the effect of the Non-Cooperation movement on the plantation workers in Assam, they:

(a) left the plantations and headed home.

(b) went on strike.

(c) destroyed the plantations.

(d) None of these

14. The resolution of Puma Swaraj was adopted at which session?

(a) Karachi Congress

(b) Haripur Congress

(c) Lahore Congress

(d) Lucknow Congress

15. Which one of the following Viceroys announced a vague offer of dominion status for India in October 1929? [All India 2012]

(a) Lord Mount batten

(b) Lord Dalhousie

(c) Lord Irwin

(d) None of these

Very Short Questions:

1. With which idea the modern nationalism in Europe is associated ?
2. In India what tied many different groups together against colonial power ?
3. What was forced recruitment ?
4. Why did Gandhiji go to Champaran in 1916 ?
5. Which Satyagraha movement was organised in Ahmedabad and when ?
6. State one oppressive feature of Rowlatt Act ?
7. When did Jallianwala Bagh massacre take place and where ?
8. Which famous book was written by Mahatma Gandhi in 1909 ?
9. For what the Congress session of December 1920 is known ?
10. Which party in the province of Madras did not boycott the council elections ?

Short Questions:

1. What was the view of Mahatma Gandhi about salt tax and govt, monopoly lover it ?
2. By which march the Civil Disobedience Movement started ?
3. State one difference between Non-cooperation and Civil Disobedience Movement.
4. When was a pact with Lord Irwin signed ? How is it known ?
5. What was main clause of the Gandhi-Irwin Pact (1931) ?
6. Why the Congress was reluctant to include workers' demands as part of its programme of Civil Disobedience Movement ?
7. Who organised the dalits into the Depressed Classes Association in 1930 ?
8. What was the demand of BR Ambedkar for the dalits at the Second Round Table Conference ?
9. Which are the different factors in making of nationalism ?
10. Who wrote 'Vande Mataram' in 1870s ?

Long Questions:

1. Explain the reasons and effects of Jallianwala Bagh massacre.

   Or

   Narrate the events leading to the Jallianwala Bagh massacre on 13 April, 1919. What were its effects ?
2. Why did Mahatma Gandhi feel the need to launch a more broad-hased movement in India ? How did he achieve this object ?
3. How had non-cooperation spread in cities ? Explain. Why did it gradually slow down ?
4. Describe the causes, events and results of peasants movement of Awadh during the Non-Cooperation Movement.
5. Write a short note on the participation of tribal peasants in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh in the Non-Cooperation Movement.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions:** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

   (a) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is the correct explanation of A.

   (b) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is not the correct explanation of A

   (c) Assertion (A) is correct, but Reason (R) is wrong

   (d) Assertion (A) is wrong, but Reason (R) is correct

   Assertion: Mahatma Gandhi found salt a powerful symbol that could unite the nation.

   Reason: Salt was something essential, consumed by the rich and the poor alike.

2. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

   (a) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is the correct explanation of A.

   (b) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is not the correct explanation of A

   (c) Assertion (A) is correct, but Reason (R) is wrong

   (d) Assertion (A) is wrong, but Reason (R) is correct

   Assertion: When the Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928, it was greeted with the slogan 'Go back Simon'.

   Reason: The Commission did not have a single Indian member.

Case Study Questions:

1. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

   Manchester imports into India declined as the Britishmills were busy with war production to meet the needs of the army paving the way for the Indian mills to supply for the huge home market. As the war prolonged, Indian factories were called upon to supply war needs. As a result, new factories were set up, new workers were employed, and everyone was made to work longer hours. On 13th April 1919, a crowd of villagers, who had come to attend a Baisakhi fair, gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh. Being from outside the city, many were not aware of the martial law that had been imposed as a repressive measure. General Dyer with his British troops entered the park and closed the only exit point without giving any warning to the assembled people and ordered the troops to fire at the crowds, killing hundreds. Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops were picketed, and foreign cloth was burnt. The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921-1922. Its value dropped from Rs. 102 crore to Rs. 57 crores. Many merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade. Use of khadi was popularized.

   Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

   1. Which was the effect of First World War on India as Britain was busy in war in Europe?

      a. Manchester imports into Indiadeclined as the British mills were busy with war.

      b. Production to meet the needs of the army paving the way for the Indian mills to supply for the huge home market.

      c. As the war prolonged, Indian factorieswere called upon to supply war needs.

      d. All of these.

   2. Which of the following were related to the incident of Jallianwala Bagh Massacre?

      a. On 13th April 1919, a crowd of villagers who had come to attend a Baisakhi fair, gathered in the enclosed ground of Jallianwala Bagh.

b. General Dyer with his British troops entered the park and closed the only exit point without giving any warning.

c. Both (a) and (b).

d. None of these.

3. What were the consequences of non - cooperation movement after 1922?

a. Foreign goods were not boycotted.

b. The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921-1922. Its value dropped from Rs. 102 crore to Rs. 57 crore.

c. Many merchants and traders did not refuse to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.

d. Use of khadi was not popularized.

4. What was the name of British officer who was responsible for the Jallianwala Bagh massacre?

a. General Dyre.

b. Lord Cornwallis.

c. Lord Wellesley.

d. Lord Dalhousie.

2. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows:

Another important feature of the Civil Disobedience Movement was the large-scale participation of women. During Gandhiji's Salt March, thousands of women came out of their homes to listen to him. They participated in protest-marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops. Many went to jail. In urban areas, these women were from high caste families. In rural areas, they came from rich peasant households. Moved by Gandhiji's call, they began to see service to the nation as a sacred duty of women. Gandhiji was convinced that it was the duty of women to look after home and hearth, be good mothers and good wives. And for a long time, the Congress was reluctant to allow women to hold any position of authority within the organisation. It was keen only on their symbolic presence.

Answer the following MCQs by choosing the most appropriate option:

i. During Gandhiji's Salt March, thousands of women participated in:

a. Providing service to the nation.

b. Doing protest marches.

c. Fighting for struggle.

d. Widespread resentment.

ii. The women from rural areas, mainly belonging to:

a. High caste families.

b. Low caste families.

c. Rich peasant households.

d. Dalit societies.

iii. When did Gandhi initiated a movement in Champaran in Bihar against the oppressive indigo plantation system?

a. 1916

b. 1920

c. 1925

d. 1918

iv. Women thought this as a sacred duty moved by Gandhiji's call:

a. Looking after home and hearth.

b. Service to the nation.

c. Holding position of authority.

d. Participating in the movement.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ:

1. **Answer**: b
2. **Answer**: b
3. **Answer**: a
4. **Answer**: a
5. **Answer**: c
6. **Answer**: b
7. **Answer**: a
8. **Answer**: b
9. **Answer**: d
10. **Answer**: a
11. **Answer**: b
12. **Answer**: c
13. **Answer**: a
14. **Answer**: c
15. **Answer**: c

Very Short Answer:

1. **Answer:**

   Modem nationalism in Europe was associated with the formation of nation-states.

2. **Answer:**

   The sense of being oppressed under colonialism provided a shared bond that tied different groups together.

3. **Answer:**

   Forced recruitment was a process by which colonial state forced people to join the army.

4. **Answer:**

   In 1916 Mahatma Gandhi went to Champaran to inspire the peasants to struggle against the oppressive plantation system.

5. **Answer:**

   In 1918 Mahatma Gandhi went to Ahmedabad to organise satyagraha movement amongst cotton mill workers.

6. **Answer:**

   It allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

7. **Answer:**

   Jallianwala Bagh massacre took place on 13 April, 1919 at Amritsar.

8. **Answer:**

   Hind Swaraj.

9. **Answer:**

   At Congress session (Nagpur) non-cooperation programme was adopted by the Congress.

10. **Answer:**

    Justice Party.

Short Answer:

1. **Answer:**

   Mahatma Gandhi declared that the tax on salt and the government monopoly over its production revealed the most oppressive face of British rule.

2. **Answer:**

   Dandi March.

3. **Answer:**

   People were now asked not only to refuse cooperation with the British, as they had done in 1921-22, but also to break colonial law such as salt tax law.

4. **Answer:**

   The pact known as Gandhi-Irwin Pact, was signed on 5th March, 1931.

5. **Answer:**

   Gandhiji consented to participate in the Second Round Table Conference in London and the government agreed to release the political prisoners.

6. **Answer:**

   The Congress was reluctant to include workers' demands as part of its programme because it was felt that this would alienate industrialists and divide the anti-imperial forces.

7. **Answer:**

   BR.Ambedkar.

8. **Answer:**

   BR Ambedkar demanded separate electorate for the dalits.

9. **Answer:**

   History and fiction, folklore and songs, popular prints and symbols all played a part in the making of nationalism.

10. **Answer:**

In 1870s Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay wrote "Vande Mataram' as a hymn to the motherland.

Long Answer:

1. **Answer:**

(A) The reasons/events leading to the Jallianwala Bagh massacre were as mentioned below :

1) In March 1919, Rowlatt Act was passed despite the united opposition of the Indian members. It gave powers to the government to detain political prisoners without trial for two years.

2) Gandhiji decided to start non-violent civil disobedience against Rowlatt Act with a hartal on 6 April, 1919.

3) Activities under the movement were as given below :

(a) Rallies were organised in various cities.

(b) Workers went on strike in railway workshops.

(c) Shops were closed.

4) Policy of the government: The government was alarmed by the popular participation in the movement and was afraid that the lines of communications – railways and telegraph would be disrupted, it decided to follow a stric policy as given below :

(a) Local leaders in Amritsar were arrested.

(b) Mahatma Gandhi was barred from entering Delhi.

(c) On April 10,1919, the police in Amritsar fired upon a peaceful procession. As a result of firing people were provoked and attacked banks, post offices and railway stations.

(d) The government in order to control the situation, imposed Martial Law. General Dyer took command.

5) On 13 April, 1919, i.e., Baisakhi day, villagers gathered in a fair in Jallianwala Bagh. They were unaware of the Martial Law that had been imposed. Dyer entered the area and blocked the exit point. He opened fire on the crowd, killing hundreds. He declared later that his object was to 'produce a moral effect', i.e., create in the minds of satyagrahis a feeling of terror and awe.

(B) Effects :

1. After the Jallianwala Bagh massacre crowds took to the streets in many north Indian towns. There were strikes, clashes with the police and attacks on government buildings.

2. The government, on the other hand, followed a policy of repression.

a) They humiliated and terrorised people.

b) Satyagrahis were forced to rub their noses on the ground.

c) They were forced to crawl on the streets and salam all sahibs.

d) People were flogged.

e) Some villages around Gujranwala in Punjab were bombed. As the violence spread, Gandhiji called off the movement.

2. **Answer:**

(A) The reason for a more broad-based movement was that the Rowlatt Satyagraha had been a widespread movement but it was mostly limited to cities and towns.

(B) Gandhiji achieved his object in the way as mentioned below :

1) Gandhiji felt that a more broad-based movement could not be organised without bringing Hindu-Muslim unity.

2) (a) One way of achieving Hindu-Muslim unity was to take up the Khilafat issue.

(b) After the defeat of Turkey in World War I there were rumours that harsh terms would be imposed on the emperor of Turkey who was also the Khalifa or the spiritual head of the Muslims.

(c) The Indian Muslims decided to defend the temporal powers of the Khalifa.

(d) Muhammad Ali and Shaukat Ali — two brothers, met Gandhiji who saw this as an opportunity to bring two communities closer and start a unified national movement.

3. **Congress sessions at Calcutta and Nagpur:**

(a) In the special session of the Congress at Calcutta in September 1920, inspite of opposition of some leaders, Gandhiji convinced leaders to start a Non-Cooperation Movement in support of Khilafat as well as for swaraj.

(b) However, many within the Congress were reluctant to boycott the council elections scheduled for November 1920, and they feared that the movement might lead to violence.

(c) But finally at Nagpur session in December 1920, a compromise between two Congress groups was worked out and the Non-Cooperation programme was adopted in support of Khilafat as well as for Swaraj.

3. **Answer:**

(a) **In the towns, middle classes participated in the movement in the following ways :**

1) Students left the schools and colleges. Headmasters and teachers resigned. Lawyers gave up their practice.

2) Elections were boycotted except in Madras, where Justice Party, took part in elections because it was a party of non-Brahmans and felt that entering the Council was one way of gaining some power – something that usually only Brahmans had access to.

3) Foreign goods were boycotted.

4) Liquor shops were picketed.

5) Foreign clothes were burnt in huge bonfires.

6) Many traders refused to import foreign cloth or trade in foreign goods.

(b) **Economic effects of Non-Cooperation Movement were as given below :**

1) The import of foreign cloth decreased from? 102 crore to K 57 crore between 1921 and

2) In many places merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.

3) People discarded foreign clothes and started wearing only Indian clothes. This led to increased production by the Indian textile mills and handlooms.

(c) **The movement in the cities gradually slowed down for the reasons as given below:**

1) Khadi was often more expensive than mass produced mill cloth and poor people could not afford to buy it.

2) Similarly the boycott of British institutions failed because to be successful alternative Indian institutions could not be set up in place of the British ones. As a result of it, students and teachers began to go back to government schools.

3) The lawyers too joined back work in government courts.

4. **Answer:**

During the Non-Cooperation Movement, the peasants of Awadh under the leadership of Baba Ramchandra – a sanyasi, participated.

1. **Causes :**

(a) The talukdars and landlords demanded high rents and other cesses from the peasants who had to do begar and work at landlord's farms without payment.

(b) As tenants, there was no security of tenure and no right over the leased land.

2. **Object and demands :** The demands included reduction of revenue, abolition of begar, and social boycott of oppressive landlords.

3. **Activities during the movement:**

(a) In many places, nai-dhobi bandhs were organised by panchayats to deprive landlords of the services of even barbers and washermen.

(b) By October 1920 Oudh Kisan Sabha was formed. It was headed by Jawaharlal Nehru who had gone there, talked to the villagers to understand their grievances.

(c) Within a month over 300 branches had been setup in the villages around this region.

(d) After the start of non-cooperation movement Congress tried to integrate the Awadh peasants struggle into a wider struggle.

(e) The peasant movement, however, developed in forms that the Congress leadership was unhappy with because in 1921 the houses of talukdars and merchants were attacked, bazars were looted, and grain hoards were taken over.

The local leaders told peasants that Gandhiji had declared that no taxes were to be paid and land was to be redistributed among the poor. The name of Gandhiji was used to sanction all actions and aspirations.

4. **Results :** As the peasants struggle had turned violent, the Congress was unhappy.

5. **Answer:**

1) **Causes for participation :**

(a) The colonial government had closed large forest areas, preventing people from entering the forests to graze their cattle, or to collect fuelwood and fruits.

(b) These restrictions had affected their livelihoods as well as their traditional rights.

(c) They were forced to contribute begar for road building.

2) **Activities :** They attacked police stations and attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerrilla warfare for achieving swaraj.

3) **Their leader and his views** : Alluri Sitaram Raju led them in the militant guerrilla movement. He was influenced by Gandhiji and persuaded them to wear khadi and give up drinking. He believed in the use of force for liberation of the country. He was captured and executed in 1924 and became a folk hero.

4) **Importance :** This shows that tribal people were also influenced by Non-Cooperation Movement and took part in it in their own way. Tribal peasants, however, could not achieve their objects because such activities were not approved by the Congress.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (a) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is the correct explanation of A.

2. (a) Both assertion (A) and Reason(R) are correct, and R is the correct explanation of A.

Case Study Answer:

1.

(i)	(d)	All of these.
(ii)	(c)	Both (a) and (b).
(iii)	(b)	The import of foreign cloth halved between 1921-1922. Its value dropped from Rs. 102 crore to Rs. 57 crore.
(iv)	(a)	General Dyre.

2.

(i)	(b)	Doing protest marches.
(ii)	(c)	Rich peasant households.
(iii)	(a)	1916
(iv)	(b)	Service to the nation.

The Making of Global World 3

The Pre-modern World

All through history, human societies have become steadily more interlinked. From ancient times, travellers, traders, priests and pilgrims travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunity and spiritual fulfilment, or to escape persecution. They carried goods, money, values, skills, ideas, inventions, and even germs and diseases.

As early as 3000 BCE an active coastal trade linked the Indus valley civilisations with present-day West Asia. For more than a millennia, cowries (the Hindi cowdi or seashells, used as a form of currency) from the Maldives found their way to China and East Africa. The long-distance spread of disease-carrying germs may be traced as far back as the seventh century. By the thirteenth century it had become an unmistakable link.

Trade Routes, Goods and Trading Practices

The word 'Globalisation' is of recent origin. It refers to an economic system which has interlinked and integrated the world's economies. However, 'globalisation' in its primitive forms did exist in the ancient, medieval and the early modern periods.

Forms of 'Globalisation' in the pre-modern period

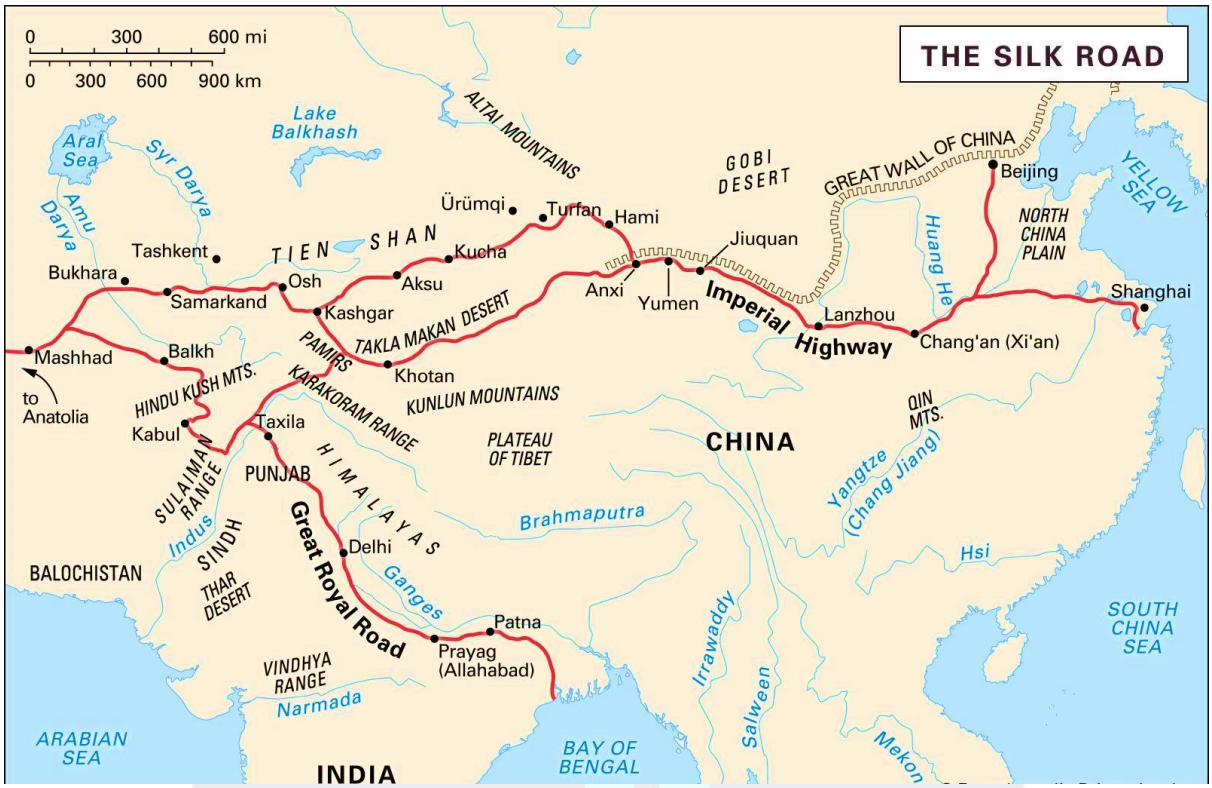




- The Indus Valley had trade links with West Asia
- Indian sea shells found their way from Maldives to China and East Africa
- Across countries, people traded in goods and various articles of trade
- Travellers, traders, pilgrims and priests travelled vast distances
- Travellers also carried germs to far off places which they visited

The Silk Route

The Silk Route was mainly a trade route which connected Asia with Africa and Europe. Silk was the chief commodity which was traded on this route. However, many other commodities such as gold, silver, precious stones, wool, cotton and carpets were also traded on this route. This route also enabled cultural exchanges from one country to another. Many Buddhists, pilgrims and priests travelled on this route in search of spiritual and religious knowledge.



Food Travels

When people travelled far across the countries, they carried not only their ideas, goods and commodities but also their food and food habits.

- Various food items and seeds were carried from one part of the country to the other. These food items then assumed different names and forms in different countries. For example, it is believed that noodles became spaghetti after they were taken from China to the West.
- Many common and staple foods such as potato, tomatoes, chillies and maize were not known in many countries in the ancient period. These food items were introduced in Asia and Europe after the continent of America was discovered.
- Introduction of these food items changed the lifestyle of Europeans. Europe's poor began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of the potato.

Conquest, Disease and Trade

- Discovery of sea routes and geographical explorations significantly changed the geography and ifestyle of Europeans in particular.
- After the discovery of America, its vast lands, minerals and abundant crops changed the lives of people living elsewhere. For example, silver mines in present-day Peru and Mexico financed European trade with Asia.
- The Portuguese and the Spanish began to conquer and make inroads into the American continent. They were able to conquer the Americas not because of their superior weapons but because of the germs that they carried along with them.
- The natives of America were cut off from the world and they had no immunity against the diseases which came from Europe. Small pox, to which the Europeans were immune, killed thousands of native Americans and paved the way for the colonisation of America.



Columbus discovers the sea route to America

- Many Europeans migrated to America in order to escape religious persecution and to begin a new life. Many cotton and sugarcane plantations were established in America where several Africans captured as slaves worked. The agricultural and mineral wealth of America began to dominate the world economy.
- India and China were among the richest countries in ancient and medieval times. However, by the beginning of the eighteenth century, their position began to decline and Europe emerged as the centre of world trade.



A painting depicting the death of Native Americans because of the outbreak of small pox

The Nineteenth Century

There were significant political, cultural and technological changes in the nineteenth century in Europe.

Changes in Economy

- In the beginning of the nineteenth century, the demand of food grains increased in Great Britain. This increased the prices of food grains. Under pressure from landowners, the Government put a ban on the import of corn, which came to be known as the **Corn Laws.**
- This further increased the prices of food grains. This led the Government to scrap the Corn Laws. Thus, food began to be imported into Britain in such large quantities that British agriculture was unable to compete with imports. Many agricultural labourers migrated to cities in search of work.
- The reduction in food prices in Britain increased consumption. After the beginning of the Industrial Revolution, the average income rose. Lands were cleared in Eastern Europe, Australia, America and Russia to meet the food demands of Britain. This also led to the development of ports, transport and settlements in these regions.
- Many Europeans also migrated to Australia and America as labour was in short supply and in search of a better future.

By 1890, agriculture had become global

- Food came not necessarily from a nearby village but from thousands of miles away
- Crops were grown by several agricultural labourers who were employed on an agricultural farm
- Food was transported to distant lands and countries by railways and ships

Technological changes took place in India as well during this time. In west Punjab, canals were built to irrigate large chunks of semi- arid lands. This made the soil fertile and wheat and rice were grown on them for export. Many peasants settled around the newly fertile land and the region came to be known as the **Canal colony**.



Role of Technology

The railways, steamships and telegraph were some important inventions of the late modern period. These inventions came to be increasingly used in colonies to further help in the transport of food grains and raw materials.

Availability of meat at cheap prices promoted social peace within the country and support for imperialism abroad.

Before 1870s	After 1870s (Invention of Refrigerated Ships)
Animals were shipped alive from America to Europe	The invention of 'refrigerated ships' enabled the transport of perishable foods over long distance.
Animals took a lot of ship space. They were then slaughtered in Europe	Animals were now slaughtered from the starting point like America, Australia or New Zealand.
Many animals died, fell ill or became unfit for consumption during long journey	Frozen meat was then transported to Europe. Reduced shipping costs reduced prices of meat.
High shipping cost led to high meat price and subsequently resulting in low demand and low production of meat.	Now, even Poor could also afford meat. This increased consumption, demand, production and trade of meat.

Colonialism in the Late 19th Century

- One negative result of expansion of trade and industrial growth in Europe was the spread of colonialism in many countries of Asia and Africa. The big European nations divided the African continent among each other in 1885 at Berlin. Britain, France, Germany, Belgium and USA were some major African landholders.
- Initially, it became difficult to find labour in Africa. However, several methods were used by the Europeans to recruit and retain labour in Africa. These were:
  - Heavy taxes were imposed which could be paid only by working for wages on plantations and mines.
  - Inheritance laws were changed so that peasants were displaced from land. Only one member of a family was allowed to inherit land, as a result of which the others were pushed into the labour market
  - Mineworkers were also confined in compounds and not allowed to move about freely.
- Later, the spread of a cattle disease called rinderpest killed about 90% of cattle in Africa. This loss of cattle destroyed the African livelihood forcing the Africans to work for European planters and mine owners.



Indentured labourers moving to other countries in search of employment

Indentured Labour

An indentured labour is a form of labour in which a bonded labourer works under contract for an employer for a specific amount of time. The labourer has to pay off his passage or travel expense to a new country or home.



An image showing newly arrived Indian indentured labourers to Trinidad

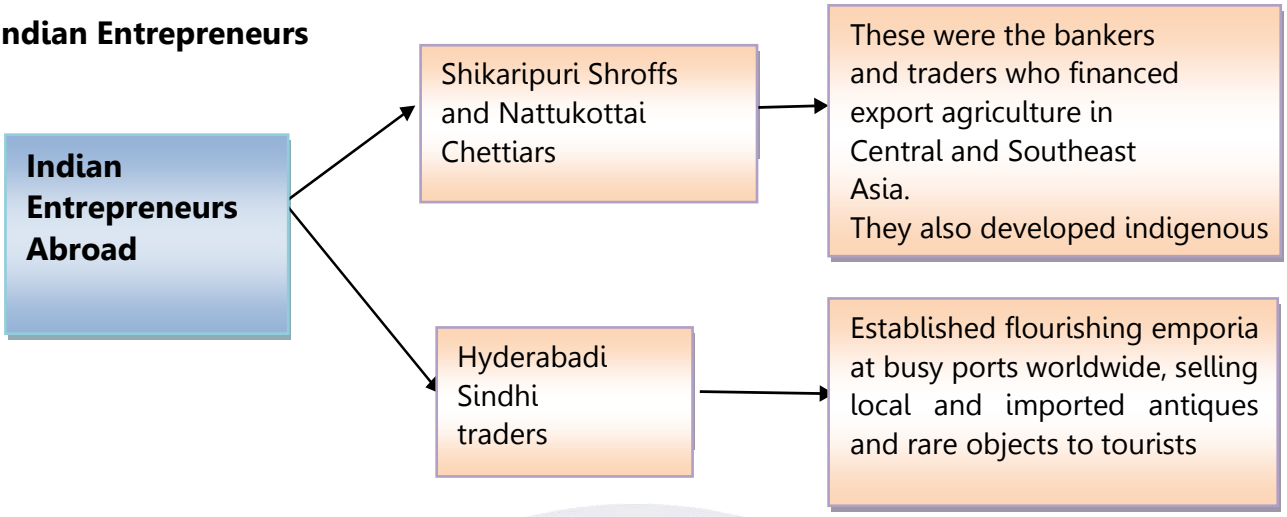
- In the nineteenth century, many indentured labourers were sent from India and China to various regions of the world to work on plantations, mines and in road and railway construction projects.
- The indentured labourers had to sign a contract in which they had to work for five years on their owners plantations before returning to their lands. If they left their jobs before the end of their tenure, the owner had the right to send them to jail.
- Most of the indentured labourers came fromUttar Pradesh, central India, Bihar and the dry regions of South India. Many Indian workers migrated to the Caribbean Islands, Mauritius and Fiji. These labourers worked under extremely harsh conditions and did not earn enough. Most of them were recruited by the agents who provided them with false information on the final destination, mode of travelling and living and working conditions. Indentured labour became a new system of slavery.

However, even during such harsh working conditions, the indentured workers discovered their own ways of surviving.

- Many of them escaped into the wilds while others developed new forms of individual and collective self-expression, blending different old and new cultural forms.
- 'Chutney music', popular in Trinidad and Guyana, is a creative contemporary expression of the post-indenture experience.
- In Trinidad the annual Muharram procession was transformed into a riotous carnival called 'Hosay' (for Imam Hussain) in which workers of all races and religions joined.
- Similarly, the protest religion of Rastafarianism (made famous by the Jamaican reggae star Bob Marley) is also said to reflect social and cultural links with Indian migrants to the Caribbean.

From the 1900s India's nationalist leaders began to oppose the system of indentured labour migration as abusive and cruel. It was abolished in 1921.

Indian Entrepreneurs



Indian Trade, Colonialism and the Global System

- The British Government imposed several restrictions on the import of Indian cotton clothes into Britain to protect local industries. The tariff duties however were removed on the British mill- produced cloth imported into India.
- This led to the decline in the Indian textile industries which were not able to face competition from the cheap mill-produced cloth from Britain. The Indian textiles also faced competition from British machine made goods in other international markets.
- While the export of Indian cotton cloth declined, the export of raw materials such as cotton, indigo and opium increased. In India, the value of British exports was higher than that of British imports. Britain thus maintained a favourable balance of trade with India. It helped Britain to balance its trade deficit with other countries, to pay its officers in India, to pay interest on India's external trade and to pay the pensions of the British officials in India. This resulted in the drain of Indian wealth to Britain.

The Economy during the First World War

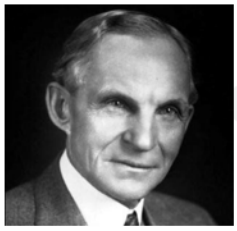
- The First World War was fought between Britain, France and Russia (later also joined by the USA) on one hand and Germany, Austria–Hungary and Ottoman Turkey on the other hand. The war caused large-scale economic changes in the world.
- Machine guns, tanks, aircraft and chemical weapons were used on a large scale. During the war, many industries were producing goods related to the war. Women began to work as men went to the battlefield to fight the wars.
- Britain borrowed large sums of money from the banks and the public of the United States. After the end of the war, the citizens of the US had owned more overseas assets than in the US.



The First World War saw an increase in the production of weapons.

Post-War Recovery

- By the end of the war, Britain was heavily in debt. The end of the war led to an increase in unemployment. Production also decreased.
- The revival of wheat production in Canada, America and Australia led to the fall in the prices of wheat. This led to a decline in rural income and high debts for farmers.
- The US was quick to recover from the effects of the First World War



Sir Henry

One important feature of the US economy of the 1920s was **mass production**.

- It was started by Sir Henry Ford. He adopted the assembly line of mass production.
- In the assembly line of mass production, workers had to pick and fix manufacturing parts as they came down a conveyor belt.
- The assembly line forced workers to repeat a single task mechanically and continuously. Mass production lowered costs and prices of engineered goods. As a result of higher wages, workers could afford to purchase durable consumer goods.

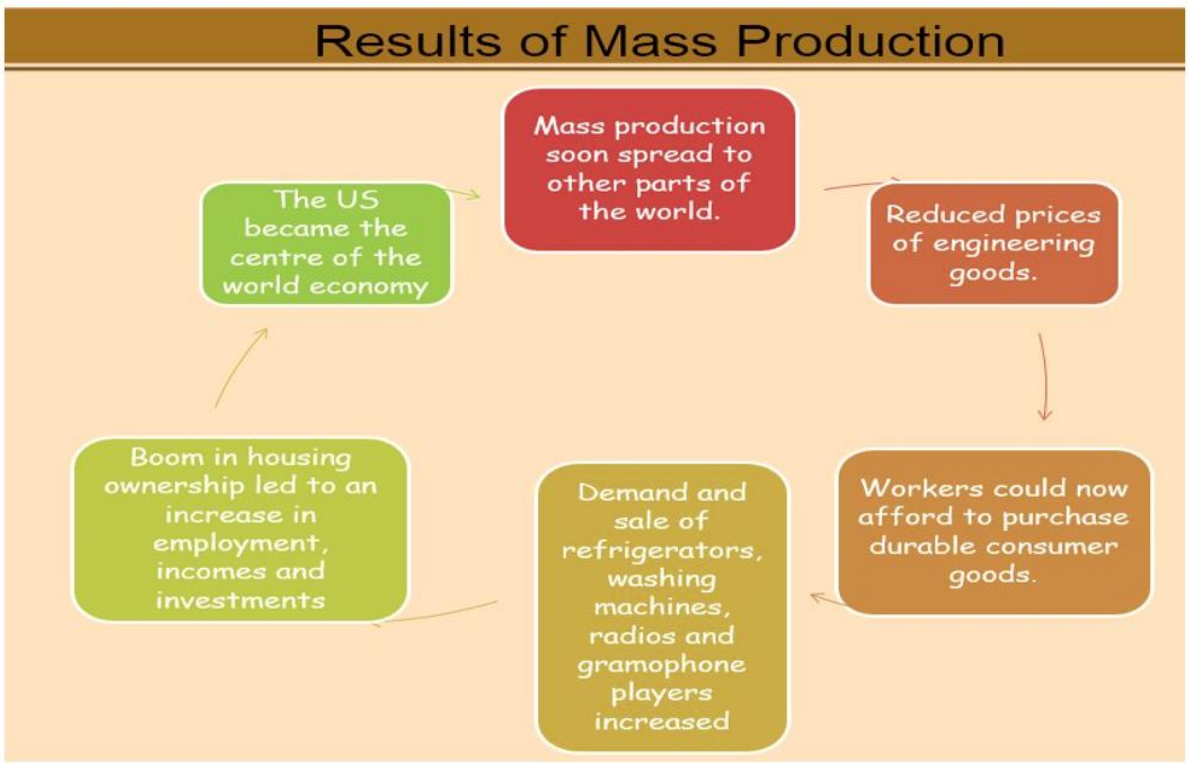
The Great Depression of 1929-30

- A great economic depression hit the United States and other European countries in 1929. There was decline in the production of industrial goods, employment opportunities, incomes and trade. Farmers were worst affected because of the decline in food grains.
- Countries which depended on US finances faced acute crises. The withdrawal of loans from the US led to the failure of major banks in Europe and the value of the pound deteriorated. The attempts by the US to protect its trading interests by increasing import duties also hit the world markets.
- The depression also hit the US hard. The conditions of farmers, workers and the middle class worsened.



The Great Depression of 1929 hit the western countries hard.

- Agricultural overproductions, decrease in prices of agricultural goods and the refusal of the USA to grant loans to other countries finally resulted in the Great Depression.

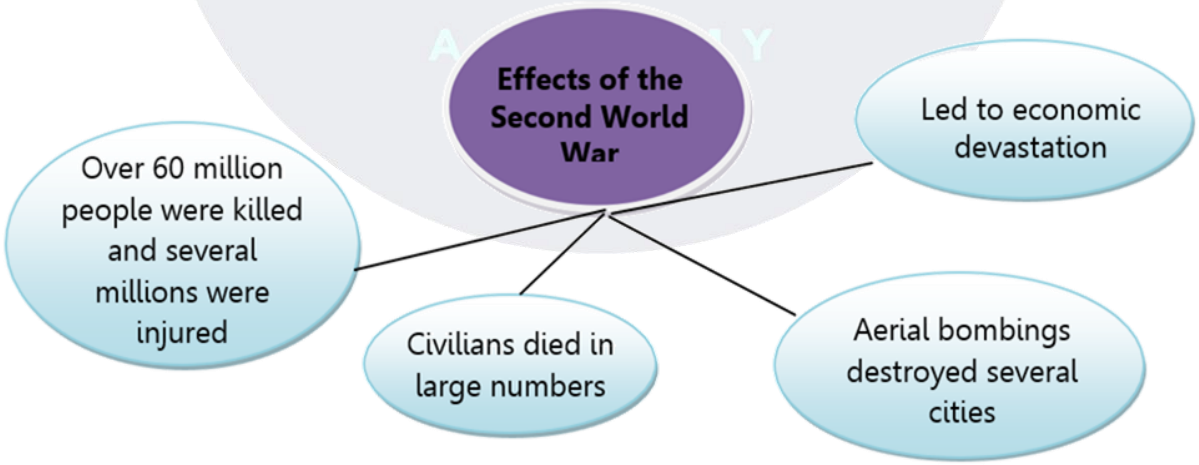




The Great Depression – Impact on India

- Indian trade was hit hard by the Great Depression. India's exports and imports were halved. By 1934, the prices of wheat fell by 50%.
- The prices of food grains declined, but the Government refused to reduce the taxes.
- Peasants who produced commodities for the world market such as cotton and jute suffered great losses. Rural indebtedness increased, and many farmers lost their lands.
- The depression did not impact urban Indians much. Decrease in the prices of food grains benefited fixed salaried employees. Investments in industries also grew as the Government protected the industries by imposing tariffs under the mounting pressure of the Indian nationalists.

The Second World War and Recovery



- The Second World War broke out in 1939. The destruction in this war was larger than the previous war. This war saw the rise of two powerful nations—the United States and the Soviet Union of Russia.
- The governments of the European and American nations realised that for economic recovery, it is important to preserve economic stability and guarantee full employment to the people. The conference was held at Bretton Woods in USA in 1944 to discuss ways to achieve these aims. This system came to be known as the Bretton Woods system.

- International Monetary Fund (IMF) was set up to finance the post-war reconstruction process. The World Bank and the IMF were controlled by the Western powers, especially by the US.
- The Bretton Woods system led to the beginning of growth of trade and income in many western industrial regions and in Japan.



The Bretton Conference held at Bretton, USA

Decolonisation

- After the end of the Second World War, many Asian and African countries became independent. These countries however emerged poor as these countries were exploited by colonial powers.
- The World Bank and the IMF began to shift their focus towards the development of newly independent nations. However, many western nations also secured the rights to exploit the natural resources of the poor countries and further exploited them.
- Many developing nations did not benefit from the rapid growth of the western nations, and thus, they organised themselves into a group of 77 or G-77 to demand a new international economic order (NIEO) which could also protect their trading interests in the long term. By NIEO, the third world countries aimed for a system that will give them a control over their own natural resources, development assistance, fairer prices for raw materials and a better access of their goods in the markets of the developed countries.

Beginning of Globalisation

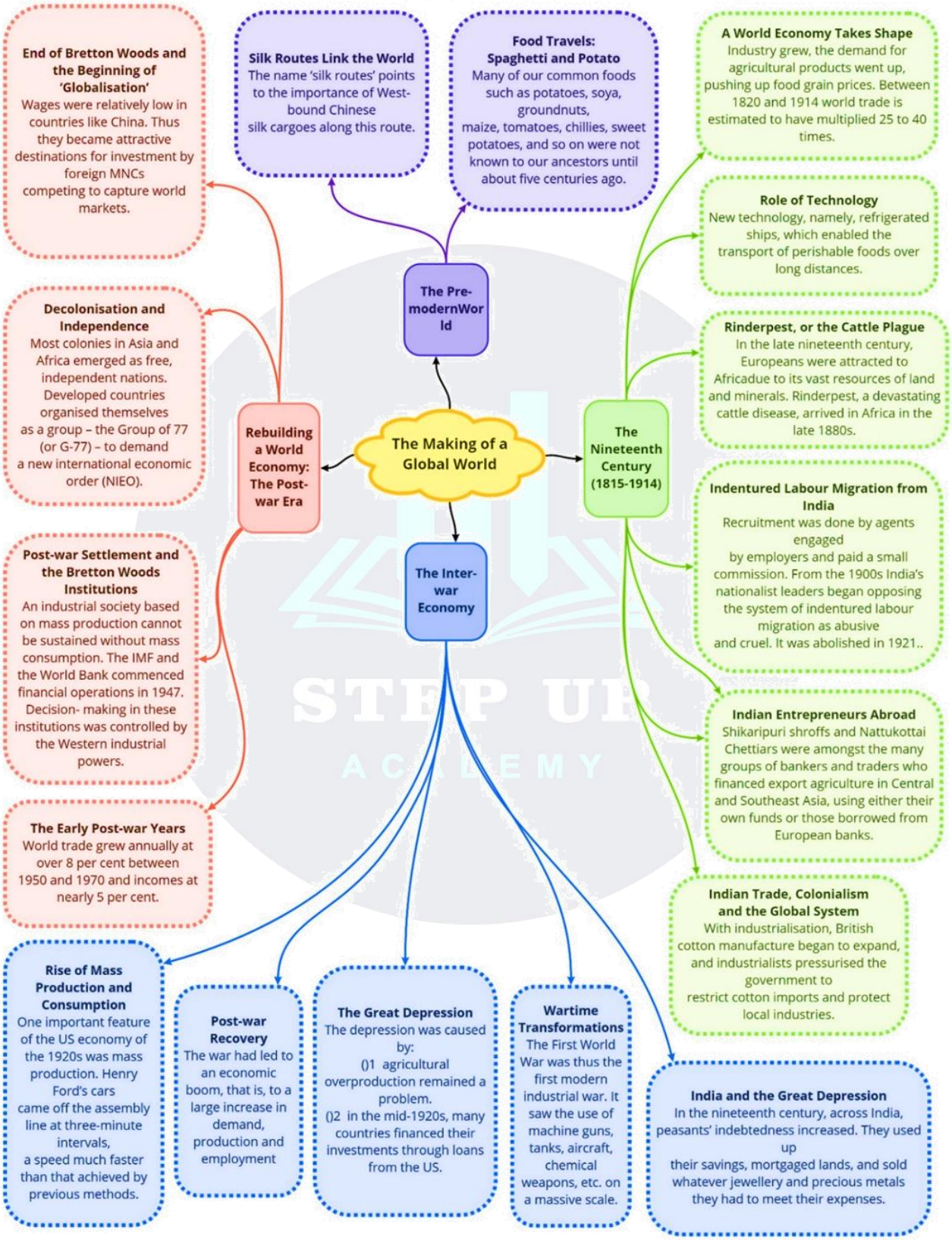
- Because of the rising costs of goods, the US Dollar began to depreciate. This led to the collapse of fixed exchange rates (when the rates of exchange are fixed and the Government interferes in the system to keep them fixed) and the introduction of floating exchange rates (the rates are not fixed as they fluctuate depending on the demand and supply of currencies in the foreign markets; the Government does not control the rates).
- The developing countries were forced to borrow money from the western commercial banks and private lending institutions. This increased debt traps, poverty and lower incomes in borrowing countries.
- As the costs of running production and labour became expensive in the western nations, these countries began to shift their centre of production to the Asian and African nations.
- The collapse of the Soviet Union brought many socialist countries into the world economic fold.



Globalisation has resulted in the opening of many production units in India and China because of low production cost and availability of cheap labour.

- Because the wages of workers were extremely low in China, many traders and businessmen set up their industries there.
- The shifting of industries to low-wage countries resulted in larger trade and flow of capital from the developed to the developing nations. Many countries such as China, India, Brazil and the Philippines have seen rapid economic construction and transformation.

Class : 10th History
Chapter-3 : The Making of a Global World



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. People livelihood and local economy of which one of the following was badly affected by the disease named Rinderpest.
   (a) Asia
   (b) Europe
   (c) Africa
   (d) South America
2. Which of the following places was an important destination for indentured migrants?
   (a) Florida
   (b) Melbourne
   (c) Carribbean island
   (d) Mexico
3. The group of powers collectively known as the Axis power during the Second World War were:
   (a) Germany, Italy, Japan
   (b) Austria, Germany, Italy
   (c) France, Japan, Italy
   (d) Japan, Germany, Turkey
4. Who among the following is a Nobel Prize winner?
   (a) V.S. Naipaul
   (b) J.M. Keynes
   (c) Shivnarine Chanderpaul
   (d) Ramnaresh Sarwan
5. Which of the following statements correctly identifies the com laws?
   (a) Restricted the import of corn to ; England
   (b) Allowed the import of com to England
   (c) Imposed tax on com
   (d) Abolished the sale of com
6. Which of the following is the direct effect of Great Depression on Indian Trade?
   (a) Peasants and farmers suffered.
   (b) Indian exports and imports nearly halved between 1928-1934.
   (c) Peasants' indebtedness increased.
   (d) Led to widespread unrest in rural India.
7. Which of the following enabled the Europeans to conquer and control the Africans?
   (a) Victory in war
   (b) Control over the scarce resource of cattle
   (c) Death of Africans due to rinderpest
   (d Lack of weapons in Africa to fight against the Europeans
8. Who discovered the vast continent, later known as America?
   (a) Vasco da Gama
   (b) Christopher Columbus
   (c) V.S. Naipaul
   (d) None of these
9. Until 18th century which two countries were considered the richest in the world?
   (a) India and China
   (b) China and Japan
   (c) England and France
   (d) England and Italy
10. Why were the Europeans attracted to Africa?
   (a) By its natural beauty
   (b) By the opportunities for investment
   (c) For its vast land resources and mineral wealth
   (d) For recruitment of labour
11. Transport of perishable goods over long distance was possible because of
   (a) improved railways
   (b) airline services
   (c) refrigerated ships
   (d) steam ships
12. The World Bank was set-up to
   (a) finance rehabilitation of refugees.
   (b) finance post war construction.
   (c) finance industrial development.
   (d) help third world countries.

13. Most Indian indentured workers came from:
    (a) Eastern Uttar Pradesh
    (b) North-eastern states
    (c) Jammu and Kashmir
    (d) None of these
14. Who adopted the concept of an assembly line to produce automobiles?
    (a) Henry Ford
    (b) Karl Benz
    (c) V.S. Naipaul
    (d) Samuel Morse
15. The First World War was fought mainly in
    (a) Asia
    (b) Europe
    (c) America
    (d) Africa.

Very Short Questions:

1. What is globalisation?
2. How were human societies interlinked in ancient times?
3. Which was the earliest active coastal trade link?
4. Name one earliest form of currency.
5. To which century the long distance spread of disease-carrying germs may be traced?
6. Mention one example of vibrant pre-modem trade and cultural link between distant parts of the world.
7. What does the name 'silk routes' point to?
8. Who took pasta to Sicily?
9. Name the foods that were introduced in Europe and Asia after the discovery of America by Christopher Columbus.
10. What was the effect of potatoes on the lives of the poorest in Europe?

Short Questions:

1. When did the Great Irish Potato Famine take place and what were its results?
2. How did the discovery of America in the 16th century transform trade and lives every where? Give one example.
3. What was the most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors of America?
4. Why did the Europeans leave Europe for America in the nineteenth century?
5. What was the position of China and India among the countries in the 18th century?
6. By the eighteenth century in America, how did the plantations work and what was grown there?
7. Which were the three types of movements or flows within international economic exchanges?
8. State any one reason that was responsible for the increased demand for food grains in Britain in the late eighteenth century.
9. What were Corn Laws? Why were they passed?
10. Mention two steps that were taken to meet the increased demand for food in Britain.

Long Questions:

1. Describe how human societies have become steadily more interlinked in the ancient times.

Or

Mention any three sources of interlinkage between nations in ancient times

2. "Food offers many examples of longdistance cultural exchange." Support your answer with three examples.
3. Explain with example, how the new crops could make the difference between life and death for people. Explain with an example from Ireland.

Or

Show the importance of new crops for the poor.

4. Describe the main features of the pre-modern world before the sixteenth century. How did it change with the discovery of new sea routes to America? Give any three examples to explain the statement.
5. Describe three types of movements or flows within international economic exchanges in the nineteenth century. What were its effects?

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
   (a) Only Assertion is true.
   (b) Only reason is correct
   (c) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is correct explanation of Assertion.
   (d) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is not correct explanation of Assertion.

   Assertion (A) – As International prices crashed. Between 1928 to 1934 wheat prices in India fell by 50 percent.

   Reason (R) – The depression immediately affected Indian trade. India's export and import nearly halved between 1928 to 1934

2. In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
   (a) Only Assertion is true.
   (b) Only reason is correct
   (c) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is correct explanation of Assertion.
   (d) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is not correct explanation of Assertion.

   Assertion (A) – Rinderpest arrived in Africa in the late 1880's. It reached the Cape, African southernmost tip five year later. Along the way rinderpest killed 90 percent of the cattle.

   Reason (R) – It was carried by infected cattle imported from British Asia to feed the Italian soldiers invading Eritrea in East Africa.

Case Study Questions:

1. When the Second World War ended, large parts of the world were still under European colonial rule. Over the next two decades, most colonies in Asia and Africa emerged as free independent nations. They were, however, overburdened by poverty and a lack of resources, and their economies and societies were handicapped by long periods of colonial rule. The IMF and the World Bank were designed to meet the financial needs of the industrial countries. They were not equipped to cope with the challenge of poverty and lack of development in the former colonies. But as Europe and Japan rapidly rebuilt their economies, they grew less dependent on the IMF and the World Bank. Thus, from the late 1950s, the Bretton Woods institutions began to shift their attention more towards developing countries. As colonies, many of the less developed regions of the world had been part of Western empires. Now, ironically, as newly independent countries facing urgent pressures to lift their populations out of poverty, they came under the guidance of international agencies dominated by the former colonial powers. Even after many years of decolonization, the former colonial powers still controlled vital resources such as minerals and land in many of their former colonies. Large corporations of other powerful countries, for example, the US, also often managed to secure rights to exploit developing countries' natural resources very cheaply.

   i. Why were the Bretton Woods Institutions established? Choose the correct option from the following:
      (a) To promote the International Trade
      (b) To reconstruct the economies damaged during the Second World War
      (c) To improve the adverse Balance of Payment situation of the non-member countries
      (d) All of the above

   ii. What factors led to decolonisation after the Second World War? With reference to the above context, infer the appropriate option.
      (a) After World War-II, European countries lacked the wealth and political support necessary to suppress the revolts.
      (b) There were strong independence movements in colonies.
      (c) Both (a) and (b)
      (d) Financial needs of European countries were not favoured as they were colonial powers.

iii. Which of the following countries has an effective right of veto over key IMF and World Bank decisions? Select the best suitable option from the following reference to the context:

(a) France

(b) Australia

(c) Russia

(d) USA

iv. Why did the Bretton Woods Institutions shift their focus from industrial countries to colonies? Identify from the given options.

(a) As upliftment of poor countries was a central notion.

(b) Because industrial countries had rebuilt their economies.

(c) Because financial support was a need for the establishment of administration in colonies.

(d) As industrial countries tried to establish their control on Bretton Woods Institutions.

v. How did Bretton Woods Institutions failed in maintaining the idea of decolonisation?

(a) The European rulers played a dominant role in Bretton Woods Institutions.

(b) As its focus was to improve the European industrial centres.

(c) Through Bretton Woods Institutions, European rulers continued their control over colonies resources.

(d) All of the above

ANSWER KEY

MCQ:

1. **Answer**: c
2. **Answer**: c
3. **Answer**: a
4. **Answer**: a
5. **Answer**: a
6. **Answer**: b
7. **Answer**: b
8. **Answer**: b
9. **Answer**: a
10. **Answer**: c
11. **Answer**: c
12. **Answer**: b
13. **Answer**: a
14. **Answer**: a
15. **Answer**: b

Very Short Answer:

1. **Answer:** Globalisation refers to an economic system that has emerged for the last 50 years or so.
2. **Answer**: In ancient times human societies were interlinked by travellers, traders, priests and pilgrims who travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunity and spiritual fulfillment or to escape persecution.
3. **Answer:** As early as 3000 BCE an active coastal trade linked the Indus Valley civilisations with the present day West Asia.
4. **Answer:** Cowries (the Hindi cowdi or seashells) were used as a form of currency.
5. **Answer:** Seventh Century.
6. **Answer:** The silk routes are a good example of vibrant pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant parts of the world.
7. **Answer:** The name 'silk routes' points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along the route.
8. **Answer:** Perhaps Arab traders took pasta to fifth century Sicily, an island now in Italy.
9. **Answer:** The foods were potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies and sweet potatoes.
10. **Answer:** The new crops of potatoes made a great change in the lives of the poor in Europe because they began to eat better and live longer. In Ireland poorest peasants became so dependent that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid 1840s, thousands died of starvation.

Short Answer:

1. **Answer:**

   The Great Irish Potato Famine took place during 1845-1849. As a result of it, around 1,000,000 people died of starvation in Ireland and double the number emigrated in search of work..

2. **Answer:**

   Precious metals, particularly silver, from mines located in present-day Peru and Mexico enhanced Europe's wealth and financed its trade with Asia.

3. **Answer:**

   The most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors was not a conventional military weapon at all. It was the germs such as those of smallpox that they carried on their person.

4. **Answer:**

   The reasons were poverty, hunger, diseases, religious conflicts and persecution of religious dissenters.

5. **Answer:**

   i. Until well into the eighteenth century, China and India were among the world's richest countries.

   ii. They were also pre-eminent in Asian trade.

6. **Answer:**

   i. In America by the eighteenth century, plantations worked by slaves captured in Africa.

   ii. They were growing cotton and sugar for European markets.

7. **Answer:**

   i. Flow of trade i.e., trade in goods.

   ii. Flow of labour i.e., migration of poeple in search of employment.

   Movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances.

8. **Answer:**

   Population growth.

9. **Answer:**

   i. The laws allowing the government to restrict the import of corn were known as Corn Laws.

   ii. Under pressure from landed groups, the government had passed these laws.

10. **Answer:**

    i. Lands were cleared in Eastern Europe, Russia, America and Australia to expand food production to meet the British demand.

    ii. New harbours were built and old ones expanded to ship the new cargoes.

Long Answer:

1. **Answer:**

   It is true to say that the human societies have become steadily more interlinked in the following ways :

   1) From ancient times, travellers, traders, priests and pilgrims travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunities and spiritual fulfillment or to escape persecution.

   2) They carried goods, money, values, skills, ideas, inventions and even germs and diseases.

   3) As early as 3000 BCE an active coastal trade linked the Indus Valley civilisation with present-day West Asia.

   4) For more than a millenia, cowries (in Hindi cowdi or sea-shells) were used as a form of currency. From the Maldives they found their way to China and East Africa.

   5) The long distance spread of disease-carrying germs are traced as far back as the seventh century. By the thirteenth century it had become an unmistakable link.

   6) From the ninth century, images of ships appear regularly in memorial stones found in the western coast, indicating the significance of oceanic trade.

2. **Answer:**

   Food offers many examples of long distance cultural exchange as mentioned below :

   1) Travellers and traders introduced new crops to the lands they travelled. Even 'ready' foodstuff in distant parts of the world might share common origins. For example, noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti.

   2) Arab traders took pasta to fifth century Sicily (Italy). Similar foods were known to

the Indians and Japanese people. Their origins cannot be ascertained, but the fact remains that there was long distance cultural contact even in the pre-modern world.

3) Our major common foods are potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes. These were not known in India until about five centuries ago. These were introduced in Europe and Asia after the discovery of Americas by Christopher Columbus. Actually many of our common foods came from America's original inhabitants i.e., the American Indians.

3. Answer:

Sometimes new crops make remarkable difference in the lives of the poor people. For example, with the introduction of potatoes in Europe, the poor began to eat better and live longer. In Ireland, the poorest peasants were so much dependent on potatoes that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid-1840s, hundreds of thousands died of starvation. Hungry children used to dig for potatoes in the fields that had already been harvested. Thousands of people emigrated in search of work.

4. Answer:

(a) The main features of the pre-medern world before the sixteenth century were as mentioned below:

1) Before the sixteenth century, the Indian Ocean had known for a bustling trade, with goods, people, knowledge, customs etc. cross-crossing its waters.

2) The Indian subcontinent was central to these flows and a crucial point in their networks. However the entry of Europeans helped expand or redirect some of these flows towards Europe.

(b) In the sixteenth century, European sailors discovered sea route to Asia and also successfully crossed the western ocean to America. With these discoveries, the pre-modern world shrank and changed in the following ways :

1) With the discovery of America, its vast lands, abundant crops and minerals transformed trade and lives every where in the world.

2) Precious metals, particularly silver, from mines located in present day Peru and Mexico enhanced Europe's wealth and financed its trade with Asia.

3) Legends spread in seventeenth century Europe about South America's abundant wealth. Thus many expeditions were sent in search of El Dorado, the Tabled city of gold.

5. Answer:

(a) The economists identify three types of movement or flows within international economic exchanges. These are as mentioned below :

1) The first is the flow of trade which is referred largely to trade in goods e.g., cloth or wheat.

2) The second is flow of labour – the migration of people in search of employment.

3) The third is the movement of capital for short-term or long-term investments over long distances.

(b)

1) All these flows were closely interwoven and affected people's lives more deeply now than ever before.

2) The interconnection could sometimes be broken, for example, labour migration was often restricted than goods or capital flows.

Assertion Reason Answer:

1. (c) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is correct explanation of Assertion.
2. (c) Both Assertion and Reason correct, and Reason is correct explanation of Assertion.

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (b) To reconstruct the economies damaged during the Second World War
   ii. (c) Both (a) and (b)
   iii. (d) USA
   iv. (b) Because industrial countries had rebuilt their economies.
   v. (c) Through Bretton Woods Institutions, European rulers continued their control over colonies resources.

The Age of Industrialisation 4

The Industrial Revolution was a significant event in the world history. It is because it changed and determined the socio-economic conditions existing in the world at this time. The Europeans saw the process of industrialisation as a sign of modernity and progress. However, we also need to ask certain questions related to industrialisation such as "Can we today continue to glorify continuous mechanisation of all work? Did industrialisation only had positive effects? How did it impact the common people?

In an attempt to answer these questions, let us first take a look at the conditions existing before industrialisation.

Conditions Existing before the Industrial Revolution

- Even before the establishment of factories, there was large-scale industrial production for the international market. This phase before industrialisation is known as **proto-industrialisation**. (Proto means original or primitive form).
- During the seventeenth and early eighteenth centuries, merchants visited the countryside and villages asking farmers to produce for international markets. These merchants often provided money to these farmers.
- Merchants and traders visited the countryside as the guilds of workers, producers and weavers were very strong in towns and had monopoly over production.
- In the countryside, farmers readily agreed to produce for international markets as it supplemented their income. Production and trade were controlled by merchants, with one merchant approximately employing 20–25 workers for weaving, spinning and dying the cloth.

The Beginning and the Growth of the Factory System

- Many factories began to open up in eighteenth-century England due to several changes which took place then. One of these changes were technological inventions.
- Cotton textile industries were established in large numbers at this time mainly because of technological advancements. The creation of the cotton mill by Richard Arkwright enabled the production of cotton cloth on a large scale in factories. Unlike in the countryside where each task was done separately at different places, work in the factories was managed under one roof.



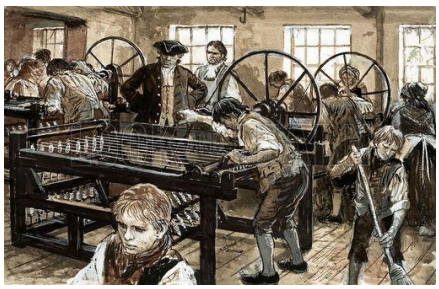
Richard Arkwright





Cotton Gin

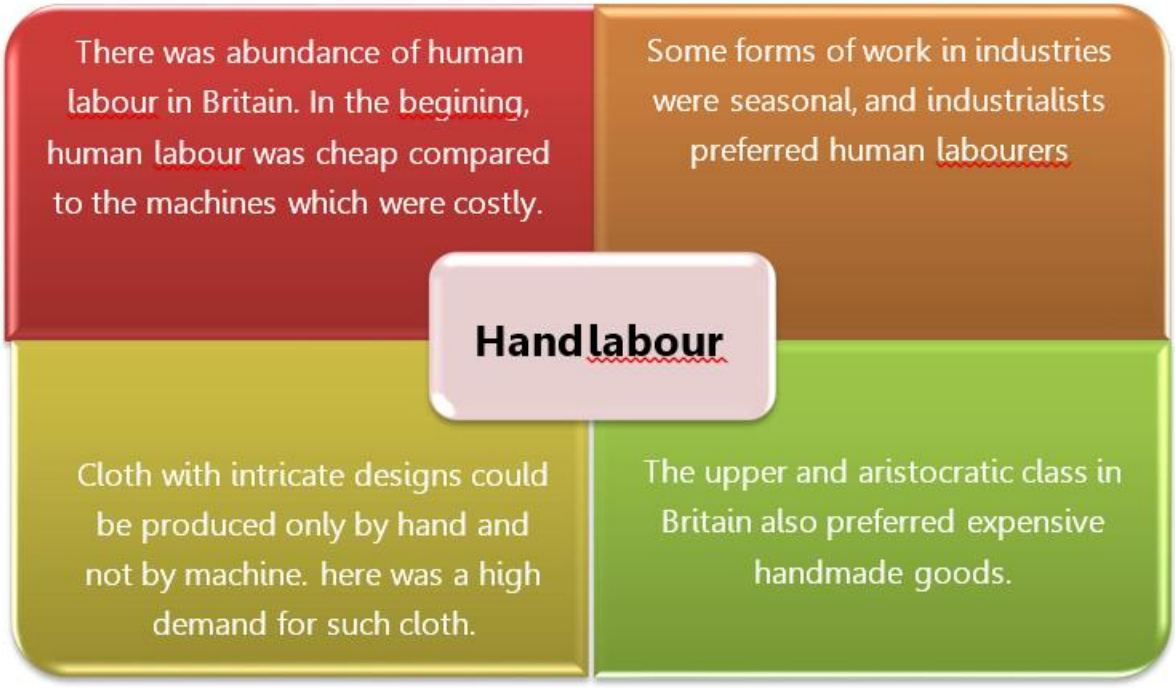
- Britain saw rapid growth of industrialisation. However, this assumed the following forms:
  - Cotton textiles and iron and steel industries developed rapidly due to the Industrial Revolution. Other industries were still working in a traditional manner.
  - Factories came up at different places, but traditional industries were also operating on a large scale.
  - Traditional industries were not based on machine production, but they were also not stagnant. Small little innovations were taking place in traditional industries as well. Some examples of these industries were food processing, building, pottery, glass work, furniture making etc.



A typical 19th century scene Britain in cotton textile industries

  - Technological changes took place gradually because new machinery was expensive and it was not easy to repair them. For example, it took many years before the steam engine began to be used widely in industries.
  - Historians thus accept that a worker in the nineteenth century was not a machine operator but a traditional craftsperson.

Why Human Labour?



Life of Human Labourers

- Because labour was in abundance in Britain, many people migrated from the countryside to the cities in search of employment.
- The possibility of getting a job also depended on the network of friendship andkinship.
- Many people while finding work, spent their nights in under bridges or in nightshelters.
- There were also long periods of unemployment for people who were working in seasonal industries.



In Britain, thousands of workers migrated to cities in search of work

- The wages of workers increased in the early nineteenth century, but the prices of goods also increased simultaneously.
- The fear of unemployment increased the hostility of the workers towards the introduction of machines in factories. For example, when the Spinning Jenny was introduced, women who depended on spinning for earning their livelihood attacked the new machines. Such conflicts continued for a long time.
- After 1840s, as the infrastructure expanded and roads, bridges and railway lines began to be laid down, there was an increase in the employment opportunities for theworkers.

Industrialisation in India

India before Industrialisation

India was known for its cotton and silk textiles before the beginning of the Industrial Revolution in Britain. India produced the finer quality of cotton. Surat in Gujarat, Masulipatnam in coastal Andhra Pradesh and Hooghly in West Bengal were important port towns of India from where goods were exported to the other countries. Many bankers and Indian merchants financed the trading activities.

India during Industrialisation

As the European companies gained power in India and received trading rights, they gradually established their own monopolies in trade.



- This resulted in the decline in the old ports of Surat and Hooghly. Exports from these ports fell considerably and the local bankers gradually became bankrupt.
- The new cities of Bombay and Calcutta grew under the colonial rule. The trade was controlled by the Europeans and was carried on by European ships.
- This led to the decline in many trading houses and the rise of new businesshouses.
- After the British East India Company established its political control over India and eliminated the other East India Companies, it established its monopoly over buying and selling of cotton goods and took various steps to ensure regular supply of raw cotton and silk. This was achieved by the Company by implementing the following steps:
    - The Company appointed their own servants called 'gomastha' to supervise the work of weavers, to collect supplies and to check the quality of cloth. This restricted the powers of the traders and merchants.
    - The above step also prevented the Company weavers from dealing and negotiating with other buyers. The Company paid advances to the weavers to producecloth.
- In many villages, there were clashes between the weavers and the gomasthas. Earlier, the supply merchants were closely related to the weavers and looked after their needs at the time of financial crises. The gomasthas however had no social relationship with the weavers, and hence, they acted arrogantly and were even accompanied by the police and punished the weavers for the delay in work.
- As a result, many villagers left their villages and fled to other villages and set up loomsthere.

Problems faced by the Indian weavers in the 19th century

- When the textile industries in England began to produce cloth, need was felt for imposing import duties on foreign cloth which entered its markets. Thus, various import duties were levied on Indian cloth also. As a result, the Indian weaverssuffered.

- The English companies in order to sell their goods persuaded the British Government to remove all import duties on English cloth. The English machine-made cloth now entered the Indian markets. Because these cloths were cheap, the condition of weavers in India became worse as their export market collapsed and the local market was flooded with cheap British cloth.
- In the 1860s, the weavers faced another problem. They were not able to procure cotton of good quality as during the American Civil War, the Government exported much of the good quality Indian cotton to Britain.

Factories in India

By the mid-nineteenth century, factories began to be established in India. The first cotton mill in Bombay began production in 1856. The first jute mill was set up in 1855. In 1974, the first spinning and weaving mill was established in Madras.

In the eighteenth century, many Indian industrialists were profited by India's opium trade with China.

Dwarkanath Tagore rose to fame after he became a major player in India's trade with China.

Parsis such as Dinshaw Petit and J. N. Tata became rich because of exports to China and export of raw cotton to Britain. Later, they built huge industrial empires in India.

Seth Hukumchand and Shiv Narayan Birla (grandfather of G. D. Birla) also profited from trade with China.

Most of the industrialists had only limited opportunities for carrying out trade in India because of the monopoly of the English business houses in India. Till the First World War, European Managing Agencies in fact controlled a large sector of Indian industries. They usually had to engage in supplying raw materials to Britain. While Indian financiers often provided capital to European agencies, the latter made all investments and took business decisions.



Dwarkanath Tagore



Jamsethji Tata

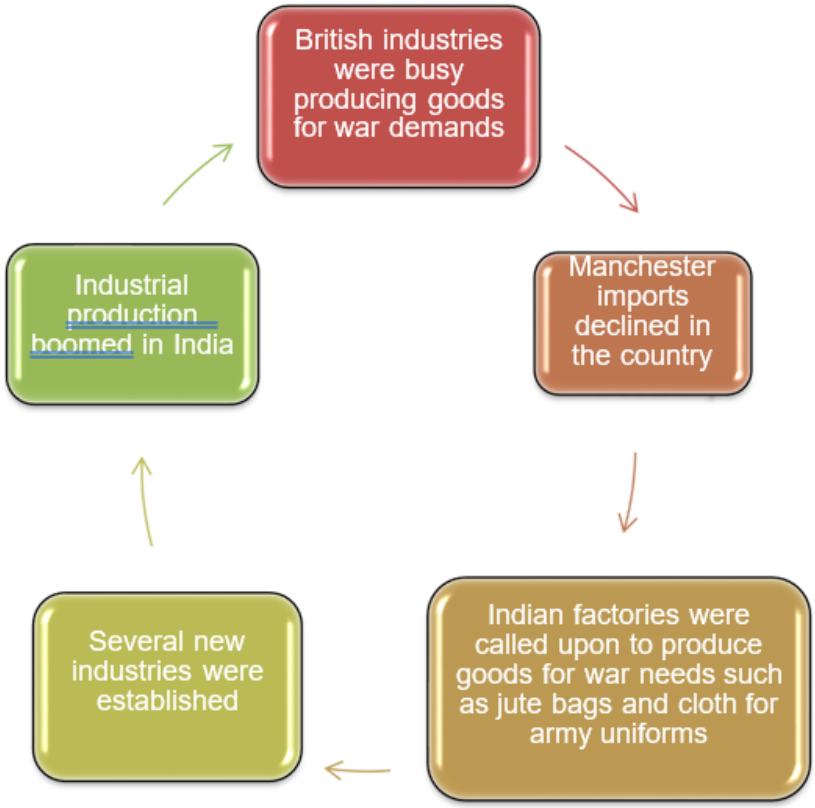
Workers in India

- Many farmers, artisans and peasants who were not able to find work in villages migrated to industrial cities in search of job opportunities. In 1911, more than half of the workers in the Bombay cotton industries came from the district of Ratnagiri.
- Most of the mill workers returned to their villages during the period of harvests.
- Later, many workers from the United Provinces (roughly present Uttar Pradesh) travelled great distances to Bombay and Calcutta in search of employment opportunities.
- However, getting jobs was always difficult. The companies employed a jobber to recruit the workers. Thus, the jobber became an influential person. At times, jobber began to demand money from workers in lieu for providing jobs to them.

Industrial Growth in India

- Many European agencies traded in plantations, mining businesses and export of raw materials (indigo, jute and cotton) to Europe.
- Indian businessmen avoided competing with Manchester goods which flooded the Indian markets.
- The beginning of the Swadeshi and Boycott movements gave a huge impetus to Indian industries. Because the export of Indian yarn to China declined, the industries began to manufacture cloth in India.

During the First World War, when British mills began to manufacture war materials and the exports from Manchester declined, the Indian industries flourished as they had vast home markets to supply their goods.



Further, the Indian industries supplied jute bags, cloth for army uniforms, tents, leather boots and many other items to the war front. The industrial production in India boomed during the war period.

Small Scale Industries

- More than half of the industries in 1911 were located in Bombay and Calcutta. There were small- scale production units, workshops and household units which were functioning all over the country.
- In the twentieth century, the handloom production expanded because of the following reasons:
  - Weavers used new technology for weaving clothes. Many weavers were using looms with the fly shuttle which increased a worker's productivity. Many other technological innovations also helped the weavers to compete with the mill produce.
  - Weavers manufactured both coarse and fine cloth. While the coarse cloth was bought by the poor, the fine cloth was bought by the rich. The sale of fine cloth such as Benarasi sarees did not decline even during famines as the rich could still afford to buy these.
  - Mills also could not imitate special designs such as sarees with woven borders.
- Weavers continued to make cloth though they were not a prosperous class and they often lived hard lives.

Creating Markets for Goods

- Advertisements are an important tool for marketing and selling goods in the markets.
- Manchester cloth which came into the Indian markets had the label 'Made in Manchester'. This was to make consumers confident of the quality of the produce which they were purchasing.
- Labels also carried images which appealed to the people to buy the goods.

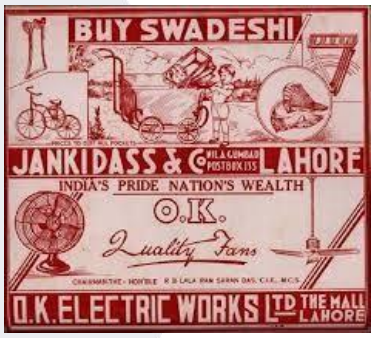
The images of Indian gods and goddesses were used by the manufacturers to sell products. This was done to give divine approval to goods being sold.



By the late nineteenth century, many manufacturers were printing calendars to increase the popularity of their products. Besides the images of the advertised products, these calendars had images of gods, important and renowned personalities and royal figures. They were hung in houses, offices and shops.

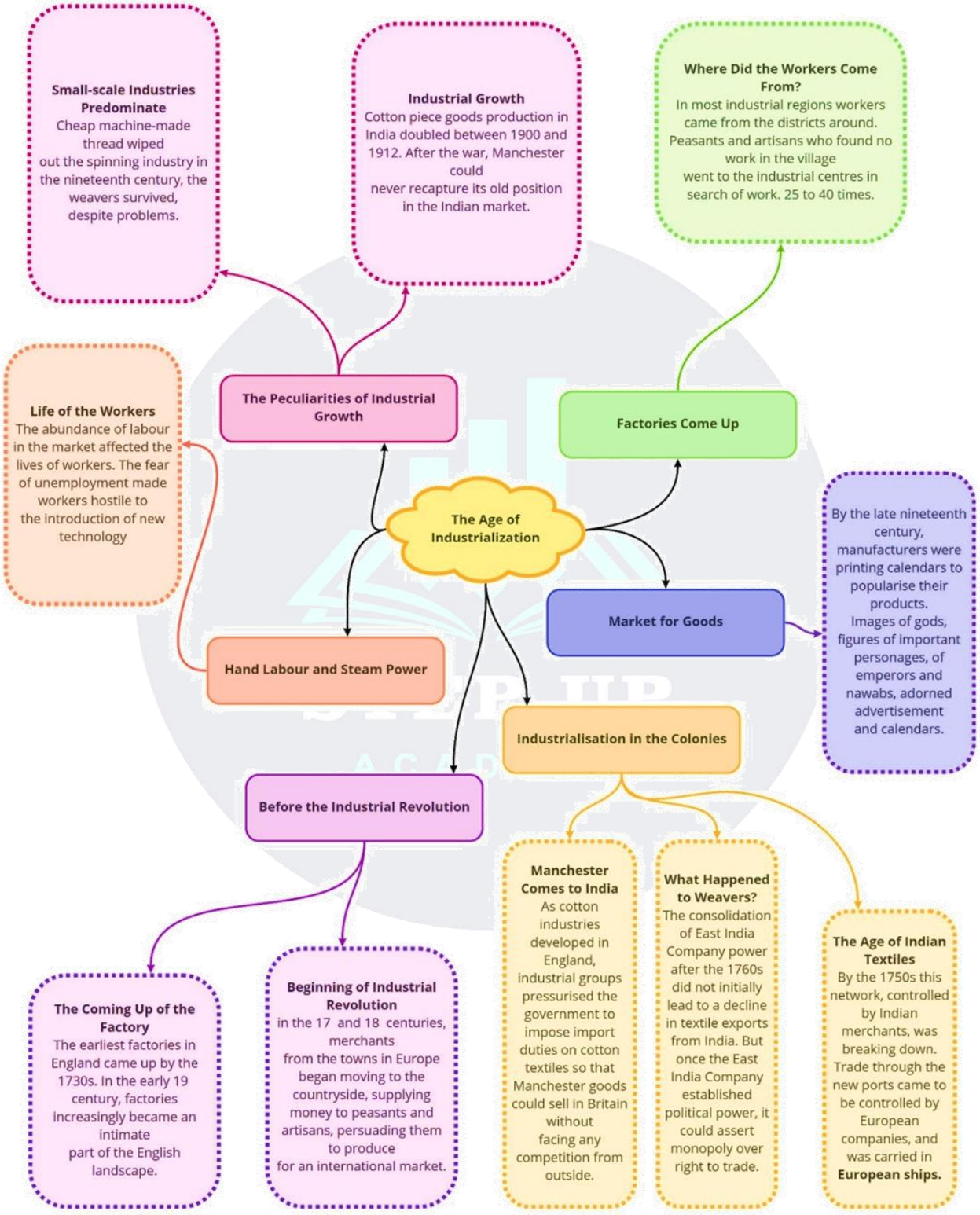
- Advertisements gradually became a tool for selling Indian products and began to carry nationalistic messages such as 'Use Swadeshi goods'.

Indian Manufacturers advertised their products by giving a nationalist message. Advertisements became a vehicle of nationalist message of Swadeshi.



At the end we can say that in the 19th century, the era of industrialisation was based on advanced technological developments and establishment of several industries. However, small scale and handloom industries were still an important part of this period.

Class : 10th History
Chapter-4 : The Age of Industrialization



Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Who set up the first Indian Jute Mill in Calcutta?
   (a) G.D. Birla
   (b) Seth Hukumchand
   (c) Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata
   (d) Dwarkanath Tagore
2. A fuller's job is to
   (a) pick up wool
   (b) sort wool according to its fibre
   (c) gather cloth by pleating
   (d) carry wool to the spinner
3. Which of the following countries faced labour shortage in the nineteenth century?
   (a) America
   (b) Britain
   (c) France
   (d) Germany
4. The ports of Surat and Hoogly decayed in the
   (a) sixteenth century
   (b) seventeenth century
   (c) eighteenth century
   (d) nineteenth century
5. The first cotton mill in India was established in
   (a) Madras
   (b) Calcutta
   (c) Gujarat
   (d) Bombay
6. Dwarkanath Tagore was alan
   (a) philanthropist
   (b) educationist
   (c) social reformer
   (d) industrialist
7. Why did the weavers suffer from a problem of raw cotton?
   (a) The cotton crop perished
   (b) Raw cotton exports increased
   (c) Local markets shrank
   (d) Export market collapsed
8. In Victorian Britain the upper classes-aristocratic class and bourgeoisie preferred handmade goods because:
   (a) they were made from imported material.
   (b) the handmade goods came to symbolize refinement and class.
   (c) they were better finished.
   (d) only upper class could afford the expensive items.
9. By late 19th century why did the British manufacturers print calendars for advertisements?
   (a) Indian people were fond of using calendars in their houses.
   (b) Unlike newspapers and magazines, calendars were used even by people who did not know how to read or write.
   (c) It was cheaper to advertise goods through calendars.
   (d) It used to add beauty to the room.
10. Which of the following innovations helped the weavers in increasing productivity and compete with mill sector?
    (a) Spining jenny
    (b) Fly shuttle
    (c) Cotton Gin
    (d) Roller
11. What do you mean by 'Gomastha'?
    (a) An officer of the Company who acted as a go-between the Company and Indian traders
    (b) An officer of the East India Company who looked after the textile trade
    (c) A paid servant of the Company who supervised weavers, collected supplies and examined the quality of the cloth
    (d) None of these
12. According to historians, who was the typical worker in the mid-nineteenth century?
    (a) Craftsperson and labourer
    (b) Machine operator
    (c) Unskilled labour
    (d) None of these

13. What do you mean by Carding?
    (a) In spinning
    (b) In weaving
    (c) In which cotton or wool fibres are prepared for spinning
    (d) In which finishing of cloth is done
14. Who was the Staplers and Fullers?
    (a) Gathers cloth by pleating
    (b) Sorts wool according to its fibre
    (c) Both a and b
    (d) None of these
15. What was the reason behind new merchants could not set up business in the towns in Europe?
    (a) The rules became barrier
    (b) Scarcity of product to start any business
    (c) The powerful trade guilds and urban crafts made it difficult
    (d) None of these

Very Short Questions:

1. What was the title of the picture on the cover page of music book published by E.T. Pauli, a popular music publisher ?
2. State any one reason why during the phase of proto-industrialisation the merchants could not expand production within towns ?
3. In the seventeenth and eighteenth century in the countryside why the peasants readily agreed to work for the merchants ? State any one reason.
4. Who was a stapler ?
5. Who is a Fuller ?
6. What is Carding ?
7. What was the first symbol of new era in England?
8. By whom the cotton mill was created ?
9. Why did the technological changes occur slowly in Britain ? Give one reason.
10. Who produced the steam engine ? Who improved it ?

Short Questions:

1. How did the East India Company ensure a regular supply of goods for export ? Mention any two steps taken by the company.
2. Who was 'sepoy' ?
3. Mention any one reason that led to clashes between weavers and gomasthas.
4. What did Henry Patullo, a company official, say about Indian textiles ?
5. In India by 1850s and in subsequent years as the imports of cotton goods increased, which two problems were faced by th6 weavers in India ?
6. When and where was the first cotton mill established in India ?
7. Which mill was started in Kanpur in the 1860s ?
8. Name a few leading early Indian entrepreneurs of India in the 19th century.
9. Name any two European Managing Agencies which till the First World War controlled a large sector of Indian industries.
10. Generally from where did the workers come from to work in factories ?

Long Questions:

1. What does publisher E.T. Pauli want to convey by the picture 'Dawn of the Century' on the cover page of his music book ?
2. What was proto-industrialisation ? Explain the importance of proto-industrialisation.
3. In the seventeenth century Europe, the peasants and artisans in the country¬side readily agreed to work for merchants. Explain.
4. How did the cotton factories become an intimate part of English landscape in the early 19th century ?
5. Describe the main features of the pace of industrial change in Britain in the nineteenth century.

Assertion Reason Questions:

1. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:
    (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of the assertion
    (b) Both A and R are true, and R is not the correct explanation of the assertion
    (c) A is true but R is false
    (d) A is False but R is true

    Assertion (A): In the 20th century, handloom cloth production expanded steadily.

    Reason (R): This was partly because of technological changes

2. **Directions: -** In the following questions, the Assertions (A) and Reason(s) (R) have been put forward. Read both statements carefully and choose the correct answer from the below:

   (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of the assertion

   (b) Both A and R are true, and R is not the correct explanation of the assertion

   (c) A is true but R is false

   (d) A is False but R is true

   Assertion (A): In most industrial regions, workers came from the districts around.

   Reason (R): Peasants and Artisans who found no work in the village went to the industrial centres in search of work

Case Study Questions:

1. Will Thorne is one of those who went in search of seasonal work, loading bricks, and doing odd jobs. He describes how jobseekers walked to London in search of work: 'I had always wanted to go to London, and my desire … as stimulated by letters from an old workmate … who was now working at the Old Kent Road Gas Works … I finally decided to go … in November 1881. With two friends I started out to walk the journey, filled with the hope that we would be able to obtain employment, when we get there, with the kind assistance of my friend … we had little money when we started, not enough to pay for our food and lodgings each night until we arrived in London. Some days we walked as much as twenty miles and other days less. Our money was gone at the end of the third day … For two nights we slept out – once under a haystack and once in an old farm shed … On arrival in London, we tried to find … my friend … but … were unsuccessful. Our money was gone, so there was nothing for us to do but to walk around until late at night and try to find someplace to sleep. We found an old building and slept in it that night. The next day, Sunday, late in the afternoon, we got to the Old Kent Gas Works and applied for work. To my great surprise, the man we had been looking for was working at the time. He spoke to the foreman, and I was given a job.

   i. What was the status of human labour in Britain? Select the best suitable option from the following with reference to the context.

      (a) There was limited number of workers.

      (b) There was no shortage of labour.

      (c) Labour had to be imported.

      (d) There was uneven distribution of labour.

   ii. What kinds of production demanded seasonal labour? Identify the best suitable option from the following.

      (a) Steel and iron

      (b) Cotton and textiles

      (c) Handmade goods

      (d) Bookbinders and printers

   iii. What was the possibility of getting a job with abundance of labour in cities such as London? With reference to the above context, infer the appropriate option.

      (a) Jobs were given on the basis of merit system.

      (b) Jobs were given who were registered with a particular factory.

      (c) A job depended on existing networks of friendship and kin relations in a factory.

      (d) All of the above

   iv. What were the problems workers faced during the Industrialisation? Identify the best suitable option from the following.

      (a) Migration from one place to another in search of suitable job.

      (b) Spending nights under bridges or in night shelters.

      (c) Preferences given to the unskilled labour in the industries.

      (d) Both (a) and (b)

   v. Which of the following aspect is correct regarding the given source? Identify the correct option

      (a) It is extracted from 'Comers and Goers'.

      (b) It is quoted by Raphael Samuel.

      (c) It shows the realities of the Victorian City.

      (d) All of the above

ANSWER KEY

MCQ:

1. **Answer**: (b) Seth Hukumchand
2. **Answer**: (c) gather cloth by pleating
3. **Answer**: (a) America
4. **Answer**: (b) seventeenth century
5. **Answer**: (b) Calcutta
6. **Answer**: (d) industrialist
7. **Answer**: (b) Raw cotton exports increased
8. **Answer**: (b) the handmade goods came to symbolize refinement and class.
9. **Answer**: (b) Unlike newspapers and magazines, calendars were used even by people who did not know how to read or write.
10. **Answer**: (b) Fly shuttle
11. **Answer**: (c) A paid servant of the Company who supervised weavers, collected supplies and examined the quality of the cloth.
12. **Answer**: (a) Craftsperson and labourer
13. **Answer**: (c) In which cotton or wool fibres are prepared for spinning
14. **Answer**: (c) Both a and b
15. **Answer**: c. The powerful trade guilds and urban crafts made it difficult

Very Short Answer:

1. **Answer:** The title was 'Dawn of the Century'.
2. **Answer:** In towns urban crafts and trade guilds were very powerful. They trained crafts people, maintained control over production, regulated competition and prices, and restricted the entry of new people into the trade.
3. **Answer:** Many peasants had small plots of land which could not provide work for all members of the household.
4. **Answer:** A person who 'staples' or sorts wool according to its fibre.
5. **Answer:** A person who 'fulls' or gathers cloth by pleating.
6. **Answer:** The process in which fibres, such as cotton or wool, are prepared prior to spinning.
7. **Answer:** Cotton.
8. **Answer:** Richard Arkwright.
9. **Answer:** Technological changes occurred slowly in Britain because it was expensive and merchants and industrialists were cautious about using it.
10. **Answer:** The steam engine was produced by Newcomen. It was improved by James Watt.

Short Answer:

1. **Answer:**
   i. It appointed a paid servant called the gomastha to supervise weavers, collect supplies and examine the quality of cloth.
   ii. Those weavers who had taken advances from the Company could not take cloth to any other trader.
2. **Answer:** This was how the British pronounced the word Sipahi, meaning an Indian soldier in the service of the British.
3. **Answer:** The gomasthas were outsiders, with no long-term social link with the village. They acted arrogantly, marched into villages with sepoys and peons, and punished weavers for delays in supply – often beating and flogging them.
4. **Answer:** Henry Patullo, a company official said that the demand for Indian textiles could never reduce, since no other nation produced goods of the same quality.
5. **Answer:**
   i. Their export market collapsed.
   ii. The local market shrank due to import of Manchester goods.
6. **Answer:** The first cotton mill came up in Bombay in 1854.
7. **Answer:** Elgin Mill.
8. **Answer:**
   i. Dwarkanath Tagore
   ii. Dinshaw Petit
   iii. Jamsetjee Nusserwanjee Tata
   iv. Seth Hukumchand.
9. **Answer:**
   i. Bird Heiglers and Co.
   ii. Jardine Skinner and Co.

10. **Answer:** In most industrial regions workers came from the districts around e.g., the mills of Kanpur got most of their textile workers from the villages within the district of Kanpur.

Long Answer:

1. **Answer:** Publisher E.T. Pauli wants to convey the ideas as mentioned below :
   i. Glorification of machines and technology.
   ii. At the center of the picture is a goddess-like figure, the angel of progress, bearing the flag of the new century. She is gently perched on a wheel with wings, symbolising time.
   iii. Her (Goddess) flight is taking her into the future. Floating about behind her, are the signs of progress – railway, camera, machines, printing press and factory.

   This figure thus gives us a triumphant account of the modern world that is associated with rapid technological change and innovations, machines, factories, railways and steam ships and computers.

2. **Answer:**
   (a) Proto-industrialisation – This was the early phase of industrialisation in Europe and England when there was large-scale industrial production for an international market. This was not based on factories. Many historians refer to this phase of industrialisation as proto¬industrialisation.
   (b) The features of proto-industrialisation were as mentioned below :
      i. It was a decentralised system of production. It was part of a network of commercial exchanges.
      ii. Control of production was in the hand of merchants.
      iii. Goods were produced by a vast number of producers working in their family farms, not in factories.
      iv. Whole of the family was involved. It allowed peasants a fuller use of their family labour resources.
      v. At each stage of production – spinning, dying etc., 20 to 25 workers were employed by each merchant. This meant that each clothier was controlling hundreds of workers.

   By working for the merchants, workers could remain in the countryside and continue to cultivate their small plots. Income from proto-industrial production supplemented their income from cultivation.

3. **Answer:**
   i. In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, merchants from the towns in Europe began moving to the countryside, supplying money to peasants and artisans, persuading them to produce for an international market. With the expansion of world trade and the acquisition of ? colonies in different parts of the world, the demand for goods began growing. In the countryside poor peasants and artisans readily agreed to work for the merchants due to the reasons as mentioned below :
   ii. This was a time when open fields were disappearing and commons were being enclosed.
   iii. Poor peasants and cottagers who had earlier depended on common lands for their survival, gathering their firewood, berries, vegetables, hay and straw, had to now look for alternative sources of income.
   iv. Many had tiny plots of land which could not provide work for all members of the household.

   In view of the above factors when merchants came around and offered advances to produce goods for them, peasants and artisans readily agreed to work for them.

4. **Answer:** The causes for increase in the import of raw cotton were as given below :
   i. In the late eighteenth century in England a number of cotton factories had been set up.

   It was the first symbol of new era of cotton. Its production boomed in the late nineteenth century. In 1760 Britain was importing 2.5 million pounds of raw cotton to feed its cotton industry. By 1787 this import soared to 22 million pounds.
   ii. There were number of inventions in production process i.e., carding, twisting and spinning. These changes or inventions enabled each worker to produce more. It also made possible to produce more stronger threads and yarn.

iii. Creation of cotton mill : Till then the cloth production was being done within households. Later Richard Arkwright created the cotton mill. Earlier cloth production was carried in the countryside within village households. But now all the processes i.e., spinning, weaving and dying etc., could be done in a mill under one roof and management.

iv. This allowed a more careful supervision over the production process, a watch over quality, and the regulation of labour.

As a result of above, in the early nineteenth century, factories increasingly became an integral part of the English landscape. New mills were visible everywhere. These were result of the new technology. The contemporaries were dazzled. They concentrated their attention on the mills, almost forgetting the by lanes and the workshops where production still continued.

5. **Answer:** The main features of the pace of industrial change were as mentioned below:

i. The most dynamic industries in Britain were clearly cotton and metals.

ii. Growing at a rapid pace, cotton was the leading sector in the first phase of industrialisation up to the 1840s.

iii. After cotton, the iron and steel industry led the way because with the expansion of railways, the demand for iron and steel increased rapidly. By 1873 Britain was exporting iron and steel worth about 77 million double the value of its cotton export.

iv. The new industries could not easily displace traditional industries.

v. (a) Ordinary and small innovations were the basis of growth in many non-mechanised sectors such as food processing, building, pottery glass work, tanning, furniture making and production of implements.

vi. Technology changes occurred slowly as these were expensive and their repair was too costly

Assertion Reason Answer:

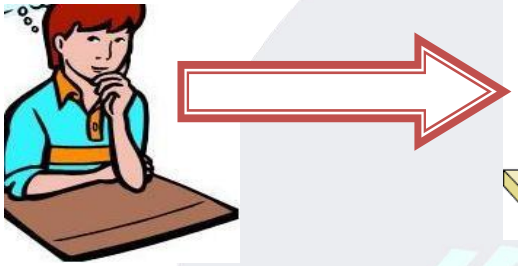
1. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of the assertion.
2. (a) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of the assertion.

Case Study Answer:

1. i. (b) There was no shortage of labour.
   ii. (d) Bookbinders and printers
   iii. (c) A job depended on existing networks of friendship and kin relations in a factory.
   iv. (d) Both (a) and (b)
   v. (d) All of the above

Print Culture and the Modern World 5

In which country did the print technology first develop?



The earliest kinds of print technology first developed in China, Japan and Korea. It was the system of hand printing. Later, wooden blocks were used in China for the purpose of printing.

Printing Technology

The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea. This was a system of hand printing.

Printing in China

- From AD 594 onwards, books in China were printed by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.
- As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese 'accordion book' was folded and stitched at the side. Superbly skilled craftsmen could duplicate, with remarkable accuracy, the beauty of calligraphy.
- The imperial state in China was, for a very long time, the major producer of printed material because the state officials in imperial China were selected through civil service examinations hence textbooks for exam preparations were printed in large numbers.

  Development of urban culture in China also led to a sharp increase in the sale of printing books with people taking to the habit of reading during their leisure time.

  In the late nineteenth century, the latest techniques of printing came to China from the western countries and Shanghai became a new centre of print culture.



Woodblocks were used in China for printing

Printing in Japan

- In Japan, handprint technology was introduced by the Buddhist missionaries of China around 768-770 CE.
- The **Buddhist Diamond Sutra** was the oldest Japanese book which was printed in AD 868.
- Later, pictures were printed on paper money, playing cards and on textiles. During the mediaeval period, books were regularly published by writers and poets.

- During the late eighteenth century, in Edo present-day Tokyo, with the blooming urban culture, many paintings involving artists, courtesans, court culture and tea house gatherings came to be depicted. There were also books on instruments, famous places, tea ceremonies, flower arrangements and cooking.
- An ukiyo was a form of art which developed in Japan. It dealt with the depiction of common and simple human expression. Kitagawa Utamaro was known for his contributions to'ukiyo'.



A page from the Diamond Sutra

Printing in Korea

Belonging to the mid-13th century, printing woodblocks of The Tripitaka Koreana are a Korean collection of Buddhist scriptures. They were engraved on about 80,000 woodblocks.



Tripitaka Koreana

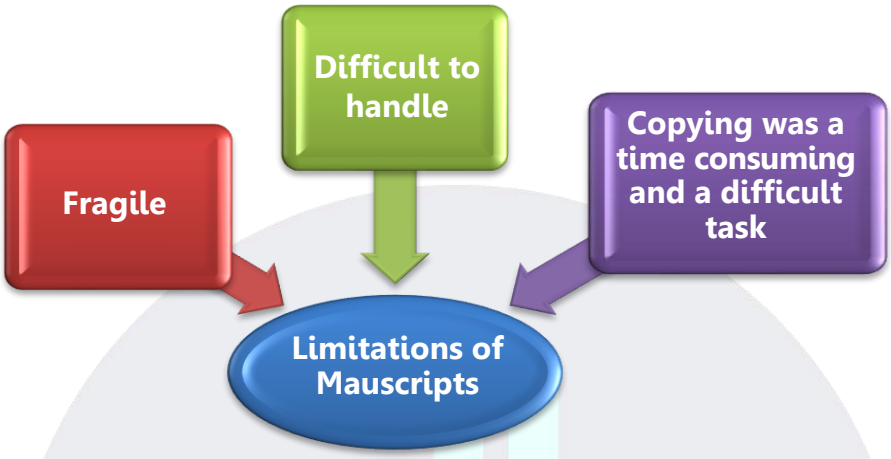


Jikji

The *Jikji* of Korea is among the world's oldest existing books printed with movable metal type. It contains the essential features of Zen Buddhism. About 150 monks of India, China and Korea are mentioned in the book. It was printed in late 14th century. While the first volume ofthe book is unavailable, the second one is availablein the National Library of France. This work marked an important technical change in the print culture. That is why it was inscribed on the UNESCO Memory of the World Register in 2001.

Printing in Europe

- Chinese paper reached Europe through the Silk Route during the eleventh century. This led to the production of manuscripts.
- In 1295, Marco Polo brought the technology of woodblock printing to Italy from China. This technology then spread to the other parts of Europe. Merchants and students began to use printing material on a large scale.
- Gradually, the demand for books increased and booksellers in Europe began to export printed books in large numbers.



- However, handwritten manuscripts and woodblock technology were not enough to meet the growing demands of the people.

Gutenberg & the Printing Press

- **Johann Gutenberg** developed the first printing press in the 1430s which gradually changed printing technology in Europe. The **Bible** was the first book which was printed by him. About 180 copies were printed in 2 yrs.
- Printing presses were set up in several parts of the world by 1550, and the production of printed books increased tremendously.
- The shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the **Print Revolution**.



Johann Gutenberg



- The earliest printed books resembled to the manuscript in appearance and layout
- The metal letters imitated ornamental handwritten styles
- Borders of the paper were illuminated by hand
- Illustrations were painted

Impact of the Print Revolution

- The printing revolution minimised the time taken to produce books. As a result, the European markets were flooded with books.
- A new reading public emerged as a result of the printing revolution in Europe. They read sacred texts, ballads and folktales.
- Access to books created a new culture of reading. Earlier, reading was restricted to the elites. Common people lived in a world of oral culture. They heard sacred texts read out, ballads recited, and folk tales narrated. Knowledge was transferred orally.
- Many books were also published with beautiful pictures, and illiterate people could now understand folktales with the help of pictures.
- Religious debates and the fear of print.
- Books introduced a world of debate and discussion. Those people who disagreed with the Church and the Pope could now express their ideas in the book and forced the people to think on rational lines.
- Many conservatives however did not welcome so many printed books into the markets. According to them, this could spread rebellious ideas among the people. This proved true when Martin Luther King criticised the corrupt practices of the Roman Catholic Church



Martin Luther King

- **Martin Luther King** was a reformer.
- He was against the corrupt practices in the Church such as the sale of indulgences.
- In 1517, he wrote *Ninety-Five Theses* criticising several practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.
- He pasted a printed copy on the door of the Church in Wittenberg in Germany. Luther's writings were printed in large numbers and were widely read.
- This led to the beginning of the Reformation Movement.

Print and Dissent

- Inspired by printed materials and books, people began to question the existence of the dogmas in religion and began to interpret religion in their own ways.
- In the sixteenth century, Menocchio, a miller in Italy, after reading books which were available in his locality formulated a view of God and his creation which was very different from the ideas preached by the Roman Catholic Church.
- He was executed by the Church and several bans were imposed on publishers and booksellers. Thereafter, an index of prohibited books was maintained by the Church.

The Reading Mania

- Literacy rates went up in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, and Churches played an important role in carrying literature to the common masses such as peasants and artisans.
- As literacy rates went up and schools came to be established, reading mania spread to many countries of Europe.

- Almanacs, calendars, pocketbooks, ballads and folktales began to be read. Pedlars were employed by booksellers to carry books to far-off villages to sell them.
- There were almanacs or ritual calendars, along with ballads and folktales. But other forms of reading matter, largely for entertainment, began to reach ordinary readers as well. In England, penny chapbooks were carried by petty pedlars known as chapmen, and sold for a penny, so that even the poor could buy them. In France, were the "Biliotheque Bleue", which were low-priced small books printed on poor quality paper, and bound in cheap blue covers. Then there were the romances, printed on four to six pages, and the more substantial 'histories' which were stories about the past. Books were of various sizes, serving many different purposes and interests.
- Many periodicals began to be published in Europe which also provided information to the people on wars and trade and developments taking place in other parts ofEurope.
- People could now also read about the ideas of scientists and philosophers. Many scientific texts were translated into common and local languages. The writings of thinkers such as Voltaire, Thomas Paine and Rousseau inspired the people to adopt new ideas. This also led to the birth of the idea of revolution in the hearts of the Europeans.

Threat to Despotism

By the mid-eighteenth century, there was a common conviction that books were a means of spreading progress and enlightenment. Many believed that books could change the world, liberate society from despotism and tyranny, and herald a time when reason and intellect would rule.

It was because of the power of the press, Louis Sebastian Mercier said, "Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world! Tremble before the virtual writer".

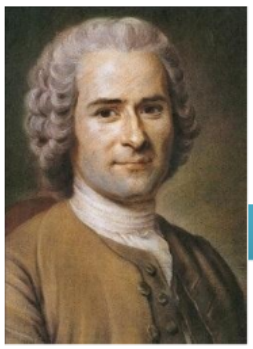


After reading books and magazines, common people of Europe began to question the powers exercised by the kings and the nobles

Print Culture and the French Revolution

According to many historians, widely available printed materials and books created the conditions for the outbreak of the French Revolution. Three arguments were put forward in this case:

- The printed books popularised the ideas of the thinkers which led to an era of Enlightenment. People now believed in rationalism and humanism. They criticised the illogical and corrupt practices of the Church.
- Because books inspired new ideas, various debates and discussions took place in society and new ideas of social revolution came into existence.
- By the 1780s, many new books and literature mocked the royalty and criticised their unethical actions. Questions were also raised about the social orders which favoured royal and aristocratic families.



Jean Jacques Rousseau, one of the prominent French philosophers

- Printed books popularised the ideas of thinkers leading to an era of Enlightenment.
- People now believed in rationalism and humanism.
- They criticised the illogical and corrupt practices of the Church and despotism and tyranny of the kings Ideas of Voltaire and Rousseau began to be read widely

The Reading Class in the Nineteenth Century

- In many European countries, primary education became compulsory. Thus, children became an important category of readers. Many school textbooks were published. Many folk stories were also published for children.
- Women emerged as another category of readers. Many penny magazines were published for women containing guidelines on good behaviour and housekeeping.
- Some important women novelists in this period were the Bronte sisters, Jane Austin and George Eliot. They all depicted women with a strong personality, determination and the power to think and decide.
- Many lending libraries existed during this period. They were instrumental in educating the working and white-collared class. Many workers even wrote political tracts and autobiographies.

  Later, many innovations were made in the methods of printing books. By the late eighteenth century, the press began to be made out of metal. Its place was then taken by the power-driven cylindrical press. Then the electricity-operated printing presses increased production. Printers and publishers always looked for new ways to market their products. Cheap paperback editions came into the market during the economic depression of 1939.

Printing Comes to India



- During the ancient period in India, manuscripts were handwritten in Sanskrit, Persian, Arabic and vernacular languages. They were then copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper. Manuscripts were published well into the late nineteenth century.
- These manuscripts were not widely used as they were fragile, expensive and had to be handled carefully.
- The Portuguese missionaries of Goa introduced the printing press in India in the later half of the seventeenth century.
- About 50 books in Konkani and Kanara languages were published by Jesuit priests. This was followed by the publication of Malayalam and Tamil texts.
- In 1780, James Augustus Hickory began the publication of the English weekly magazine Bengal Gazette. Because he published a lot of gossip about the Company officials in India, the then Governor General, Warren Hastings persecuted Hickey and encouraged the sanctioning of all news items that could damage the image of the colonial government.
- Bengal Gazette was the first weekly to be published by an Indian—Gangadhar Bhattacharya.

Religious Reforms and Public Debates

- Publication of various newspapers and magazines resulted in many public debates and discussions which were mostly centred on religious and social issues.
- Raja Ram Mohan Roy began the publication of 'Sambad Kaumud'i in 1821. In this paper, he criticised the orthodox Hindu practices.
- Two new Persian newspapers—'Jam-i-Jahan Nama' and 'Shamsul Akhbar'—began to be published. At the same time, 'The Bombay Samachar' began to be published in Gujarati.
- Many *ulemas* published translations of the Muslim Holy Scriptures. They also published thousands of 'fatwas' asking the Muslims to follow strict Islamic practices.
  - Many Hindi religious texts were also published in vernacular anguages during this time. Ramcharitmanas written by Tulsidas was published in Calcutta in 1810.
- Newspapers connected communities and people in different parts of India. It made people aware of their surroundings and informed them of events taking place in the other parts of the country, thus laying a foundation for the creation of pan-Indian identities.

New Forms of Publications

- Many new forms of writing came into circulation in India. Short stories, lyrics and essays on political and cultural lives were being published.
- The printing press also enabled the reproduction of visual images. Paintings of Raja Ravi Varma were circulated widely.
- Cheap prints and calendars could even be bought by the poor section of society. Several religious and social messages were propagated with the help of these media.
- By the 1870s, we find the publication of various cartoons and caricatures in newspapers. While some cartoons ridiculed Indians imitating the western style of dressing, the imperial cartoons criticised the nationalist.



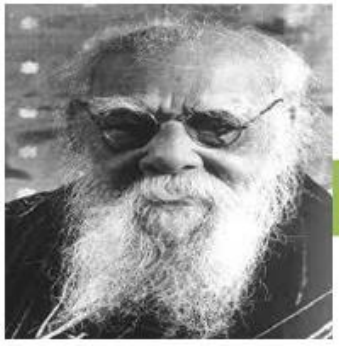
Raja Ravi Verman was a notable painter who painted several mythological paintings

Women and Print

- Many middle class women began to read during this time. While some read openly, some read secretly. Many journals written by women were published. They advocated the need of women to be educated.
- Many conservative families however did not allow their women to read and write. Such writers read and wrote secretly. Rashsundari Debi secretly wrote 'Amar Jiban' in Bengali which became the first autobiography written by an Indian woman.
- Kailashbashini Debi, a Bengali woman, wrote about the experiences of women in day-to-daylives.
- In the 1880s, Tarabai Shinde and Pandita Ramabai wrote about the poor and miserable conditions of high caste Hindu widows in Indian society.
- Many Hindi books in the twentieth century became very popular. They dealt with a variety of subjects such as education of women, religious and social issues, and political movements.
- Several books were also published in Punjabi, Tamil and Bengali.

Poor and the Print

- Books became very cheap in the twentieth century and began to be sold on the streets. Public libraries were also set up for the people to read books.
- During this time, many books began to be written on the issue of caste discrimination. Jyotirao Phule, a noted reformer, criticised the caste system in his book Gulamgiri.
- B. R. Ambedkar and E. V. Ramaswamy Naicker (Periyar) protested against the caste discrimination and wrote about it in newspapers and books.



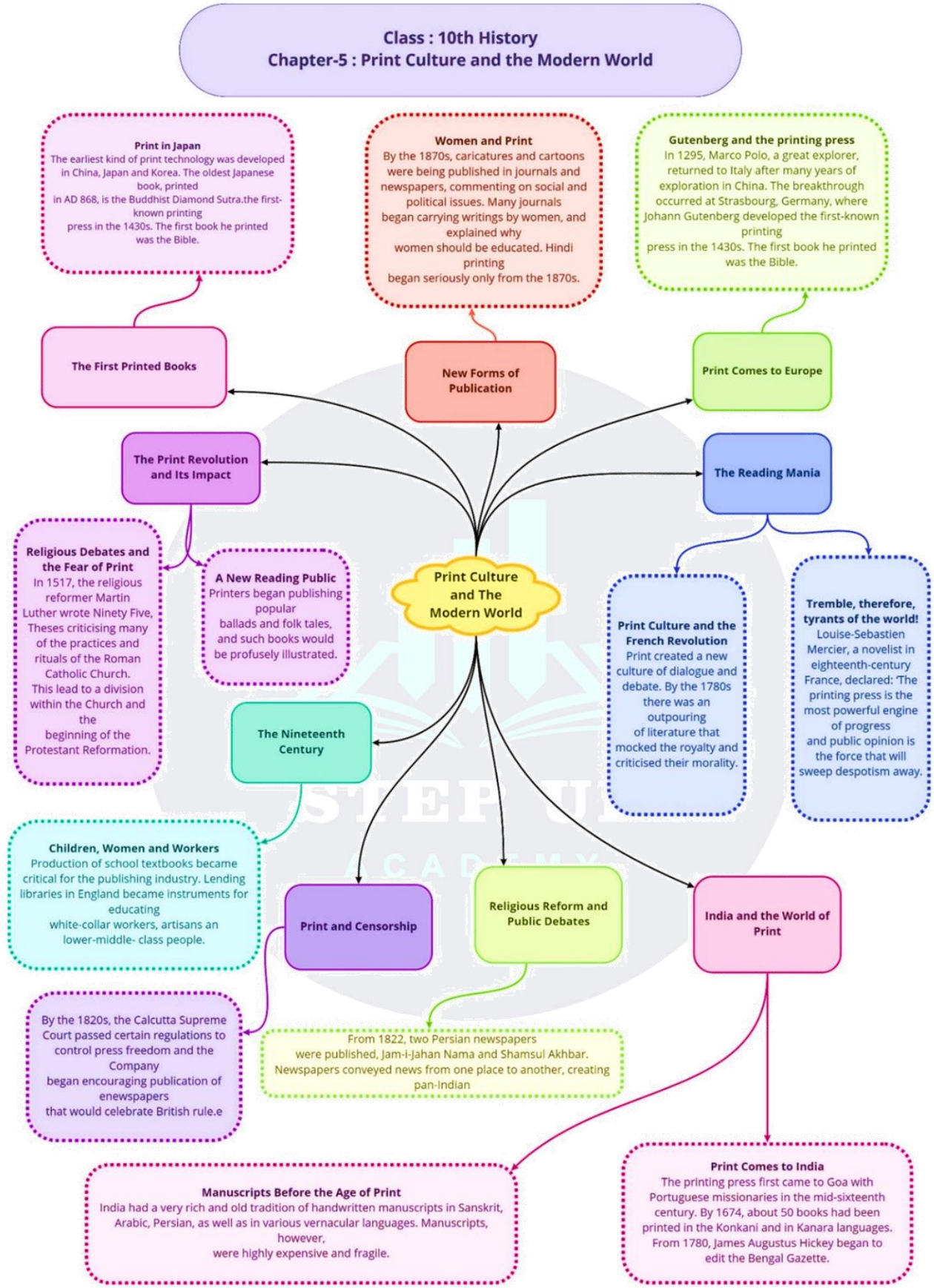
V. Ramaswamy Naicker popularly known as 'Periyar' criticised the caste system through his writings

- The workers were overworked at this time. Kashibaba, a mill worker from Kanpur, published 'Chhote Aur Bade Ka Sawal' in 1938 to show links in caste and class exploitation inindustries.
- The poems of another Kanpur millworker, who wrote under the name of Sudarshan Chakr between 1935 and 1955, were brought together and published in a collection called 'Sacchi Kavitayan'.
- In the 1930s, the cotton workers of Bangalore set up libraries to educate themselves.
- In Bengal, an entire area in central Calcutta – the Battala – was devoted to the printing of popular books. Wide varieties of books and publications were available here. Pedlars took the Battala publications to homes, enabling women to read them in their leisuretime.

Print and Censorship

- In the beginning, the colonial government was more interested in controlling printed material directed against Englishmen in India who were critical of Company's misrule and disliked the actions of particular Company officers. The Company was worried that such criticisms might be used by its critics in England to attack its trade monopoly in India.
- In 1820s, the Calcutta Supreme Court passed regulations to control press freedom. Later, Thomas Macaulay formed new rules to restore the earlier freedom of press.
- After the revolt of 1857. The colonial attitude towards was not eager to put censorship on the press, but as the tide of the nationalist movement grew, they began to take measures for controlling the press.
- After the revolt of 1857, the Englishmen were apprehensive of providing freedom to the nationalist printing press in India.
- The Vernacular Press Act was passed in 1878 which armed the Government with censorship rights. Any newspaper publishing seditious news was first warned. Its machinery was confiscated if it still persisted with seditious reporting.
- Despite of all these attempts, several nationalist newspapers began to rise in India. Attempts to curb these newspapers further sparked revolutionary activities. Bal Gangadhar Tilak was imprisoned for writing against the Government in his newspaper Kesari. This sparked protests all over India.

  Thus, the development of printing had far-reaching effects on political, social and economic lives of the people.


Class : 10th History
Chapter-5 : Print Culture and the Modern World
Print Culture and The Modern World
The First Printed Books
Print in Japan
The earliest kind of print technology was developed in China, Japan and Korea. The oldest Japanese book, printed in AD 868, is the Buddhist Diamond Sutra.the first-known printing press in the 1430s. The first book he printed was the Bible.
New Forms of Publication
Women and Print
By the 1870s, caricatures and cartoons were being published in journals and newspapers, commenting on social and political issues. Many journals began carrying writings by women, and explained why women should be educated. Hindi printing began seriously only from the 1870s.
Print Comes to Europe
Gutenberg and the printing press
In 1295, Marco Polo, a great explorer, returned to Italy after many years of exploration in China. The breakthrough occurred at Strasbourg, Germany, where Johann Gutenberg developed the first-known printing press in the 1430s. The first book he printed was the Bible.
The Print Revolution and Its Impact
Religious Debates and the Fear of Print
In 1517, the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five, Theses criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. This lead to a division within the Church and the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.
A New Reading Public
Printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales, and such books would be profusely illustrated.
The Reading Mania
Print Culture and the French Revolution
Print created a new culture of dialogue and debate. By the 1780s there was an outpouring of literature that mocked the royalty and criticised their morality.
Tremble, therefore, tyrants of the world!
Louise-Sebastien Mercier, a novelist in eighteenth-century France, declared: 'The printing press is the most powerful engine of progress and public opinion is the force that will sweep despotism away.
The Nineteenth Century
Children, Women and Workers
Production of school textbooks became critical for the publishing industry. Lending libraries in England became instruments for educating white-collar workers, artisans an lower-middle- class people.
Print and Censorship
By the 1820s, the Calcutta Supreme Court passed certain regulations to control press freedom and the Company began encouraging publication of enewspapers that would celebrate British rule.e
Religious Reform and Public Debates
From 1822, two Persian newspapers were published, Jam-i-Jahan Nama and Shamsul Akhbar. Newspapers conveyed news from one place to another, creating pan-Indian
India and the World of Print
Manuscripts Before the Age of Print
India had a very rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian, as well as in various vernacular languages. Manuscripts, however, were highly expensive and fragile.
Print Comes to India
The printing press first came to Goa with Portuguese missionaries in the mid-sixteenth century. By 1674, about 50 books had been printed in the Konkani and in Kanara languages. From 1780, James Augustus Hickey began to edit the Bengal Gazette.

Important Questions

Multiple Choice Questions-

1. Who was Marcopolo?
   (a) German scientist
   (b) English philosopher
   (c) Spanish explorer
   (d) Italian traveller/explorer
2. Who wrote about the injustices of the caste system in 'Gulamgiri'?
   (a) Raja Rammohan Roy
   (b) Jyotiba Phule
   (c) Balgangadhar Tilak
   (d) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay
3. Which of the following refers to print revolution?
   (a) Invention of printing press
   (b) Shift from hand printing to mechanical printing
   (c) Revolt of people against printed matters
   (d) Handwritten manuscripts for printed books
4. Aim of Protestant Reformation was to:
   (a) reform religion
   (b) reform the Catholic church
   (c) reform Jewish religion
   (d) to protest against all reform
5. Why was James Augustus Hickey persecuted by Governor General Warren Hastings?
   (a) For poor editing of Bengal Gazette
   (b) For publishing a lot of gossip about company's Senior Official
   (c) For publishing substandard material
   (d) None of these
6. By whom was ' Sambad Kaumudi' published in 1821?
   (a) Iswer Chandra Vidyasagar
   (b) C.R. Das
   (c) Raja Rammohun Roy
   (d) Swami Vivekanand
7. In ancient India which of the following material was used for writing manuscripts?
   (a) Parchments
   (b) Vellum
   (c) Palm leaves
   (d) Paper
8. Which one of the following is the oldest Japanese book? [CBSE 2014]
   (a) Sutta Pitaka
   (b) Diamond Sutra
   (c) Mahavamsa
   (d) Dipavamsa
9. The reformation movement was launched against the corrupt practices of which of the following group?
   (a) Feudal Lords
   (b) Protestant Church
   (c) Catholic Church
   (d) Absolute rulers
10. Who among the following was not a women novelist?
    (a) Jane Austen
    (b) Bronte Sisters
    (c) George Eliot
    (d) Maxim Gorky
11. Name the country which remained the major producer of printed material for a long time:
    (a) The Imperial State of China
    (b) Germany
    (c) Korea
    (d) Japan
12. Buddhist missionaries from China had introduced one of the following in Japan. Pick up the correct one from the list given below:
    (a) Tripitakas (religious canons —three basic Buddhist principles)
    (b) Hand printing technology
    (c) Buddhism
    (d) Teachings of Buddha

13. Complete the sentence with one out of the following words:

    The Chinese paper reached Europe through

    (a) Silk Route

    (b) Sea route

    (c) Buddhist missionaries

    (d) Merchants

14. Where from did the Italians get the technology of wood block printing?

    (a) China

    (b) Japan

    (c) India

    (d) Korea

15. Merchants and students in the University towns bought cheaper printed copies of books in Europe. What kind of books were bought by the aristocrats? Pick out the correct answer.

    (a) Handwritten books on silk.

    (b) Books made out of papyrus leaves.

    (c) Handwritten books on very expensive vellum (a parchment made from the skin of animals).

    (d) Books engraved on copper plates.

Very Short Questions:

1. Give some examples of print around us.
2. What is calligraphy?
3. How books were printed in China since AD 594?
4. When was hand-printing technology introduced in Japan and by whom?
5. Who was the major producer of printed material in China?
6. By whom the textbooks for civil service examination were printed in China?
7. When and how were the western printing techniques and mechanical presses imported in China?
8. Which city of China became the hub of new print culture?
9. What was the ancient name of Tokyo?
10. Which is the oldest printed book of Japan?

Short Questions:

1. Who brought the knowledge of woodblock printing to Europe/Italy?
2. Which was the first book printed by Johann Gutenberg? How many copies were printed in how many years?
3. What is platen?
4. Who is compositor?
5. What is galley?
6. What is a ballad?
7. What were taverns?
8. What was written by Martin Luther in 1517?
9. What was Protestant Reformation?
10. What was Inquisition?

Long Questions:

1. Describe the woodblock printing.
2. Which Asian country was the major producer of printed material in the 16th century and why?
3. "By the seventeenth century, as urban culture bloomed in China, the uses of print diversified." Explain.
4. How did the Buddhist missionaries from China introduce printing technology into Japan around AD 768-770? Explain.
5. Write a short note on Ukiyo.

Assertion and Reason Questions:

1. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.

    a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

    b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.

    c) Assertion is correct statement, but reason is wrong statement.

    d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

    Assertion (A): In 1517, the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.

    Reason (R): This led to a division within the Church and to the beginning of the Protestant Reformation.

2. In these questions, a statement of assertion followed by a statement of reason is given. Choose the correct answer out of the following choices.
   a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.
   b) Assertion and reason both are correct statements but reason is not correct explanation for assertion.
   c) Assertion is correct statement but reason is wrong statement.
   d) Both assertion and reason are wrong statements.

Assertion (A): The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.

Reason (R): From hand printing there was a gradual shift to mechanical printing.

ANSWER KEY

MCQ:

1. **Answer**: d
2. **Answer**: b
3. **Answer**: b
4. **Answer**: b
5. **Answer**: b
6. **Answer**: c
7. **Answer**: b
8. **Answer**: b
9. **Answer**: c
10. **Answer**: d
11. **Answer**: a
12. **Answer**: b
13. **Answer**: a
14. **Answer**: a
15. **Answer**: c

Very Short Answer:

1. **Answer:** The examples of print around us are books, journals, newspapers, paintings, official circulars, calenders, diaries, advertisements, cinema posters etc.
2. **Answer**: Calligraphy is art of beautiful and stylised writing.
3. **Answer**: Books were printed in China by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.
4. **Answer**: Buddhist missionaries from China introduced hand-printing technology in Japan around AD
5. **Answer**: The imperial state in China was the major producer of printed material.
6. **Answer**: Textbooks for the civil services examination were printed under the sponsorship of the imperial state.
7. **Answer**: Western printing techniques and mechanical presses were imported in the late nineteenth century as western powers established their outposts in China.
8. **Answer**: Shanghai became the hub of the new print culture, catering to the western-style schools. From hand printing there was now a gradual shift to mechanical printing.
9. **Answer**: Edo.
10. **Answer**: Diamond Sutra.

Short Answer:

1. **Answer:** Marco Polo, a great explorer, returned to Italy after many years of exploration in China. He brought wood-block printing technology with him in 1295.
2. **Answer**: The first book he printed was the Bible. About 180 copies were printed and it took three years to produce them.
3. **Answer**: In letter press printing, platen is a board which is pressed onto the back of the paper to j get the impression from the type. At one time it used to be wooden board, later it was made of steel.
4. **Answer**: The person who composes the text for printing is called compositor.

5. **Answer**: Galley is a metal frame in which types are laid and the text composed.
6. **Answer**: Ballad is a historical account or folk tale in verse, usually sung or recited.
7. **Answer**: Taverns were places where people gathered to drink alcohol, to be served food and tomeet friends and exchange news.
8. **Answer**: In 1517, the religious reformer Martin Luther wrote Ninety Five Theses criticising many of the practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church.
9. **Answer**: It was a sixteenth-century movement to reform the Catholic Church dominated by Rome. Martin Luther was one of the main Protestant reformers. Several traditions of anti-Catholic Christianity developed out of the movement.
10. **Answer**: Martin Luther said, "Printing is the ultimate gift of God and the Greatest one."

Long Answer:

1. **Answer:**
   1) Woodblock printing was the earliest kind of print technology.
   2) It was developed in China, Japan and Korea.
   3) This was a system of hand-writing.
   4) From AD 594 onwards, under this system, books in China were printed by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.
   5) As both sides of the thin, porous sheet could not be printed, the traditional Chinese 'accordion book' was folded and stitched at the side.
   6) Superbly skilled craftsmen could duplicate with remarkable accuracy the beauty of calligraphy.
2. **Answer:**
   (1) The imperial state in China was the major producer of printed material for a long time.
   (2) It was the major producer of printed material due to the following factors :
      i. China had a large bureaucratic system which recruited its personnel through civil service examinations.
      ii. Textbooks for this examination were printed in vast numbers under the sponsorship of the imperial state.
      iii. From the sixteenth century, the number of examination candidates went up and that increased the volume of print.
3. **Answer:**
   (1) In the seventeenth century, many cities had come up in China. As the urban culture spread, the uses of print also increased. It was used in different fields as mentioned below :
      1) It was used by scholar officials.
      2) Merchants used it to collect trade information.
      3) Reading printed material became a leisure activity. So, people started reading fictional narratives, poetry, autobiographies, anthologies of literary masterpieces, and romantic plays.
      4) Women began publishing their poetry and plays.
      5) Wives of scholar-officials published their works and courtesans wrote about their lives.
   (2) The new reading culture had the following effects:
      1) It brought western printing techniques and mechanical presses into China.
      2) Shanghai became the hub of the new print culture.

   Thus, there was natural change from hand-printing to mechanical printing.
4. **Answer:**

   The development of print in Japan took place as mentioned below :
   1) Buddhist missionaries from China introduced hand-printing technology in Japan around AD 768-770.
   2) The oldest Japanese book printed in AD 868 was the Buddhist Diamond Sutra. It contained six sheets of text and woodcut illustrations.
   3) Pictures were printed on textiles, playing cards and paper money,
   4) In medieval Japan, the poets and prose writers regularly published their works.

5) Printing of visual material led to interesting publishing practices. For example, in the late eighteenth century, at Edo (modern Tokyo) illustrated collections of paintings depicted an elegant urban culture, involving artists, courtesans, and teahouse gatherings.

6) Libraries and bookstores were full with hand-printed material of various types such as books on women, cooking, famous places, musical instruments, calculations, tea ceremony and flower arrangements.

5. **Answer:**

1) Kitagawa Utamaro, born in Edo in 1753, widely known for his contributions to an art form called Ukiyo (pictures of the floating world) or depiction of ordinary human experiences, especially urban ones.

2) These prints travelled to contemporary US and Europe and influenced artists like Manet, Monet and Van Gogh.

3) Publishers like Tsutaya Juzaburo identified subjects and commissioned artists who drew the theme in outline.

4) Then a skilled woodblock carver pasted the drawing on a woodblock and carved a printing block to reproduce the painter's lines.

5) In the process, the original drawing would be destroyed and only prints would survive.

Assertion and Reason Answers:

1. a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

Explanation: A printed copy of the Theses was posted on a church door in Wittenberg. It challenged the Church to debate his ideas. Luther's writings were immediately reproduced in large numbers and read widely. The reason thus correctly justifies the assertion.

2. a) Assertion and reason both are correct statements and reason is correct explanation for assertion.

Explanation: The reason thus correctly justifies the assertion.